



BY APPOINTMENT  
TO HER MAJESTY THE QUEEN  
MANUFACTURERS OF  
LAND ROVER VEHICLES  
LAND ROVER, WARWICK



BY APPOINTMENT  
TO HER MAJESTY THE QUEEN  
MANUFACTURERS OF  
LAND ROVER VEHICLES  
LAND ROVER, WARWICK



BY APPOINTMENT  
TO HER MAJESTY THE QUEEN  
MANUFACTURERS OF  
LAND ROVER VEHICLES  
LAND ROVER, WARWICK



BY APPOINTMENT  
TO HER MAJESTY THE QUEEN  
MANUFACTURERS OF  
LAND ROVER VEHICLES  
LAND ROVER, WARWICK



# RANGE ROVER

## OWNER'S HANDBOOK

Publication Part No. LRL 18 02 55 501

© Land Rover 2004

## Introduction

This handbook covers all current versions of the Range Rover models and, together with the other books in your literature pack, provides all the information that you need to derive maximum pleasure from owning and driving your new vehicle.

For your convenience, the handbook is divided into sections, each dealing with a different aspect of the vehicle. These are listed on the Contents page and you will find it worthwhile to take a little time to read each one, and get to know your Range Rover as soon as you possibly can. The more you understand before you drive, the greater the satisfaction once you are seated behind the steering wheel.

The specification of each vehicle will vary according to territorial requirements and also from model to model within the vehicle range. Some of the information published in this handbook, therefore, may not apply to your particular vehicle.

To include changes made after the handbook is printed, it is sometimes necessary to issue one or more handbook supplements. When reading this handbook, check the literature pack for possible supplements.

Any further updates will be posted on the Land Rover internet site and can be accessed at **[www.landrover.com](http://www.landrover.com)** in the Owner information area.

**\* An asterisk appearing within the handbook text identifies features or items of equipment that are either optional, or are only fitted to some vehicles in the model range.**

Land Rover operates a policy of constant product improvement and therefore reserves the right to change specifications without notice at any time. Whilst every effort is made to ensure complete accuracy of the information in this handbook, no liabilities for inaccuracies or the consequences thereof can be accepted by the manufacturer or the dealer, except in respect of personal injury caused by the negligence of the manufacturer or the dealer.

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system or transmitted, in any form, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or other means without prior written permission from the Service Division of Land Rover.



As part of Land Rover's environmental policy, this publication is printed on paper made from chlorine-free pulp.

# Handbook Contents

---

## Quick Overview

|                                   |    |
|-----------------------------------|----|
| Quick Overview . . . . .          | 7  |
| Gas Station Information . . . . . | 15 |

## General Information

|                               |    |
|-------------------------------|----|
| General Information . . . . . | 19 |
|-------------------------------|----|

## Controls & Instruments

|                                 |     |
|---------------------------------|-----|
| Keys & Handsets . . . . .       | 27  |
| Locks & Alarm . . . . .         | 28  |
| Seats . . . . .                 | 39  |
| Seat Belts . . . . .            | 49  |
| Child Restraints . . . . .      | 54  |
| Airbag SRS . . . . .            | 59  |
| Steering Column . . . . .       | 66  |
| Door Mirrors . . . . .          | 67  |
| Facia Controls . . . . .        | 69  |
| Instruments . . . . .           | 71  |
| Trip Computer . . . . .         | 73  |
| Message Centre . . . . .        | 74  |
| Warning Lights . . . . .        | 81  |
| Audible Warnings . . . . .      | 84  |
| Lights & Indicators . . . . .   | 85  |
| Bi-Xenon Headlamps . . . . .    | 89  |
| Wipers & Washers . . . . .      | 90  |
| Horn . . . . .                  | 94  |
| Notepad . . . . .               | 95  |
| Electric Windows . . . . .      | 96  |
| Sunroof . . . . .               | 98  |
| Heating & Ventilation . . . . . | 100 |
| Interior Equipment . . . . .    | 109 |
| Loadspace Cover . . . . .       | 122 |
| In-Car Entertainment . . . . .  | 125 |
| Land Rover Homelink® . . . . .  | 127 |

## Driving & Operating

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| Starting & Driving . . . . .                   | 133 |
| Catalytic Converter . . . . .                  | 138 |
| Fuel Filling . . . . .                         | 139 |
| Park Distance Control . . . . .                | 142 |
| Automatic Transmission . . . . .               | 144 |
| Transfer Gearbox . . . . .                     | 150 |
| Cruise Control . . . . .                       | 152 |
| Brakes . . . . .                               | 154 |
| Dynamic Stability & Traction Control . . . . . | 158 |
| Hill Descent Control . . . . .                 | 160 |
| Electronic Air Suspension . . . . .            | 162 |
| Towing . . . . .                               | 166 |
| Load Carrying . . . . .                        | 170 |

## On-Road Driving

|                           |     |
|---------------------------|-----|
| On-Road Driving . . . . . | 173 |
|---------------------------|-----|

## Off-road Driving

|                              |     |
|------------------------------|-----|
| Off-road Driving . . . . .   | 179 |
| Driving Techniques . . . . . | 184 |

## Maintenance

|                                   |     |
|-----------------------------------|-----|
| Maintenance . . . . .             | 193 |
| Hood Opening . . . . .            | 196 |
| Engine Compartment . . . . .      | 197 |
| Engine Oil . . . . .              | 198 |
| Air Cleaner . . . . .             | 203 |
| Spark Plugs . . . . .             | 204 |
| Cooling System . . . . .          | 207 |
| Brakes . . . . .                  | 209 |
| Power Steering . . . . .          | 210 |
| Washers . . . . .                 | 211 |
| Wiper Blades . . . . .            | 213 |
| Battery . . . . .                 | 214 |
| Tires . . . . .                   | 216 |
| Cleaning & Vehicle Care . . . . . | 227 |
| Identification Numbers . . . . .  | 230 |
| Parts & Accessories . . . . .     | 231 |

# Handbook Contents

---

## **Roadside Emergency**

|                                      |     |
|--------------------------------------|-----|
| Taildoor Emergency Release . . . . . | 235 |
| Wheel Changing . . . . .             | 236 |
| Emergency Starting . . . . .         | 243 |
| Towing the Vehicle . . . . .         | 248 |
| Fuses . . . . .                      | 252 |
| Bulb Replacement . . . . .           | 259 |

## **Technical Data**

|                               |     |
|-------------------------------|-----|
| Lubricants & Fluids . . . . . | 273 |
| Capacities . . . . .          | 274 |
| Engines . . . . .             | 275 |
| Electrical System . . . . .   | 276 |
| Steering . . . . .            | 277 |
| Wheels & Tires . . . . .      | 278 |
| Weights . . . . .             | 281 |
| Dimensions . . . . .          | 283 |

A comprehensive index is located at the back of this handbook.

# Quick Overview

## Quick Overview

|  |    |
|--|----|
| USING THE REMOTE HANDSET . . . . .       | 7  |
| REMOTE HANDSET . . . . .                 | 7  |
| HANDSET RANGE/BATTERY . . . . .          | 7  |
| SINGLE POINT ENTRY . . . . .             | 8  |
| CONVENIENCE LOCK/UNLOCK* . . . . .       | 8  |
| CONFIRMATION OF SECURITY . . . . .       | 8  |
| SPEED RELATED LOCKING . . . . .          | 8  |
| MESSAGE RECORDING . . . . .              | 8  |
| FACIA CONTROLS . . . . .                 | 9  |
| WARNING LIGHTS . . . . .                 | 10 |
| MAIN LIGHTING SWITCH OPERATION . . . . . | 11 |
| WIPERS & WASHERS . . . . .               | 11 |
| CLIMATE CONTROL SYSTEM . . . . .         | 13 |
| FACE LEVEL TEMPERATURE CONTROL . . . . . | 14 |
| DOOR MIRROR DIP . . . . .                | 14 |
| ACCESS HEIGHT . . . . .                  | 14 |

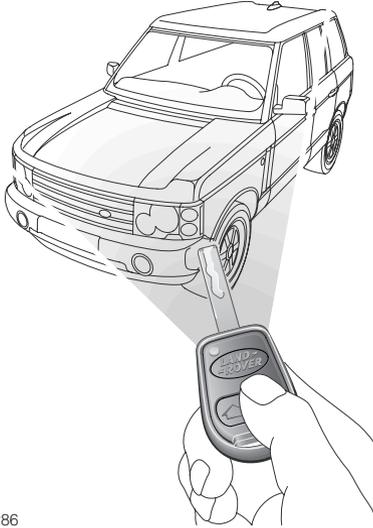
## Gas Station Information

|                            |    |
|----------------------------|----|
| FUEL FILLER . . . . .      | 15 |
| OPENING THE HOOD . . . . . | 15 |
| TIRE PRESSURES . . . . .   | 16 |

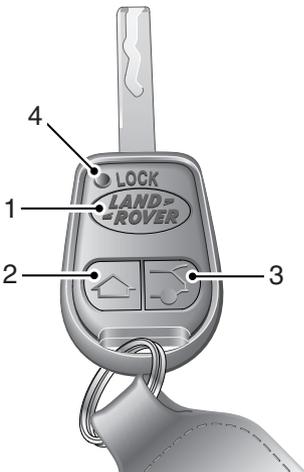


# Quick Overview

## USING THE REMOTE HANDSET



H5286



H5821

## REMOTE HANDSET

Your handset has three buttons that allows you to lock/unlock the vehicle and set the security features.

### 1. Lock Button

Press once to superlock and activate the perimetric alarm, interior space alarm\* and tilt sensor\*. Press twice to superlock all doors, activate perimetric alarm but not activate interior space protection\* and tilt sensor.

### 2. Unlock Button

Press once to disarm the alarm, unlock the drivers door and activate seat/mirror memory.

### 3. Taildoor Button

Press to unlock taildoor and de-activate the interior space protection\* only. Press and hold to activate the panic alarm.

### 4. Indicator light

The light flashes once for each press of any button for confirmation of operation.

For more information, see **ALARM SYSTEM, 28.**

## HANDSET RANGE/BATTERY

The handset does not have to be pointing at the vehicle but does need to be within range. Interference from physical and geographical factors may sometimes limit this range. Low batteries can also effect the range 'KEY BATTERY LOW' will be displayed in the main message centre.

For more information, see **REMOTE HANDSET BATTERY, 35.**

# Quick Overview

## SINGLE POINT ENTRY

This is a personal security feature, which enables the drivers door to be unlocked whilst leaving the others doors in a locked state.

Press the unlock button once to unlock just the drivers door.

Press the unlock button a second time to unlock the remaining doors.

For more information, see **Single point entry, 31**.



Single point entry can be disabled by a Land Rover Retailer.

## CONVENIENCE LOCK/UNLOCK\*

'Convenience' Locking enables you to use the key to close the windows and sunroof at the same time as you secure the vehicle.

'Convenience' unlocking enables you to use the handset or key to open the windows and sunroof at the same time as you unlock and open the vehicle.

For further information on how to operate this feature, see **Convenience Locking/unlocking\*, 34**.



Convenience Lock/Unlock can be enabled or disabled by a Land Rover Retailer.

## CONFIRMATION OF SECURITY

To confirm that your vehicle is secure and locks when the lock button is pressed the side repeaters will flash, the sill buttons will depress and the indicator light on the rear view mirror will flash.

For more information on the indicator light mounted on the rear view mirror, see **Anti-theft alarm indicator light, 31**.

## SPEED RELATED LOCKING

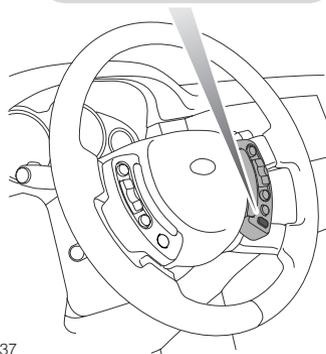
The security feature locks all the doors automatically when the vehicle speed exceeds 16 km/h (10 mph).



Speed related locking can be selected/deselected by a Land Rover Retailer.

## MESSAGE RECORDING

If your vehicle is fitted with the voice recognition option you can record messages into the system memory for later playback.



H5837

Press and hold the voice button and wait for the 'LISTENING' reply in the message centre. Give the 'Notepad' voice command and start recording.

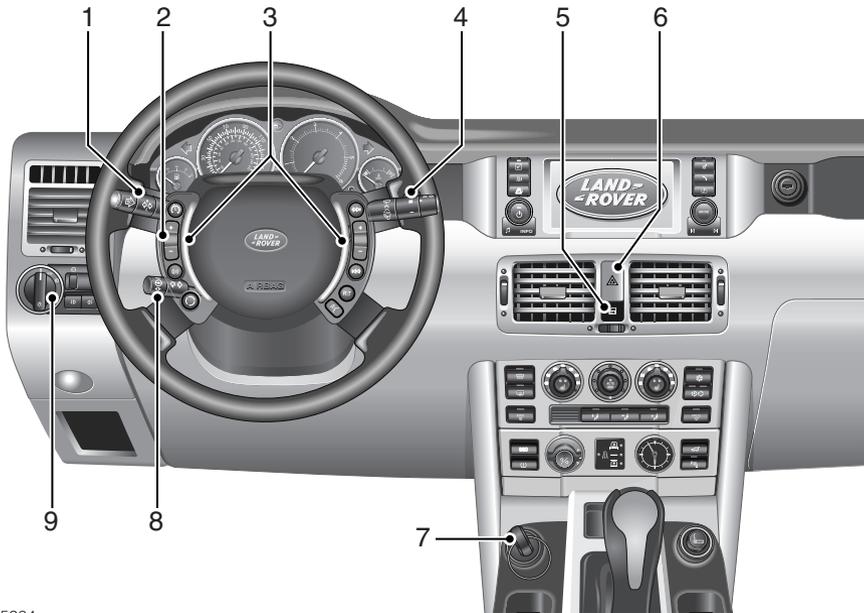
You can record 10 notes each up to 30 seconds in length.

To stop recording, press the voice button again.

For more detailed information on message recording, see **USING NOTEPAD, 95**.

# Quick Overview

## FACIA CONTROLS



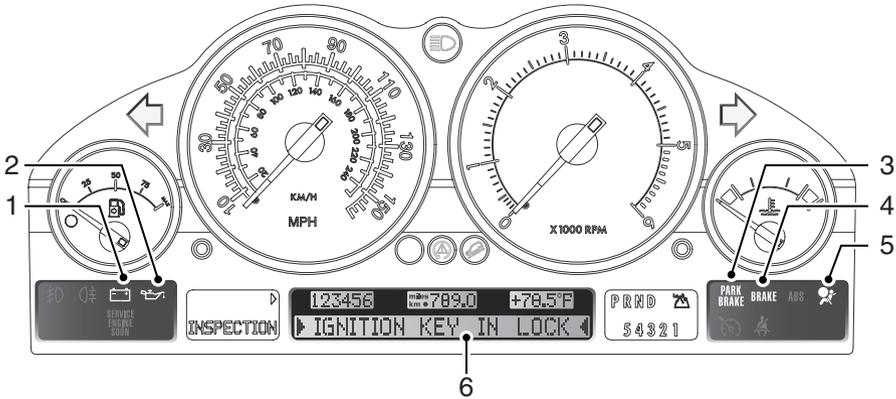
H5264

- |   |                                |
|---|--------------------------------|
| 1. Lighting and direction indicator controls. | 6. Hazard warning lamp switch. |
| 2. Cruise control switches.                   | 7. Starter switch.             |
| 3. Horn switches.                             | 8. Steering column adjuster.   |
| 4. Windshield wiper/washer control.           | 9. Main lighting switch.       |
| 5. Door locking switch.                       |                                |

**Note:** The precise specification and location of the controls may vary according to territorial requirements and from vehicle to vehicle. For more detailed information on facia controls, see **FACIA CONTROLS, 69**.

# Quick Overview

## WARNING LIGHTS



H5210

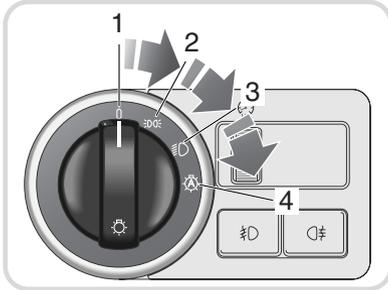
1. Battery charging (RED).
2. Low oil pressure (RED).
3. Parking brake system (RED).
4. Brake system (RED).
5. Airbag SRS (RED).
6. Main message centre.

**Note:** If one of these red warning lights illuminates, a serious fault is indicated. Stop the vehicle and refer to the main section of this handbook.

**Note:** This is a brief overview of the warning lights, for more information concerning warning light functionality, please refer to **WARNING LIGHTS, 81**.

# Quick Overview

## MAIN LIGHTING SWITCH OPERATION

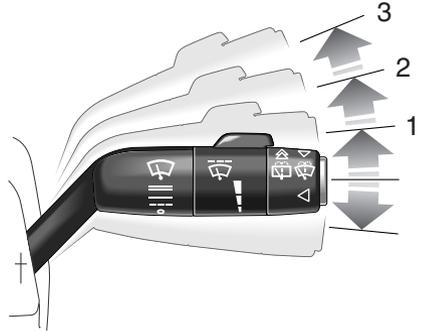


H5742

1. Off.
2. Side, tail and instrument panel lights on.
3. Headlamps on.
4. Automatic lamps on feature.

**Note:** For further information concerning operation of the lights, see **MAIN LIGHTING SWITCH, 85** or **DIRECTION INDICATORS, 87**.

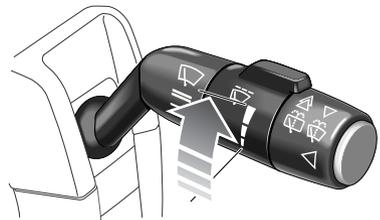
## WIPERS & WASHERS



H3893

1. Intermittent wipe
2. Normal speed wipe.
3. Fast speed wipe.
4. Single wipe.

### Intermittent variable delay



H3895

Rotate the switch to vary the delay between wipes.

# Quick Overview

## Windshield washer control



H4056

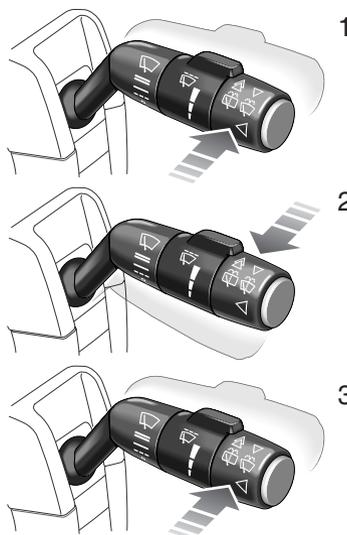
## Rear window wash/wipe



H4867

1. Rear wiper.
2. Rear wiper and washer.

## Rear wiper delay



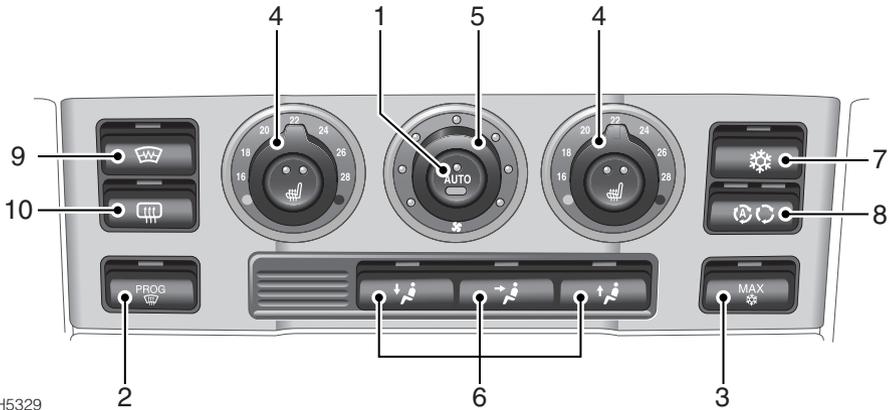
H5318

1. Push the lever forward.
2. Immediately pull the lever back and wait for the desired delay period.
3. Push the lever forwards. The delay period is now set.

**Note:** For further information concerning operation of the wipers and washers, see **WINDSHIELD WIPERS, 90**.

# Quick Overview

## CLIMATE CONTROL SYSTEM



H5329

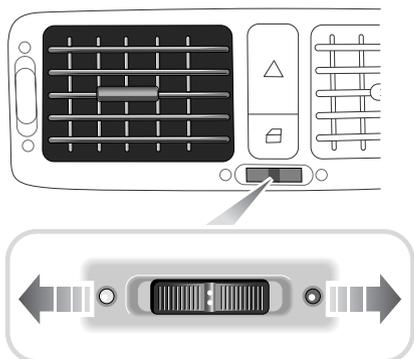
- 1. Auto mode:**  
Press for fully automatic operation.
- 2. Defrost mode:**  
Press to defrost or demist the windshield.
- 3. Maximum air conditioning:**  
Press to quickly cool the interior of the vehicle.
- 4. Temperature controls.**
- 5. Blower control.**
- 6. Air distribution control.**
- 7. Air conditioning control.**
- 8. Air recirculation control.**
- 9. Heated front shield.**
- 10. Heated rear screen.**

**Note:** For more information concerning the operation of the climate control system, see **CLIMATE CONTROL SYSTEM, 103**.

# Quick Overview

## FACE LEVEL TEMPERATURE CONTROL

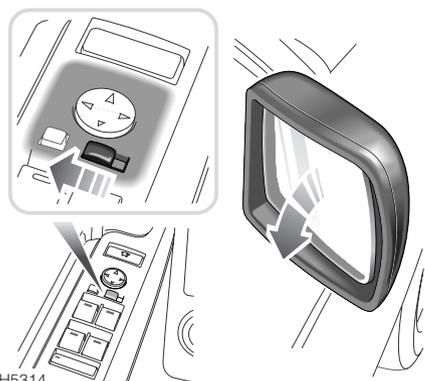
For cool or warm air to the face whatever the temperature setting, rotate the centre thumbwheel towards the blue dot for cool air or towards the red dot for warm air, see **Centre foot/face level vents, 101**.



H4811

## DOOR MIRROR DIP

The passenger door mirror will dip when reversing if the 'mirror select switch' is set to the driver's side. This provides the driver with a view of the curbside (only available with 'Memory' seats).



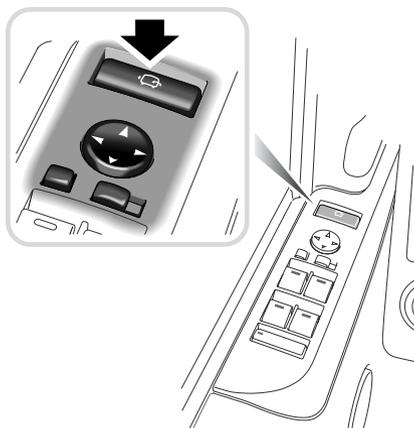
H5314

For more information, see **Automatic mirror dipping, 68**.

## ACCESS HEIGHT

For ease of entry and exit, access height can be requested prior to stopping the vehicle. Press the access height switch.

The vehicle must be travelling at less than 80 km/h (50 mph) and come to a stop within 65 seconds, otherwise the request is cancelled.



H4000

For more information, see **ACCESS HEIGHT, 164**.

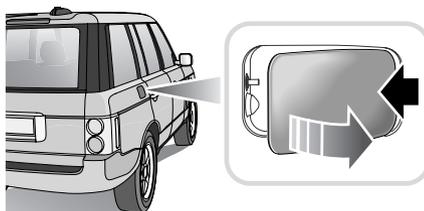
# Gas Station Information

## FUEL FILLER

The fuel filler is located in the rear right-hand fender. With vehicle fully unlocked, press the right side of the flap to open it.

Turn the cap counter-clockwise and allow any pressure inside the tank to escape before removing cap.

When replacing the cap, tighten it clockwise until you hear the fuel cap ratchet click once.



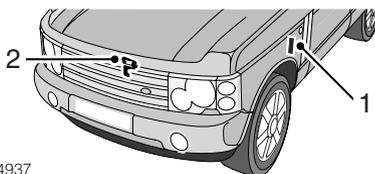
H5282

| Fuel type         |   |
|-------------------|---|
| Gasoline vehicles | Premium unleaded 90-92 RON Pump octane. |

**Note:** For more detailed information, see **FUEL FILLING, 141**.

## OPENING THE HOOD

1. Pull hood release handle located by the right hand front door at foot height.
2. Lift hood safety catch lever and raise hood.



H4937

**Note:** For more detailed information, see **HOOD OPENING, 196**.

| Engine oil top up             | Use only synthetic oil to ACEA: A3 and B3 specification  |
|-------------------------------|--|
| Gasoline vehicles             | 0W/30, 0W/40, 5W/30 or 5W/40 oil meeting API service level SJ/CD, EC11 and having a viscosity band recommended for the temperature range of your locality. |
| Cooling system top up         |  |
| All vehicles to -36°C (-33°F) | 50% mix of fresh water and Glacelf MDX or BASF G48 anti-freeze.  |

**Note:** For more detailed information, see **LUBRICANTS AND FLUIDS, 273**.

# Gas Station Information

## TIRE PRESSURES

Check pressures when the tires are cold. Air pressure naturally increases in warm tires (after the vehicle has been driven for a while). If you have to check warm tires, you should expect the pressures to have increased between 30 - 40 kPa, (4 -6 psi). In this circumstance, NEVER let air out of the tires in order to match the recommended pressures.

| Loading condition                        |       | Pressure |     |
|--|-------|----------|-----|
|  |       | kPa      | psi |
| Full size wheels and tires               | Front | 250      | 36  |
| All operating conditions                 | Rear  | 300      | 44  |
| Compact spare - All operating conditions |       | 420      | 60  |

**Note:** For more detailed information, see **WHEELS AND TIRES, 278**.

# General Information

---

## General Information

|   |    |
|---|----|
| REPORTING SAFETY DEFECTS . . . . .                  | 19 |
| AUTO SAFETY HOTLINE . . . . .                       | 19 |
| CALIFORNIA PROPOSITION 65 WARNING .19               |    |
| BEFORE YOU DRIVE . . . . .                          | 19 |
| PASSPORT TO SERVICE . . . . .                       | 20 |
| SYMBOLS USED . . . . .                              | 20 |
| WARNING LABELS ATTACHED TO THE<br>VEHICLE . . . . . | 20 |
| AIRBAG WARNING LABELS . . . . .                     | 21 |
| ENGINE COMPARTMENT LABELS . . . . .                 | 22 |
| ANTI-THEFT PRECAUTIONS . . . . .                    | 23 |
| IN AN EMERGENCY . . . . .                           | 23 |





# General Information

---

## REPORTING SAFETY DEFECTS

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash, or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying Land Rover North America Inc.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign.

However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your retailer or Land Rover North America.

## AUTO SAFETY HOTLINE

To contact NHTSA, you may either call the Auto Safety HOTLINE toll free at 1-800-424-9393 (or 202-366-0123 in the Washington, D.C. area) or write to: NHTSA, U.S. Department of Transportation, Washington, DC 20590. You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from the HOTLINE.

## CALIFORNIA PROPOSITION 65

### WARNING

#### WARNING

**Engine exhaust, some of its constituents and certain vehicle components contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. In addition, certain fluids contained in vehicles and certain products of component wear contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer, and birth defects or other reproductive harm.**

---

#### WARNING

**Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds. Wash hands after handling.**

---

## BEFORE YOU DRIVE

#### WARNING

**Your Range Rover has a higher ground clearance and hence, a higher centre of gravity than ordinary passenger cars, to enable the vehicle to perform in a wide variety of off-road applications. An advantage of the higher ground clearance is a better view of the road allowing you to anticipate problems.**

**The vehicle is not designed for cornering at the same speed as conventional passenger cars any more than a low slung sports car is designed to perform satisfactorily under off-road conditions. If at all possible, avoid sharp turns or abrupt manoeuvres. As with other vehicles of this type, failure to operate the Range Rover correctly may result in loss of control or vehicle rollover. For important safety information, be sure to read the 'On-Road' and 'Off-Road' driving guidelines given later in this handbook.**

---

# General Information

---

## PASSPORT TO SERVICE

The passport to service book included in your literature pack contains important vehicle identification information, as well as useful consumer advice.

Most important of all, however, is the section on maintenance. This outlines the servicing requirements for your vehicle and also includes the service record slips, which the Retailer should sign and stamp to certify that the routine services have been carried out at the recommended intervals.

### WARNING

**Safety warnings are included in this handbook. These indicate a procedure which must be followed precisely in order to avoid the possibility of personal injury or serious damage to the vehicle.**

---

## SYMBOLS USED

The following symbols used within the handbook call your attention to specific types of information.



This recycling symbol identifies those items that must be disposed of safely in order to prevent unnecessary damage to the environment.



This symbol identifies those features that can be adjusted or disabled/enabled by a Land Rover Retailer.

## WARNING LABELS ATTACHED TO THE VEHICLE



Warning labels attached to your vehicle bearing this symbol mean: **DO NOT touch or adjust components until you have read the relevant instructions in the handbook.**



Warning labels showing this symbol indicate that the ignition system utilises very high voltages. **DO NOT touch any ignition components while the starter switch is turned on!**



# General Information

## ENGINE COMPARTMENT LABELS

**CAUTION!** Wait 2 minutes after ignition switched off before disconnecting battery!  
**VORSICHT!** Nach dem Ausschalten der Zündung noch 2 Minuten warten, bis die Batterie abgeklemmt wird!  
**ATTENTION!** Après avoir coupé le contact, attendre 2 minutes avant de déconnecter la batterie!  
**PRECAUCIONES!** Después de apagar el encendido, deje que transcurran por lo menos 2 minutos antes de desconectar la batería!  
**ATTENZIONE!** Attendere 2 minuti dopo lo spegnimento del motore prima di scollegare la batteria!

**LAND ROVER**  
**VEHICLE EMISSION CONTROL INFORMATION**

**VACUUM/HOSE ROUTING DIAGRAM**

**CATALYST**  
 Field 1 für BARCODE

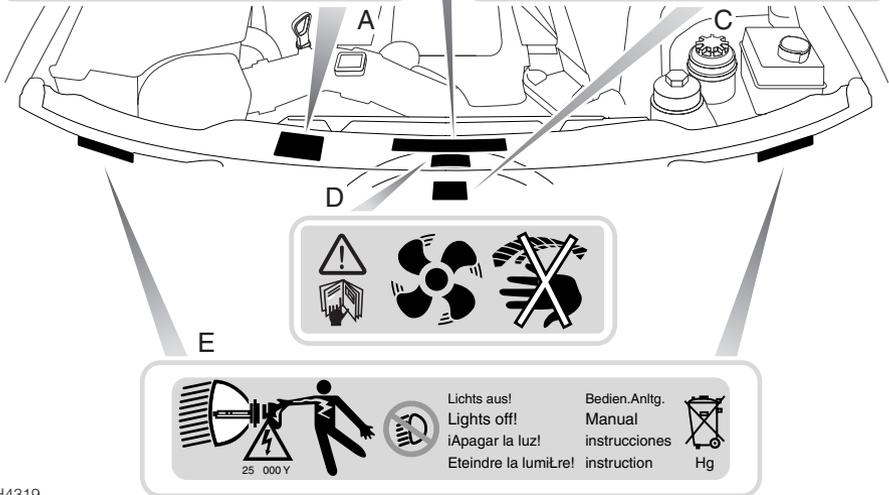
**Land Rover**

Fullmenge 510 ±10g  
 Nur R134a(C<sub>2</sub>F<sub>6</sub>)

**ACHTUNG!**  
 Schlauchleitungen der Klimaanlage stehen unter Druck.  
 Beim Öffnen Sicherheitsvorschriften beachten!

**AUTOMOTIVE AIR CONDITIONER**  
 CONFORMS TO SAE J639  
**CHARGE 1.124 ± 0.020 lbs**  
 ONLY A134a(C<sub>2</sub>F<sub>6</sub>)

**CAUTION!**  
 Refrigerant lines of air-conditioning-equipment under pressure!  
 Observe safety regulations when opening! 6915 942



H4319

Various labels are fixed inside the engine compartment, the number, position and content of which may vary from model to model. The following illustration locates labels of specific importance and is included for guidance only.

- A.** Emission control label.
- B.** Battery disconnection procedure label.
- C.** Air conditioning label.
- D.** Keep clear of rotating parts.
- E.** Xenon headlamp voltage and Mercury warning label, see **BI-XENON LAMP UNITS, 89**.

# General Information

## ANTI-THEFT PRECAUTIONS

While it may be difficult to deter the 'professional' car thief, the majority of thefts are carried out by unskilled opportunists.

Therefore, take vehicle security very seriously and ALWAYS adopt this simple 'four point' drill whenever you leave your vehicle - even for just a few minutes:

1. Fully close all the windows (and the sunroof).
2. Remove your valuable belongings (or hide them out of sight).
3. Remove the starter key.
4. Superlock the vehicle using the remote handset.

Thieves are attracted by 'vulnerable' vehicles. Even if you have followed the 'four point' drill, there is still much you can do to make your vehicle a less inviting target.

### BE SAFE - NOT SORRY!

- Park where your vehicle can be easily seen by householders and passers-by.
- At night, park in well lit areas and avoid deserted or dimly-lit side streets.
- NEVER leave the keys in the vehicle.
- Do not keep important documents (or spare keys) in the vehicle - these are a real bonus for the thief.

## IN AN EMERGENCY

### IMPORTANT INFORMATION

#### Remember the breakdown safety code

If a breakdown occurs while travelling:

- Wherever possible, consistent with road safety and traffic conditions, the vehicle should be moved off the main thoroughfare, preferably into a lay-by. If a breakdown occurs on a motorway, pull well over to the inside of the hard shoulder.
- Switch on hazard lamps.
- If possible, position a warning triangle or a flashing amber lamp at an appropriate distance from the vehicle to warn other traffic of the breakdown, (note the legal requirements of some countries).
- Consider evacuating passengers through curbside doors onto the verge as a precaution in case your vehicle is accidentally struck by other traffic.



# Controls & Instruments

---

## Keys & Handsets

|                   |    |
|-------------------|----|
| KEYS AND HANDSETS | 27 |
|-------------------|----|

## Locks & Alarm

|                        |    |
|------------------------|----|
| ALARM SYSTEM           | 28 |
| ENGINE IMMOBILIZATION  | 34 |
| REMOTE HANDSET BATTERY | 35 |
| CHILD-PROOF LOCKS      | 36 |
| TAILDOOR               | 36 |

## Seats

|                               |    |
|-------------------------------|----|
| POWER OPERATED FRONT SEATS    | 39 |
| FOLDING ARMRESTS              | 43 |
| DRIVER'S SEAT MEMORY FACILITY | 45 |
| FOLDING THE REAR SEATS        | 47 |
| HEATED SEATS*                 | 48 |

## Seat Belts

|                              |    |
|------------------------------|----|
| SEAT BELT SAFETY             | 49 |
| PREGNANT WOMEN               | 50 |
| WEARING SEAT BELTS CORRECTLY | 50 |
| SEAT BELT PRE-TENSIONERS     | 52 |
| CARING FOR SEAT BELTS        | 53 |

## Child Restraints

|  |    |
|--|----|
| CHILD RESTRAINTS FOR SMALL CHILDREN AND BABIES | 54 |
| CHILD RESTRAINTS FOR LARGER CHILDREN           | 54 |
| TETHER STRAP ANCHORAGES                        | 56 |
| 'LATCH' TYPE CHILD RESTRAINTS                  | 57 |

## Airbag SRS

|                          |    |
|--------------------------|----|
| AIRBAG SRS               | 59 |
| HOW THE AIRBAG SRS WORKS | 61 |
| CHILD SEATS              | 64 |
| SERVICE INFORMATION      | 65 |

## Steering Column

|                                |    |
|--------------------------------|----|
| STEERING WHEEL ADJUSTMENT      | 66 |
| STEERING WHEEL POSITION MEMORY | 66 |

## Door Mirrors

|                  |    |
|------------------|----|
| EXTERIOR MIRRORS | 67 |
|------------------|----|



# Controls & Instruments

---

## **Facia Controls**

FACIA CONTROLS ..... 69

## **Instruments**

INSTRUMENT PANEL ..... 71

## **Trip Computer**

TRIP COMPUTER - FUNCTION  
SELECTION ..... 73

## **Message Centre**

MAIN MESSAGE CENTRE ..... 74  
WARNING INFORMATION MESSAGES ... 75  
SERVICE INTERVAL INDICATOR ..... 80  
GEAR SELECTOR DISPLAY ..... 80

## **Warning Lights**

WARNING LIGHTS ..... 81

## **Audible Warnings**

AUDIBLE WARNINGS ..... 84

## **Lights & Indicators**

MAIN LIGHTING SWITCH ..... 85  
DIRECTION INDICATORS ..... 87  
FOG LAMPS ..... 87  
HAZARD WARNING LAMPS ..... 88

## **Bi-Xenon Headlamps**

BI-XENON LAMP UNITS ..... 89

## **Wipers & Washers**

OPERATING ..... 90  
WINDSHIELD WIPERS ..... 90  
WINDSHIELD WASHER ..... 92  
HEADLAMP WASH/WIPE ..... 92  
REAR WINDOW WIPER AND WASHER ... 93

## **Horn**

HORN ..... 94

## **Notepad**

USING NOTEPAD ..... 95

## **Electric Windows**

ELECTRIC WINDOWS ..... 96

## **Sunroof**

SUNROOF OPERATION ..... 98

## **Heating & Ventilation**

VENTILATION ..... 100  
CLIMATE CONTROL SYSTEM ..... 103  
USING YOUR HEATER ..... 106  
GENERAL NOTES ..... 106  
SEAT HEATERS\* ..... 107  
REMOTE AIR RECIRCULATION ..... 108  
HEATED STEERING WHEEL\* ..... 108

## **Interior Equipment**

INTERIOR COURTESY LIGHTS &  
MAP LIGHTS ..... 109  
LOW LEVEL NIGHT TIME ILLUMINATION 109  
GLOVEBOX LIGHT ..... 109  
PUDDLE LIGHTS/APPROACH LIGHTS ... 109  
CLOCK ..... 110  
CIGAR LIGHTER ..... 111  
ASHTRAYS ..... 111  
AUXILIARY POWER SOCKETS ..... 113  
SUNGLASSES HOLDER ..... 114  
CUP HOLDERS ..... 114  
CUBBY BOX ..... 117  
SUN VISOR ..... 118  
SUN VISOR VANITY MIRROR  
ILLUMINATION ..... 118  
INTERIOR REAR-VIEW MIRROR ..... 119  
GLOVEBOX ..... 119  
LUGGAGE ANCHOR POINTS ..... 120  
REAR LOADSPACE ACCESS HATCH ... 120  
REAR LOADSPACE STOWAGE AREAS ... 121

## **Loadspace Cover**

LOADSPACE COVER ..... 122

## **In-Car Entertainment**

RADIO AERIAL ..... 125  
AUDIO REMOTE CONTROLS ..... 125  
IN-CAR ENTERTAINMENT ..... 126

## **Land Rover Homelink®**

HOMELINK® TRANSMITTER ..... 127

# Keys & Handsets

## KEYS AND HANDSETS

You have been supplied with two remote handsets with integral keys which operate all locks.



H5815

### Replacement keys

The keys supplied with your vehicle are programmed to your security system - they CANNOT be re-programmed and the engine cannot be started without a key programmed to your vehicle. If a key is lost or broken, a replacement can only be obtained from a Land Rover Retailer.

**Note:** Land Rover Retailers do not stock spare keys, time has to be allowed for replacements to be programmed to your security system and then delivered to the Retailer.

If you lose a key, contact your Land Rover Retailer; a key reported lost will be deactivated. If the key is recovered, your Land Rover Retailer can have it reactivated.

### IMPORTANT INFORMATION

The handset complies with part 15 of the FCC rules. Operation is subject to the following conditions:

- This device may not cause harmful interference.
- This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation. This applies to both alarm receivers and handset transmitters.

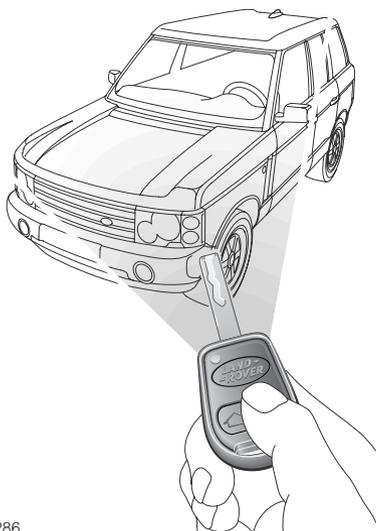
Any changes or modifications to the handset not expressly approved by the manufacturer or Land Rover North America could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

**Transmitter FCC ID: N5FVALTX3**

**Receiver FCC ID: N5VALTR3**

# Locks & Alarm

## ALARM SYSTEM



H5286

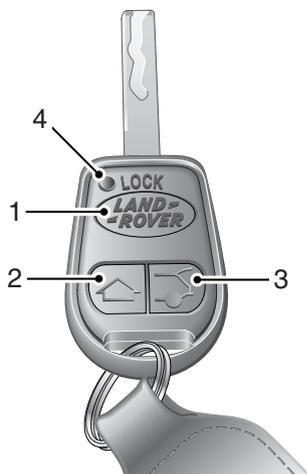
Your vehicle is fitted with a sophisticated electronic anti-theft alarm and engine immobilization system. There are also a number of additional security features, some of which are selectable options and some are standard features of the vehicle. In order to ensure maximum security and operating convenience, you are strongly advised to gain a full understanding of the features and alternatives available, by thoroughly reading this section of the handbook.

### IMPORTANT INFORMATION

FOR MAXIMUM SECURITY ALWAYS SUPERLOCK THE VEHICLE (except when passengers are to be left inside, in which case they must lock the vehicle using the interior locking switch).

If it is necessary to leave a window or sunroof open, lock the vehicle by pressing the lock button (or turning the key) twice.

## Using the remote handset



H5821

While it is not necessary to point the handset at the vehicle, the handset must be within range of the vehicle when a button is pressed.

Note that the operating range may vary depending upon handset battery condition and may sometimes be limited by physical and geographical factors beyond your control. From a security point of view, it may not be wise to unlock unless you are in close proximity to the vehicle.

# Locks & Alarm

---

## Handset buttons

The three buttons on the handset are used as follows:

1. Lock button: Press to superlock all doors and to activate the perimetric alarm and interior space protection\* and activate the tilt sensor, see **Superlocking, 30** and **Tilt Sensor, 30**.

Press twice to superlock all doors and activate the perimetric alarm, but NOT activate interior space protection\* and tilt sensor.

Press and hold to activate the Convenience Locking facility, see **Convenience Locking/unlocking\*, 34**.

2. Unlock button: Press once to disarm the alarm and unlock the driver's door. Press again to unlock the remaining doors, see **Single point entry, 31**.

Press once to activate the memory seats, mirrors and steering column settings, see **DRIVER'S SEAT MEMORY FACILITY, 45**. This will also activate the Convenience unlocking\* facility, see **Convenience Locking/unlocking\*, 34**.

3. Taildoor button: Press to unlock the taildoor and to disarm the interior space protection\*. All other apertures remain locked and the perimetric protection on the other apertures remains armed.

Press and hold to activate the panic alarm\*.

4. Handset indicator light: Flashes once for each press of any handset button, as confirmation of operation.

## Locking

Shut all doors, hood and taildoor, then press the lock (Land Rover logo) button once or turn the key in the driver's door lock towards the rear of the vehicle once:

- all doors are superlocked, see **Superlocking, 30**.
- engine immobilised
- perimetric alarm activated (protects the doors, hood and taildoor)
- interior space protection\* activated
- tilt sensor activated

The direction indicator lamps flash once and the anti-theft alarm indicator light (below the rear-view mirror) starts to flash to confirm that the vehicle is secure.

## Unlocking with the remote handset

- Press the unlock (arrow) button once to disarm the alarm and unlock the driver's door only, see **Single point entry, 31**.
- Press the unlock button twice to disarm the alarm and unlock ALL the doors.

In either case, the interior lights illuminate and the direction indicators flash twice.

## Unlocking with the key

**After a handset lock:** Turn the key in the driver's door lock towards the front of the vehicle to unlock the driver's door - the alarm will sound when the door is opened. Unlocking the door using the key will not disarm the alarm - press the unlock button on the handset, or turn the starter switch to position 'II', to disarm the alarm.

**After a key lock:** Turn the key in the driver's door lock towards the front of the vehicle to unlock the driver's door and disarm the alarm. Turn the key a second time to unlock the other doors.

# Locks & Alarm

---

## Superlocking

### **WARNING**

**For safety, NEVER lock the vehicle if passengers are to remain inside, in an emergency they would not be able to escape. Also, any movement from within the vehicle would activate the alarm, if interior space protection has been activated.**

---

Superlocking is activated automatically whenever the vehicle is locked using either the handset or the key.

Superlocking immobilises the interior door handles, thereby preventing an intruder from gaining entry by smashing a window and reaching inside the vehicle to operate the door handles.

If superlocking is required, but NOT interior space protection, press the lock button twice within 10 seconds (or turn the key towards the rear of the vehicle twice within the same time period). Allow for a two-second delay before pressing the lock button a second time.

## Tilt Sensor

Your vehicle is fitted with a tilt sensor which activates the alarm if the vehicle is tilted fore and aft, or side to side, after it has been superlocked.

The alarm will sound if theft is attempted by hoisting onto another vehicle or if a side is lifted to attempt wheel removal.

If you wish to have the doors locked but the tilt sensor disabled (e.g. when aboard a ferry or having the vehicle transported on a recovery truck) press the lock button twice within 10 seconds (or turn the key in the driver's door lock towards the rear of the vehicle twice within 10 seconds).

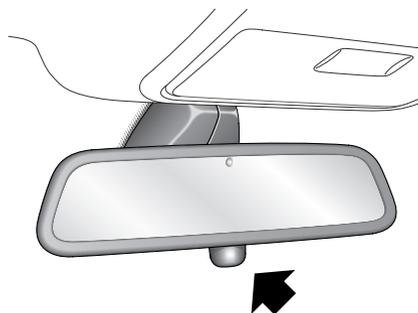
## Partial arming

If the driver's door is not fully closed when the handset lock button is pressed, all closed doors will lock, but the driver's door will not. If the driver's door is subsequently closed, the locking procedure must be repeated to lock the driver's door.

If a passenger door or other aperture is not fully closed when the handset lock button is pressed, the 'partial arming' attributes of the security system will enable as much of the system to be armed as possible (all fully closed door, hood or taildoor apertures will be protected, but an open door will not.). As soon as the open aperture is closed, the system will automatically revert to an armed state, with interior space protection\* activating 30 seconds after all apertures are closed.

# Locks & Alarm

## Anti-theft alarm indicator light



H3920

The light provides information about the status of the alarm system, as follows:

**When the alarm is armed:** The light flashes at a slow frequency and continues to flash as an anti-theft deterrent until the alarm is disarmed.

If interior space protection\* is disabled when the alarm is armed (by a double operation of the lock button or key), the light will illuminate constantly for 1 second as confirmation.

**When the alarm is partially armed (mislock):** The light flashes rapidly for 10 seconds, then flashes at a slower rate as an anti-theft deterrent until the alarm is disarmed.

**If the alarm has been triggered:** When the alarm is triggered, the light flashes rapidly for 5 minutes, before returning to a slow frequency.

If the light flashes rapidly after the vehicle is unlocked, this indicates that the alarm has been triggered during the driver's absence. The light will flash rapidly for 10 seconds.

## If the alarm sounds

If the alarm is triggered, the alarm will sound for 30 seconds and the hazard warning lamps will flash for 5 minutes, before switching off and resetting itself to the same protection status that existed prior to the alarm being triggered.

To silence the alarm, press the unlock button on the remote handset.

## Single point entry

This is a personal security feature which enables the driver's door only to be unlocked, leaving the other doors in a locked state. It is operated as follows:

- press the unlock button once to unlock the driver's door (or turn the key in the driver's door lock towards the front of the vehicle, if the vehicle was locked using the key).
- press the unlock button (or turn the key) a second time to unlock the remaining doors.

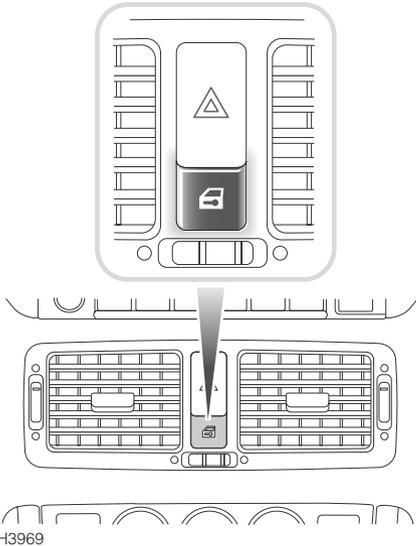
When the vehicle is unlocked using single point entry, if the interior locking button is then pressed, the driver's door will relock. A second press is required to unlock all the doors.



*Single point entry can be enabled or disabled on all handset keys, or on individual handset keys, by a Land Rover Retailer.*

# Locks & Alarm

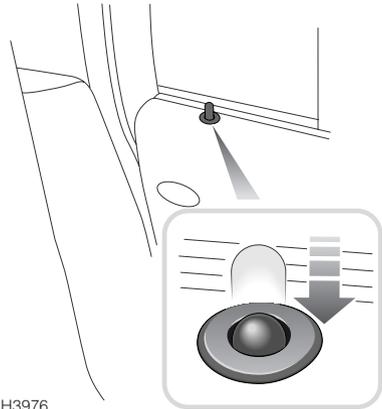
## Interior locking switch



This is a personal security feature which allows the driver to lock (or unlock) all the doors from inside the vehicle (while driving or with the vehicle stationary). Press the switch to lock (the alarm will not be armed) or unlock.

**Note:** If the locks have already been superlocked, the switch will not release the locks.

## Interior door handles and door sill locking buttons



From inside the vehicle, each door can be individually locked by depressing the appropriate door sill button. However, doors cannot be unlocked by raising the sill button.

Use the door handles to unlock, as follows:

- First operation of the door handle unlocks the door.
- Second operation of the door handle opens the door.

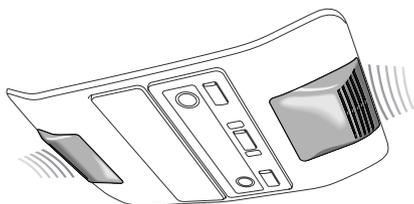
When the interior locking switch is activated, all door locking buttons will be depressed automatically.

# Locks & Alarm

## Interior space protection\*

Interior space protection is activated whenever the alarm is armed.

**Caution: Never activate interior space protection if windows or sunroof are to be left open, or if passengers or animals are to be left inside the vehicle - any movement will activate the alarm.**



H3802

Interior space protection is designed to protect the interior of the vehicle from intrusion (entry by a thief through a smashed window, for example). A pair of sensors monitors the interior space and activate the alarm if air movement is detected in the passenger compartment.

**Note:** Interior space protection cannot be activated if a door is open.

**Disabling interior space protection:** If there is a requirement to disable interior space protection (if a window or sunroof is to be left open, for example), press the lock button twice within 10 seconds. If locking with the key, turn the key in the driver's door lock towards the rear of the vehicle twice within 10 seconds.

## Drive-away locking\*

This security feature locks all the doors automatically when the vehicle speed exceeds 16 km/h (10 mph).

Note that drive-away locking is not selectable by the driver, and that operation of the door locks by any other means (interior locking switch on the facia panel, for example) will unlock the doors. Drive-away locking can be configured by your Land Rover Retailer to automatically relock the doors after they are unlocked, when the vehicle speed exceeds 16 km/h (10 mph).



*Drive-away locking can be selected, deselected or re configured for individual handset keys, by a Land Rover Retailer.*

## Automatic relock\*

If the vehicle is unlocked using the remote, but no door or taildoor is opened after 2 minutes, the vehicle will relock (but not superlock), but the alarm will not be re-armed.



*Automatic relock can be selected or deselected by a Land Rover Retailer.*

## Panic alarm\*

If the taildoor unlock button, see **TAILDOOR, 36** is pressed and held, the alarm will sound and the hazard warning lamps will flash (market permitting). This feature is to draw attention to the vehicle and driver, to deter potential thieves/attackers.



*The panic alarm facility can be selected or deselected by a Land Rover Retailer.*

# Locks & Alarm

---

## Convenience Locking/unlocking\*

### WARNING

**Accidental closing of an electrically operated window or sunroof on fingers, hands or any vulnerable part of the body, can result in serious injury. Always observe the following precautions:**

**ENSURE that you have a clear view of all open apertures on the vehicle and that all apertures are unobstructed, before activating the Convenience Locking feature.**

**ENSURE children are kept clear whilst raising or lowering windows and opening or closing sunroof.**

**ENSURE that all adult passengers are familiar with the controls and the potential dangers of electrically operated windows and sunroof.**

---

'Convenience' Locking enables you to use the key to close the windows and sunroof at the same time as you secure the vehicle.

'Convenience' unlocking enables you to use the handset or key to open the windows and sunroof at the same time as you unlock and open the vehicle.

### **Convenience Locking:**

1. Ensure that all doors, hood and taildoor are properly closed.
2. Turn and hold the key in the driver's door lock towards the front of the vehicle) until all the windows and the sunroof are closed - the vehicle security system will be armed.

**Note:** Window and sunroof movement will stop if the key is released during this operation.

### **Convenience unlocking:**

1. Press and hold the unlock button on the remote handset (or turn and hold the key in the driver's door lock rearwards), the windows and then the sunroof will fully lower/open - the vehicle security system will be disarmed and the driver's door will unlock.
2. Release the button or key when the windows and sunroof are open as required.



*Convenience Locking/unlocking can be enabled or disabled by a Land Rover Retailer.*

## ENGINE IMMOBILIZATION

Engine immobilization is an important aspect of the security system, it is designed to safeguard the vehicle from theft, should the driver forget to lock the doors and prevents the engine from being started unless the GENUINE handset key is inserted into the starter switch. Engine immobilization is automatic whenever any of the following conditions occur.

- The vehicle is locked using handset or key.
- Three seconds after the starter switch has been turned off AND the driver's door opened.
- If the key is removed from the starter switch.

**Note:** *The engine will be re-mobilised automatically whenever the genuine handset key is inserted into the starter switch and turned to position 'I'.*

# Locks & Alarm

## REMOTE HANDSET BATTERY

**Caution: The handset contains delicate electronic circuits and must be protected from impact and water damage, high temperatures and humidity, direct sunlight and the effects of solvents, waxes and abrasive cleaners.**

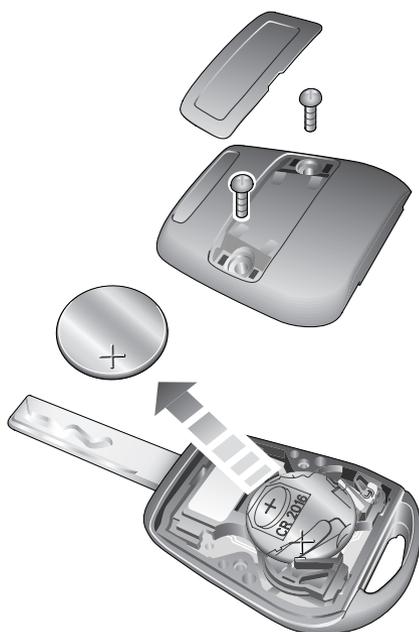
The battery should last for approximately three years dependent upon use. When the battery needs replacing it will be apparent from the following symptoms:

- 'KEY BATTERY LOW' will be displayed in the main message centre.
- A gradual deterioration in range and performance.

Always fit a Panasonic CR2016 replacement battery (available from a Land Rover Retailer).

### Battery replacement

1. With the handset face down, insert the blade of a small flat-bladed screwdriver into the slot at the rear of the handset and prise the screw cover upwards.
2. Remove the two screws and carefully remove the back of the handset.
3. Use a small flat-bladed screwdriver to prise the battery from its mounting (see illustration), taking care to avoid touching the circuit board or the metal battery contacts.
4. Fit the new battery, ensuring that correct polarity is maintained ('+' side facing up). Finger marks will adversely affect battery life; if possible, avoid touching the flat surfaces of the battery and wipe them clean before fitting.

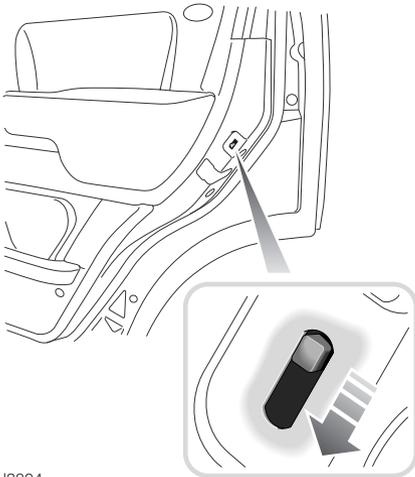


H3832

Refit the back of the handset, insert and tighten the screws and firmly press the screw cover back into position. The handset is now ready for use.

# Locks & Alarm

## CHILD-PROOF LOCKS



H3804

Move the locking levers on the rear doors down to engage the child locks.

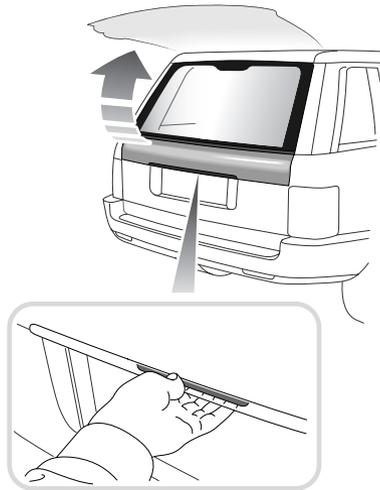
With the child-proof locks engaged, the rear doors cannot be opened from inside the vehicle, thereby avoiding the risk of a door being opened accidentally while the vehicle is moving.

### WARNING

**TO AVOID POSSIBLE INJURY OR DEATH  
NEVER LEAVE CHILDREN UNSUPERVISED IN  
THE VEHICLE.**

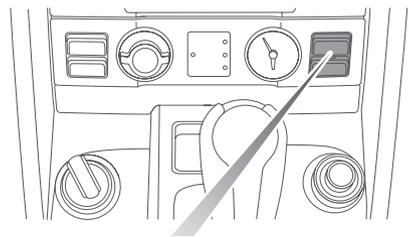
## TAILDOOR

### Opening the upper taildoor



H3929

With all doors unlocked, press the switch on the bottom edge of the upper taildoor and lift to open.

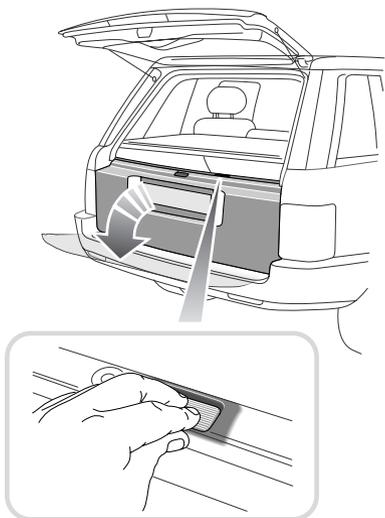


H4884

If single point entry has been used and only the driver's door is unlocked, press the taildoor release button (illustration above).

# Locks & Alarm

## Opening the lower taildoor

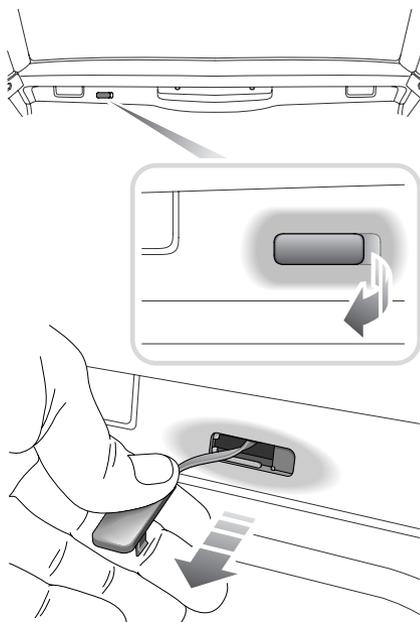


H3930

With the upper taildoor open, press the release switch on the top of the lower taildoor (see inset), then lower the taildoor.

## EMERGENCY MANUAL OPERATION

### Upper taildoor:



H4052

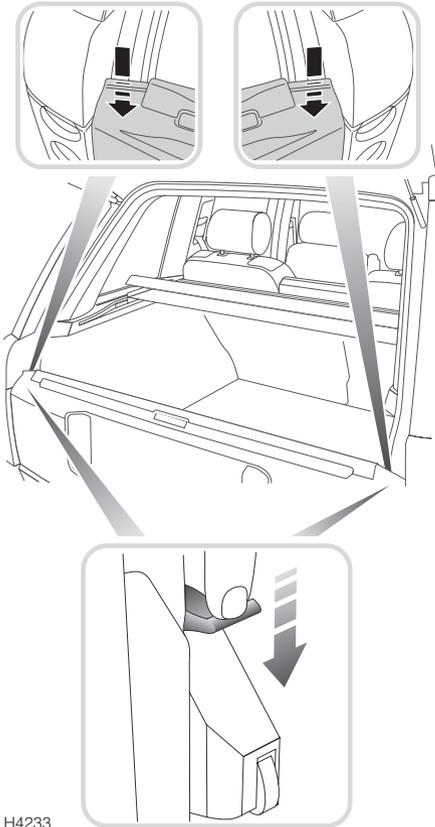
If the battery has been disconnected or has discharged, the taildoor can be opened manually as follows:

- Fold the rear loadspace cover, see **Folding the loadspace cover from inside the vehicle, 123**, for instructions.
- From the rear loadspace, lever out the plastic tab (see inset).
- Pull the tab to release the upper taildoor.
- Raise the upper taildoor.

# Locks & Alarm

---

## Lower taildoor:



H4233

With the upper taildoor open, push down on the two hidden catches (see upper insets), either side of the taildoor. The catches can be operated either one at a time, or simultaneously.

# Seats

## POWER OPERATED FRONT SEATS

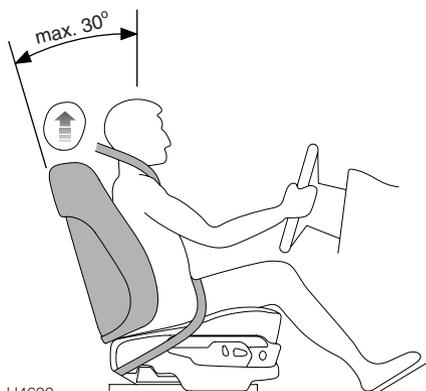
### WARNING

To avoid the risk of loss of control and personal injury, **DO NOT** adjust the driver's seat while the vehicle is in motion.

### Sitting correctly

The seats, head restraints, seat belts and airbags all contribute to the protection of the occupants. Optimal use of these components will give you more protection. Therefore, observe the following points:

- Sit in the most upright position with the base of your spine as far back as possible and the backrest not reclined more than 30 degrees.
- Adjust the head restraints so that the top of the head restraint is level with the upper portion of the head.
- Do not move the front seat too close to the instrument panel. The driver should hold the steering wheel with slightly bent arms. The legs should also be slightly bent so that the pedals can be pressed to the floor.
- The seat belt should rest in the centre of the shoulder. The lap part should fit tightly across the hips and not on the stomach.



The seat adjustment controls are situated on the outboard side of the seat plinth.

The driver and front passenger seats should be positioned as far rearward as practical. Ideally the seat should be positioned so that the steering wheel can be held with the arms slightly bent and the seat back in a nearly upright position.

Make sure your driving position is comfortable and enables you to maintain full control of the vehicle.

### WARNING

**An inflating airbag may cause serious injury or death if the seats are positioned, or adjusted incorrectly.**

# Seats

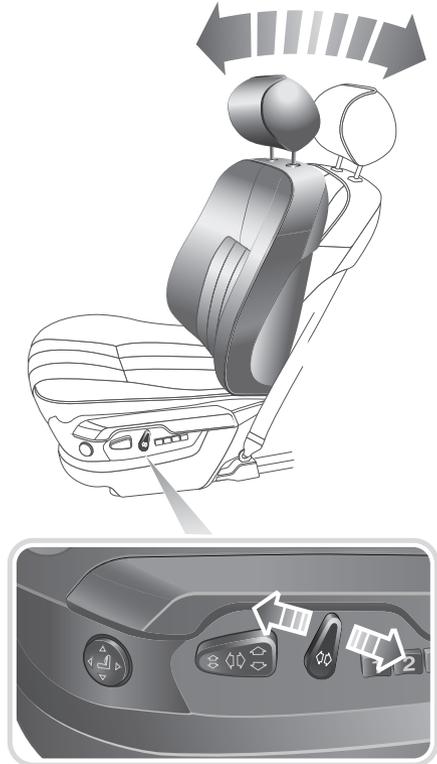
## Forward/backward adjustment



H3845

Push and hold the switch forwards or backwards to move the seat to the desired position.

## Seat back adjustment



H3842

Twist the switch forward or backward until the desired seat back angle is achieved.

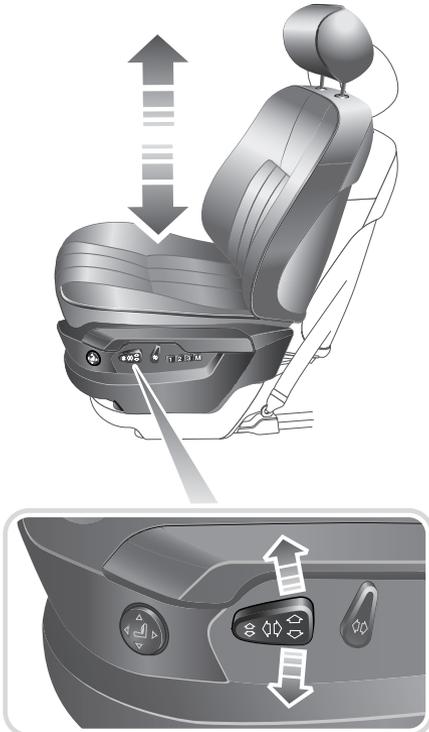
### WARNING

**DO NOT** travel with the seat backs reclined steeply rearwards. Optimum benefit is obtained from the seat belt with the seat back angle set to no more than 30 degrees from the upright (vertical).

Failure to maintain the correct seat back angle will reduce the effectiveness of the seat belts and increase the risk of serious injury or death in a crash.

# Seats

## Seat cushion height adjustment (driver's seat only)



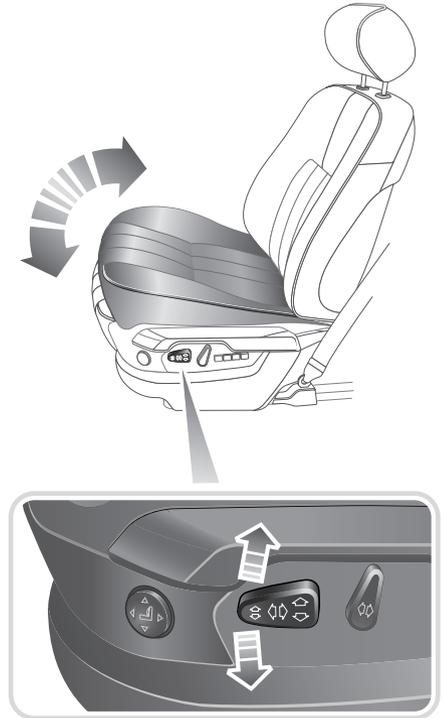
H3843

Push the switch up or down to raise or lower the cushion.

### WARNING

**An inflating airbag can cause facial abrasions and other injuries. Injuries caused by air bag inflation can be minimised by ensuring that the driver and front passenger are seated correctly (seat back upright, seat positioned as far back as practical, and seat belt worn correctly).**

## Seat cushion angle adjustment

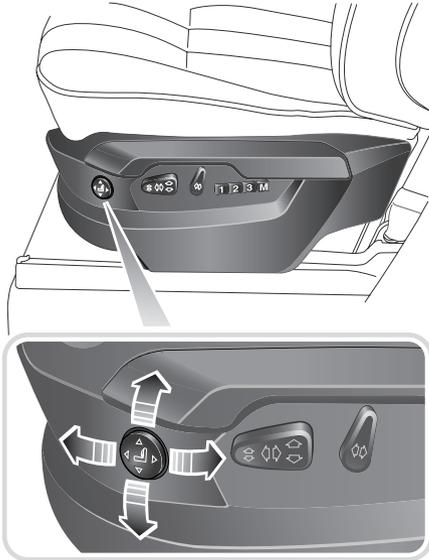


H3844

Twist the front of the switch to tilt the seat cushion to the desired position. Note that the front and rear of the switch work independently - the front tilting the front of the cushion, the rear of the switch adjusts the height of the seat cushion.

# Seats

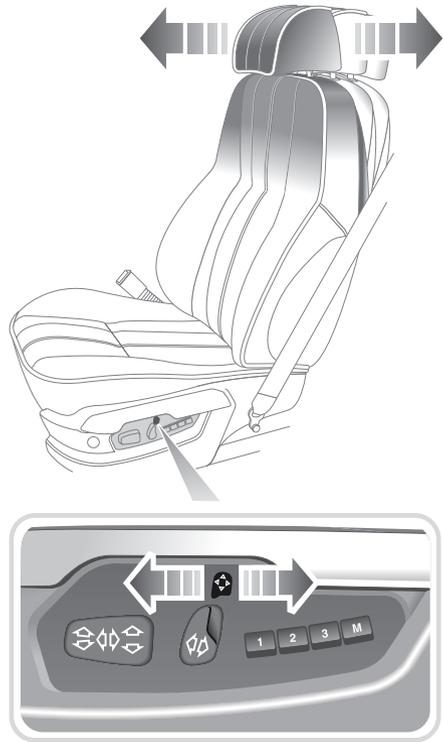
## Lumbar support adjustment



H3846

Press the right or left of the switch to increase or decrease support to the lumbar region of the back. Press the top or bottom of the switch to increase support at the top or bottom of the seat back.

## Shoulder support adjustment\*

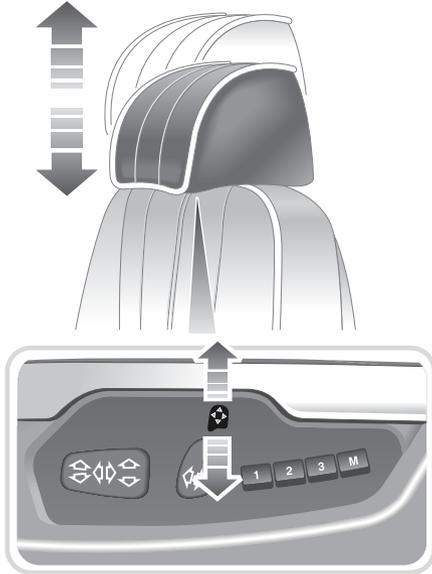


H4040

Push the control forward or rearward to increase or decrease shoulder support.

# Seats

## Head restraint adjustment\*



H4042

Push the switch up or down until the head restraint cushion is level with the back of the head.

### WARNING

Head restraints are designed to support the back of the head (NOT THE NECK), and to restrain rearward movement of the head in the event of a collision. The centre of the restraint must be positioned level with the centre of the head to be effective.

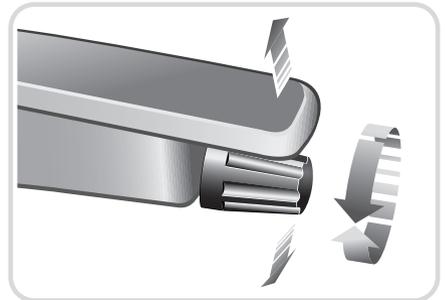
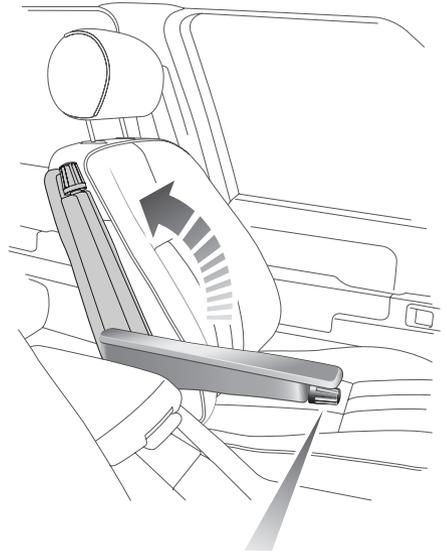
**DO NOT** drive or carry passengers with the head restraints removed from occupied seats.

**DO NOT** adjust the head restraints whilst the vehicle is in motion.

Driving the vehicle without head restraints in position, or incorrectly adjusted will increase the risk of serious injury in the event of a collision.

## FOLDING ARMRESTS

### Front



H3791

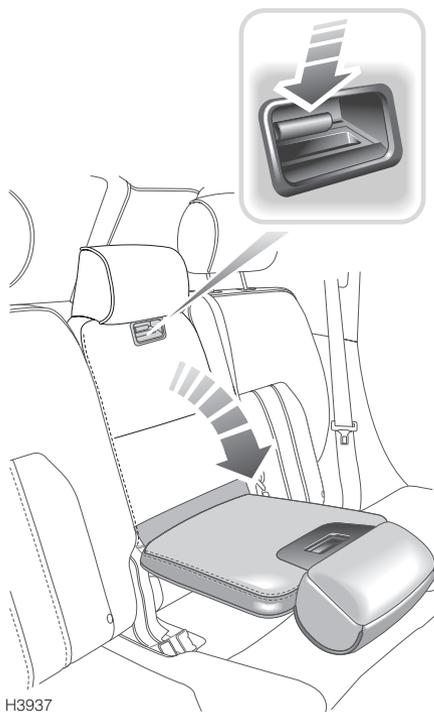
Vehicles are fitted with adjustable front seat armrests, which can be either; stowed vertically in line with the seat backrest when not required, or folded horizontally to serve as an arm/elbow rest.

# Seats

---

The set height/angle of each armrest can be adjusted by turning the knob set into the end of the armrest: clockwise to raise and counter-clockwise to lower (see inset).

## Rear

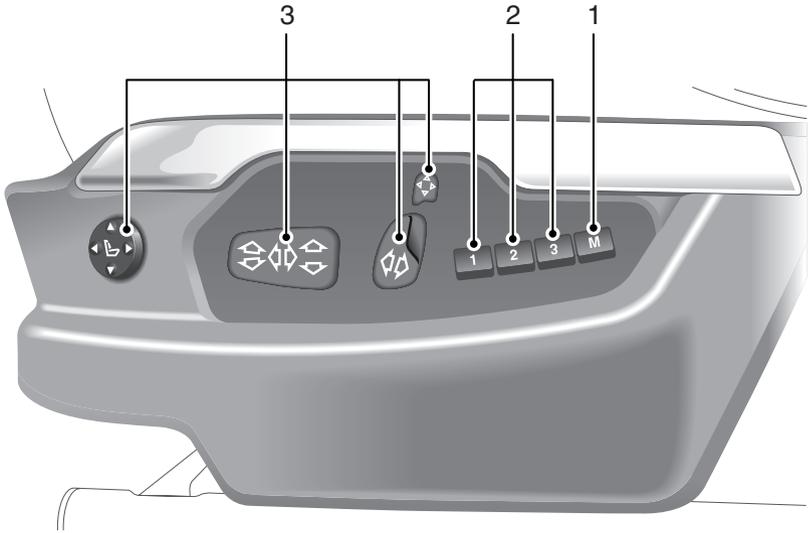


To fold down the armrest, press the catch (beneath the centre rear seat head restraint). With the armrest in position, the head restraint can be opened to access the rear cup holders, see **CUP HOLDERS, 114** for further information.

**Note:** *The rear armrest can not be used if a passenger is seated in the centre rear seat.*

# Seats

## DRIVER'S SEAT MEMORY FACILITY



H4038

*Model fitted with 'contour' seats illustrated*

### WARNING

**Before activating the seat memory, ensure that the area immediately surrounding the seat is clear of obstructions and that all occupants are clear of moving parts.**

**Note:** For information on adjusting the mirrors, see **EXTERIOR MIRRORS, 67** or steering wheel, see **STEERING WHEEL ADJUSTMENT, 66**.

1. Memory store button
2. Memory pre-set buttons
3. Seat adjustment controls. See **POWER OPERATED FRONT SEATS, 39** for further information.

Your vehicle can memorize up to three different driver seating positions (as well as the associated mirror and steering wheel positions). This enables three separate drivers to achieve optimum comfort at the touch of a button.

# Seats

---

## Setting the memory pre-sets

Adjust the seat, exterior mirrors and the steering column to the desired position. Press the memory store button (1) to activate the memory function (switch indicator light illuminates), then press the desired pre-set button (2) to store a seat/mirror/steering wheel setting. A second press of the memory store button (1), before pressing a pre-set, cancels the memory function (light extinguishes).

If a pre-set is not pressed within approximately 7 seconds of the memory function being activated, the operation will cancel (switch indicator light extinguishes).

## Recalling a stored seat position

Open the driver's door, then press the pre-set button associated with the desired driving position. The seat, mirrors and steering column automatically move to the position stored by that pre-set.

If it is required to recall a seating position once the driver's door is shut, insert the starter key and turn it to position 'I'.

**Note:** *To stop seat movement at any time when recalling a memory setting, press any seat adjustment control.*

## Convenience seats\*

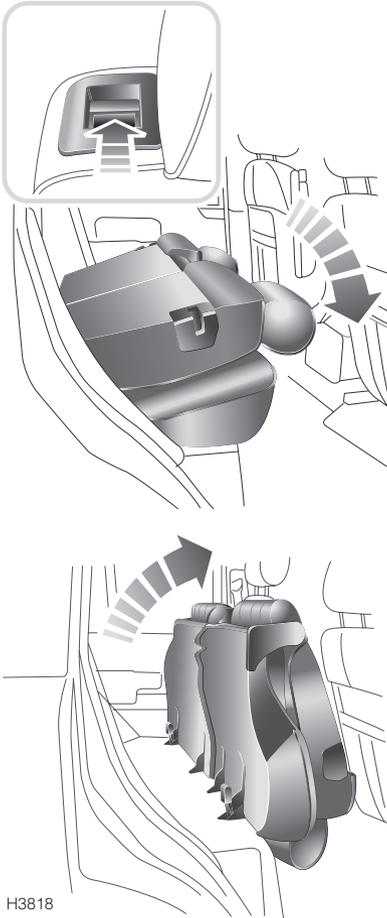
Each handset can be used to memorize the users preferred seating position. When the vehicle is unlocked using the handset, the seat will automatically adjust to the position previously selected with that handset. This feature can also be programmed to adjust the driver's seat when the driver's door is opened.



*Convenience seats and associated options can be selected or deselected by a Land Rover Retailer.*

# Seats

## FOLDING THE REAR SEATS



One or both parts of the split rear seat can be either partially or fully folded to further increase the rear loadspace.

1. Ensure the head restraints are fully lowered and the armrest is stowed.
2. To release either part of the backrest, lift the lever shown in the inset and then fold the backrest onto the seat base.
3. To fold the whole assembly forward, lift the rear of the seat base upwards, the assembly can be folded forward as shown.

### WARNING

**It is extremely dangerous to ride in the cargo area. In a collision, people riding in this area are more likely to be injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and safety belts. Be sure that everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and using a safety belt properly.**

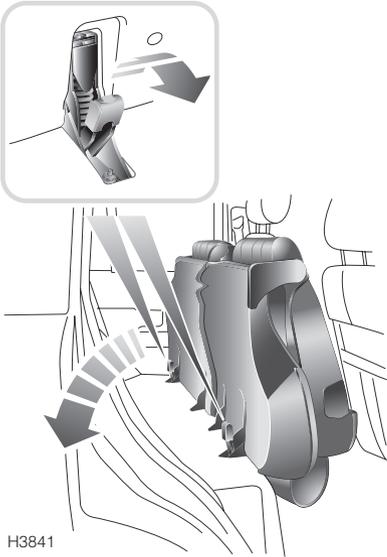
### WARNING

**DO NOT** adjust any part of a seat while the vehicle is in motion.

**Vehicle movement may cause the unlatched seat to suddenly shift, and may cause injuries.**

# Seats

## Returning the seat to the upright position



Pull the release lever (see inset) rearwards, then push the seat assembly back onto the floor - the floor catches should latch with the base of the seat. Then raise the backrest.

If the backrest cannot be raised easily, DO NOT force it. This indicates that the seat base has not fully engaged with the floor catches (note that the seat assembly is designed to prevent the backrest from being raised unless the seat is properly secured to the floor).

With the seat base secure, the backrest can be raised and locked in position (none of the RED panels on the release levers should be visible when the backrest is correctly latched).

## WARNING

After the seat is returned to the upright position, the latching mechanism should be checked and physically tested to ensure that both the seat base and backrest are secure before driving.

In a frontal impact, if the rear seat is not secured (fully latched), it may swing forward contacting the seat in front of it, increasing the risk of injury or death to occupants in those seats.

## HEATED SEATS\*

For information on operating the front and rear seat heaters, please refer to **SEAT HEATERS\***, 107.

# Seat Belts

---

## SEAT BELT SAFETY

### WARNING

Seat belts are life saving equipment. In a collision, occupants not wearing a seat belt can be thrown around inside, or possibly thrown out of the vehicle. This is likely to result in more serious injuries than would have been the case had a seat belt been properly worn. It may even result in loss of life.

**DO NOT** take chances with safety.

**DO** make sure ALL occupants are securely strapped in at all times - even for the shortest journeys.

The airbag supplemental restraint system (SRS) is designed to add to the overall effectiveness of the seat belts. It does not replace them. **SEAT BELTS MUST ALWAYS BE WORN.**

Ensure that all seat belts are worn correctly - an improperly worn seat belt increases the risk of death or serious injury in the event of a collision.

**DO** use the seat belts to secure items of luggage that are to be carried on the seats - in the event of an accident, loose items become flying missiles capable of causing serious injury, or even death.

**DO NOT** fit more than one person into a belt; this could result in the occupants striking each other and causing injury in the event of a crash.

**DO NOT** use, or attempt to fit, a seat belt that is twisted or obstructed in any way that could impede its smooth operation. If a belt is twisted, it must be straightened before use. Using a twisted or obstructed seat belt could increase the risk of injury in a crash.

---

### WARNING

**ALWAYS** use the seat belt lock (buckle) nearest the wearer. If the belt is locked in the wrong place, the seat belt will not fit correctly and may ride up over the abdomen, causing serious internal injury in a crash.

In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a seat belt.

---

# Seat Belts

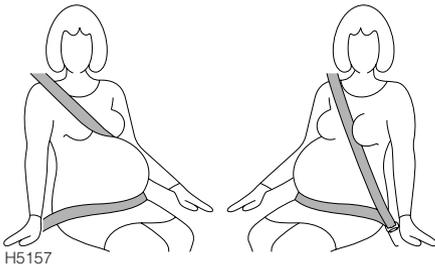
## PREGNANT WOMEN

### WARNING

**Pregnant women must wear a correctly positioned seat belt; it is safer for mother and unborn child.**

There are many ways that the belt can be misused for the sake of comfort, but there is only one way of wearing it safely.

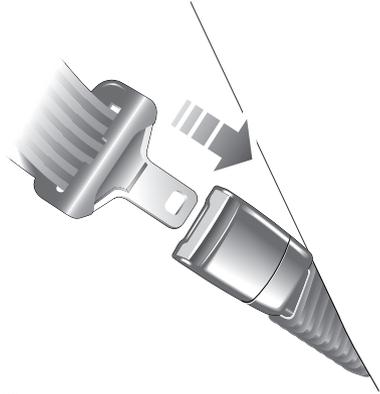
During pregnancy, women should wear the lap belt across the hips below the baby, with the diagonal belt passing across the shoulder, between the breasts and to one side of the baby, if in doubt, consult a doctor.



Never place anything between you and the seat belt in an attempt to cushion the impact in the event of an accident. It can be dangerous and reduce the effectiveness of the seat belt in preventing injury.

## WEARING SEAT BELTS CORRECTLY

### Fastening the seat belts



Inertia reel belts are fitted to all front and rear seating positions.

Draw the belt over the shoulder and across the chest and, ensuring that the webbing is not twisted, insert the metal tongue plate into the buckle nearest the wearer - a 'CLICK' indicates that the belt is securely locked.

In some circumstances, perhaps due to the vehicle being parked on a slope, the inertia mechanism may engage, preventing the initial extension of a belt. This is not a fault - ease the belt free and use it.

Adjust the seat belt to eliminate any slack in the webbing. DO NOT slacken the webbing by holding the belt away from the body - to be fully effective, the seat belt must remain in full contact with the body at all times. Also, ensure that the lap belt fits as low on the hips as possible and that the shoulder belt passes across the shoulder without slipping off or pressing on the neck.

# Seat Belts

## Positioning the belt

### WARNING

Seat belts are designed to bear upon the bony structure of the body (pelvis, chest and shoulders), and can only be worn safely with the seats in a normal, upright, position.

**ALWAYS** fit the lap strap as low on the hips as possible (never across the abdomen) and ensure that the diagonal belt passes across the shoulder without slipping off or pressing on the neck.

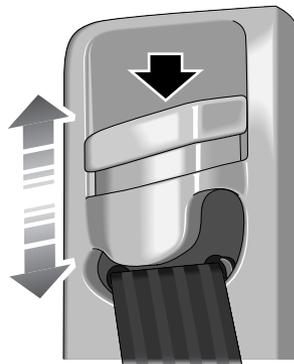
**DO NOT** travel with the seat backs reclined steeply rearwards. Optimum benefit is obtained from the seat belt with the seat back set to an angle of not more than 30 degrees from the upright. Seat belts are only effective when they are properly positioned on the body - a steeply reclined seat could allow a passenger to slip under either the shoulder or the lap belt.

**DO NOT** wear the shoulder belt under your arm. In an accident this could increase your chances of being injured.

## Releasing the belt

Press the RED button on the seat belt buckle.

## Upper anchorage adjustment



H3803

The height of the seat belt upper anchorage can be adjusted for comfort AND safety on both front seats and also the two outer rear seats. Press down (solid arrow) to release the catch, then lift or push down to adjust the height of the anchorage. For safety, the seat belt should always be worn with the webbing crossing the shoulder MIDWAY BETWEEN THE NECK AND THE EDGE OF THE SHOULDER.

### WARNING

**Misadjustment of the seat belt could reduce its effectiveness in a crash. Always ensure the anchorage has 'clicked' into one of the locked positions before driving and DO NOT adjust the height once the vehicle is in motion.**

Where possible, center rear seat passengers should adjust their position on the seat to enable the seat belt webbing to cross the shoulder without pressing on the neck.

For children, where the seat belt cannot be properly positioned, the use of a booster seat appropriate to the age and size of the occupant is recommended.

# Seat Belts

---

## SEAT BELT PRE-TENSIONERS

The seat belt pre-tensioners activate in conjunction with the airbag SRS and provide additional protection in the event of a severe frontal impact on the vehicle, see **HOW THE AIRBAG SRS WORKS, 61**. The pre-tensioners automatically retract the seat belts fitted to the front seats. This reduces any slack in both the lap and diagonal portions of the belts, thereby reducing forward movement of the belt wearer in the event of a severe frontal collision.

The airbag SRS warning light on the instrument panel will alert you to any malfunction of the seat belt pre-tensioners.

If the pre-tensioners have been activated, the seat belts will still function as restraints, and must be worn in the event that the vehicle remains in a driveable condition. However, for the pre-tensioner to function, it must be replaced.

### WARNING

**The seat belt pre-tensioners will only be activated once and then MUST BE REPLACED by a Land Rover Retailer. Failure to replace the pre-tensioners will reduce the efficiency of the vehicle's front restraint system.**

**After any frontal impact, always have the seat belts and pre-tensioners checked and, if necessary, replaced by a Land Rover Retailer.**

**In the interests of safety, it is recommended that removal or replacement of the front seats and seat belts should only be carried out by a Land Rover Retailer.**

---

*Note: The seat belt pre-tensioners will NOT be activated by rear, side or minor frontal impacts.*

## Service information

### WARNING

**DO NOT attempt to service, repair, replace, modify or tamper with any part of the pre-tensioner and airbag SRS, or wiring in the vicinity of a pre-tensioner or airbag SRS component; this could cause the system to activate, resulting in personal injury.**

---

After fifteen years from the original date of registration (or the installation date of a replacement pre-tensioners), some components will need to be replaced by a Land Rover Retailer (note the 'Seat belt pre-tensioner replacement date' shown in the Passport to Service).

In addition, ALWAYS contact your Retailer if:

- an airbag inflates.
- a pre-tensioner activates.
- the front or side of the vehicle is damaged, even if the pre-tensioner has not activated.

# Seat Belts

---

## CARING FOR SEAT BELTS

### WARNING

**DO NOT** allow foreign matter (particularly sugary food and drink particles) to enter the seat belt locks - such substances can render the locks inoperative.

Regularly inspect the belt webbing for signs of fraying, cuts and wear, and also pay particular attention to the condition of the fixing points and adjusters.

**DO NOT** bleach or dye the webbing. Clean the webbing using warm water and non-detergent soap only - allow to dry naturally and **DO NOT** retract or use the belts until they are completely dry.

**Always replace a seat belt that shows signs of webbing wear or has withstood the strain of a severe vehicle impact.**

---

### WARNING

**Always replace a seat belt that shows signs of webbing damage or has withstood the strain of a severe vehicle impact.**

---

### Testing inertia reel belts

- With the seat belt fastened, give the webbing near the buckle a quick upward pull. The buckle must remain securely locked.
- With the seat belt unfastened, unreel the webbing to the limit of its travel. Check that unreeling is free from snatches and snags and then allow the belt to FULLY retract.
- Partially unreel the webbing, then hold the tongue plate and give it a quick forward pull. The mechanism must lock automatically and prevent any further unreeling.

If a seat belt should fail any of these tests, contact your Retailer immediately.

# Child Restraints

---

## CHILD RESTRAINTS FOR SMALL CHILDREN AND BABIES

Infants and children too small for adult seat belts should be restrained in a child safety seat or restraint system appropriate to their age and/or size, and which is approved for use in your vehicle.

Child seats and restraint systems designed for your vehicle will be one of two types:

- Those secured in vehicle seats by lap belts (or the lap belt portion of a lap/shoulder belt),
- 'LATCH' type child restraints employing anchor bars built into the rear seat frame.

Some child restraint systems also incorporate a tether strap which can be attached to an anchorage point on the vehicle. Information about tether strap attachment points and the seat belt locking mechanism, which is used to restrain child seats and restraints is shown later in this section.

### WARNING

**When fitting child seats and restraint systems, always ensure that the manufacturer's fitting instructions are followed exactly. Note that crash statistics show that children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seating positions than in the front.**

---

## CHILD RESTRAINTS FOR LARGER CHILDREN

In a situation where a child is too large to fit into a child safety seat, but is still too small to safely fit the 3 point seat belt properly, a booster seat **MUST** be used. Follow the manufacturer's fitting instructions exactly, then adjust the seat belt to suit, see **Upper anchorage adjustment, 51.**

### WARNING

**DO NOT allow a baby or infant to be carried on the lap. The force of a crash can increase effective body weight by as much as 30 times, making it impossible to hold on to the child.**

**ALWAYS transport children 12 years old and under in the back seat and always properly use appropriate child restraints.**

**Children typically require the use of a booster seat appropriate to their age and size, thereby enabling the seat belts to be properly fitted, reducing the risk of injury in a crash.**

**Children could be endangered in a crash if their child restraints are not properly secured in the vehicle.**

**DO NOT use a child seat that hooks over the seat back. This type of seat cannot be satisfactorily secured, and is unlikely to be safe for your child.**

**Never leave a child unattended in your vehicle.**

---

# Child Restraints

## Vehicles fitted with a passenger airbag.

Children under 12 years should travel in the rear of the vehicle at all times. Crash statistics show that children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seating positions than in the front.

However, if it is essential that a child travel in the front, set the seat fully rearward and seat the child in an approved, FORWARD FACING child seat.



The above symbol affixed to the passenger side 'B' post of your vehicle, warns against the use of a REAR FACING child seat in the front passenger seat, when a passenger airbag is fitted. This type of child seat could cause serious injury or death to a child in the event of an airbag deployment.

Take careful note of all labels concerning child restraint usage, attached to your vehicle.

### **WARNING**

**UNDER NO CIRCUMSTANCES SHOULD A REARWARD FACING CHILD SEAT BE INSTALLED IN ANY FRONT PASSENGER SEAT POSITION. INFLATION OF THE AIRBAG COULD RESULT IN SERIOUS INJURY OR DEATH TO A CHILD.**

## Seat belt locking mechanism

All front passenger and second row seat belts have a special locking mechanism which aids the securing of child restraints. The mechanism is used to secure a child restraint as follows:

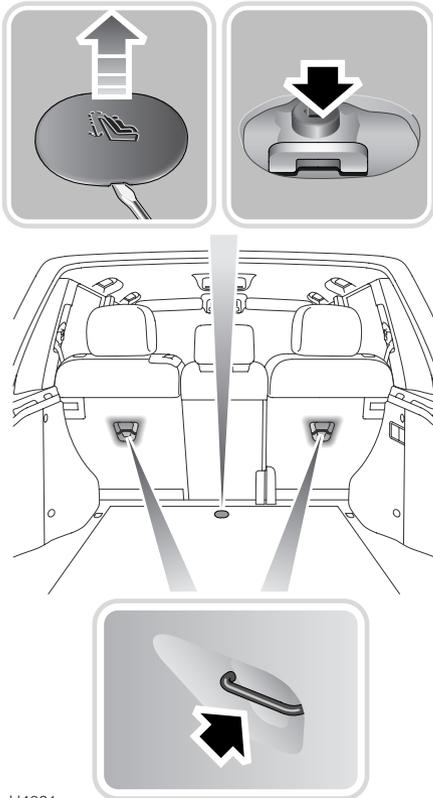
1. Attach the seat belt to the child restraint in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.
2. Insert the metal tongue of the seat belt into the lock ensuring that it engages with a 'click'.
3. Pull on the shoulder section of the belt until it is fully extended.
4. Allow the belt to retract. A 'clicking' sound will confirm that the mechanism has engaged.
5. Remove all slack from the mechanism, by pulling upwards on the shoulder belt, immediately above the child restraint.
6. Evaluate the tightness of the installation by rocking the child seat back and forth to ensure it is tight and stable.
7. If the child seat needs to be tightened further, remove the metal tongue of the seat belt from the buckle and feed some of the shoulder belt webbing back into the reel (thereby shortening the belt). Then reattach the metal tongue into the buckle (if the belt has been tightened correctly, this will take some effort).
8. Re-evaluate the tightness of the installation. If the child seat is still too loose, repeat the above procedure, making the belt incrementally shorter (and therefore tighter). It may be necessary to put your weight onto the seat (to compress the seat cushion) in order to fasten the belt.

To deactivate the locking mechanism, unlatch the seat belt and allow it to fully retract.

# Child Restraints

## TETHER STRAP ANCHORAGES

Provision is made in the rear seats for the fitting of up to three child seats, of the type that requires tether strap anchorage points.



H4621

### WARNING

Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult rear seat belts or for harnesses for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.

There are three tether strap anchorage points. These should be used to attach tether straps from child seats or restraint systems. Two anchorage points are fitted to the back of the second row seat, these should be used for the two outer seating positions. A third single anchorage point is located in the center of the floor panel behind the rear center seat for attaching a tether strap from the center seat position. Remove the cover to reveal the center child-seat anchoring point.

### Attaching tether straps

1. Install the child restraint securely in one of the second row seating positions.
2. Pass the tether strap over the back of the vehicle seat and beneath the underside of the head restraint.
3. Attach the clip on the head of the tether strap to the tether anchor on the back of the vehicle seat (or, for the center seating position, on the tether anchor in the floor panel behind the rear center seat).
4. Tighten the tether strap according to the manufacturer's instructions to remove any slack in the webbing.

### WARNING

Always follow the child seat or restraint system manufacturer's instructions when fitting tether straps.

When fitting a child seat or restraint system, always pass the tether strap over the top of the seat back and beneath the underside of the head restraint.

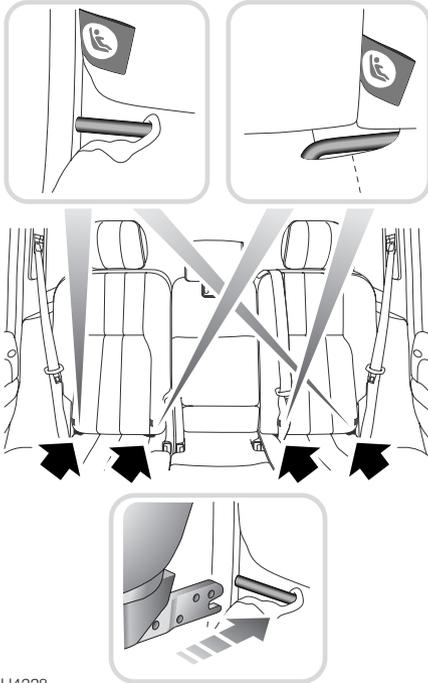
If a child seat or restraint system is to be fitted to the center seating position, the center armrest must be in the stowed position (folded into the seat).

# Child Restraints

## 'LATCH' TYPE CHILD RESTRAINTS

### 'LATCH' (Lower Anchors and Tether for Children)

The 'LATCH' three-point type child restraint system complies with Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standards and is approved for fitting in your vehicle.



H4228

## Fitting the restraints

This type of child restraint system should only be fitted in the two outer seating positions of the second row seats. Anchor bars built into the rear seat frame enable 'LATCH' type restraints to be securely attached to the vehicle seat in these positions only. The anchor bar locations are shown in the illustration above.



H4229

# Child Restraints

---

## **Anchoring the tether strap**

Pass the tether strap over the top of the seat and beneath the underside of the head restraint. Attach the clip on the head of the tether strap to the appropriate tether anchor.

### **WARNING**

**If the restraint is not correctly anchored, there is a significant risk of injury to the child, in the event of a collision or emergency braking.**

---

### **WARNING**

**DO NOT attempt to fit 'LATCH' type restraints to the center seating position - the anchor bars are designed to hold restraints in the outer seating positions only.**

---

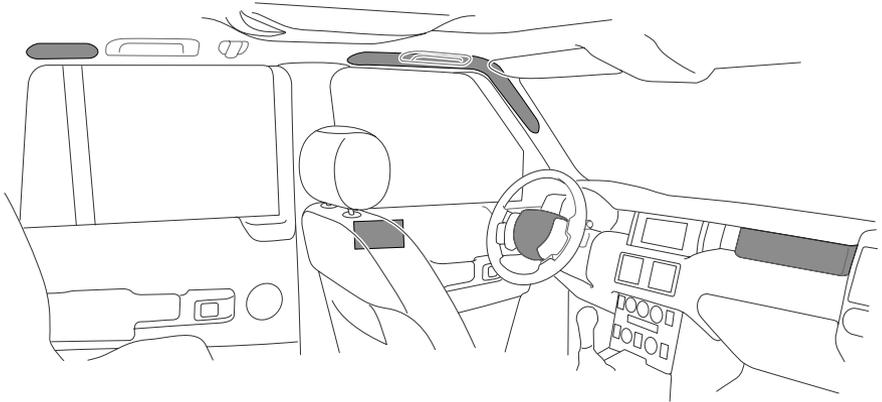
When fitting the 'LATCH' type of child restraint, always follow the instructions supplied by the manufacturer of the restraint.

Once the restraint is installed, you are recommended to test the security of the installation before seating the child. Attempt to twist the restraint from side to side and to pull the restraint away from the vehicle seat; then check that the anchors are still securely in place.

# Airbag SRS

---

## AIRBAG SRS



H5827

The airbag supplementary restraint system (SRS) incorporates front, side thorax and side head airbags for the driver and front passenger and side head airbags for the outer rear passengers (see illustration for airbag locations).

### WARNING

**Always remember; the SRS/airbags are a supplementary restraint system providing ADDITIONAL protection in certain types of collision only - they DO NOT replace the need to wear a seat belt. To reduce the risk of severe injury or death in the event of a crash, all occupants in all seating positions, including the driver, should always wear their seat belt, whether or not an airbag is present at that seating position.**

---

Provided the occupants of the vehicle are correctly seated, with seat belts properly worn, the airbags will provide additional protection to the chest and facial areas of the front seat occupants in the event of the vehicle receiving a severe frontal impact, and to the side of the body facing the impact of front seat occupants, if a severe side collision occurs.

Side head impact protection will afford additional protection to the side of the head facing the impact for the front seat and outer rear seat occupants, in the event of a side collision.

**Note:** Inflation and deflation of the side thorax and front airbags takes place very quickly and will not protect against the effects of secondary impacts that may occur. Side head airbags deflate at a slower rate and therefore do offer some additional protection in the event of a secondary impact.

# Airbag SRS

## WARNING

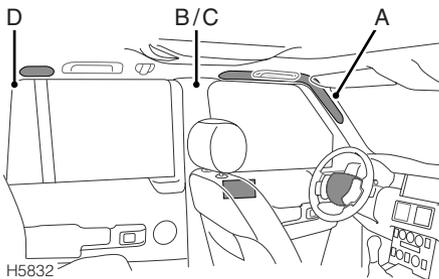
Do not allow passengers to obstruct the operation of the airbags by placing feet, knees or any other part of the person, or any other objects in contact with, or in close proximity to, an airbag module.

Following inflation, some SRS/airbag components are hot - **DO NOT** touch until they have cooled.

Even with SRS/airbag equipment fitted, seat belts must **ALWAYS** be worn because inflation and deflation of the side thorax and front airbags takes place very quickly and will not provide protection against the effects of secondary impacts that can occur during multiple vehicle collisions.

National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) recommends a minimum distance of 10 inches (25 cm) between an occupant's chest and the driver's air bag module.

*Note: The illustration below shows the location of the airbags relative to the 'A', 'B/C' and 'D' posts.*



## WARNING

The airbag module inflates with considerable speed and force. For your safety:

An inflating airbag can cause facial abrasions and other injuries. The injurious effects of airbag inflation can be reduced, by ensuring driver and passenger are seated correctly, with the seat moved back as far as is practical, and the seat belts worn correctly.

**NEVER** attach or position items (including accessory items) to an airbag module cover, including; the roof lining, 'A' and 'B/C' post finishers and the inside of the front doors, or place items of hand luggage or any objects on the top of a module cover; these could interfere with the inflation of the airbag, or if the airbag inflates, be propelled inside the vehicle causing injury or death to the occupants.

Activation of an airbag creates dust, causing possible breathing difficulties for asthma sufferers or other people with respiratory problems. If an airbag is activated, any occupant who suffers from breathing difficulties should; either leave the vehicle as quickly as possible, or obtain fresh air by fully opening the windows or doors.

Both front seating positions are equipped with knee bolsters to provide knee protection in the event of an impact. **DO NOT** modify the bolsters, or mount after-market equipment on or behind them.

# Airbag SRS

---

## Seating positions

### WARNING

**To reduce the risk of accidental injury from inflating airbags, seat belts should be correctly worn at all times. In addition, both driver and front seat passenger should adjust their seat to provide the maximum practical distance from the front airbags. Front seat and outer rear seat occupants should also ensure that a gap is maintained between the upper torso and head, and the side of the vehicle, to enable unobstructed inflation of the side thorax for the front seat occupants and side head airbags for both front and rear passengers.**

**Occupants not properly restrained in designated seating positions are at high risk of death or serious injury in the event of airbag deployment.**

**Never place your arm over an airbag module as a deploying airbag can cause serious fractures or other injuries.**

---

In order to provide optimum protection in the event of a severe impact, it is necessary for the airbags to deploy with considerable speed.

An inflating airbag can cause facial abrasions and other injuries if the occupant is too close to the airbag at the time of its deployment.

### Occupant detection

A sensor in the front passenger seat detects whether or not the seat is occupied. If, in the event of an accident, the sensor has detected that there is no front passenger present, the front passenger airbag systems (front, side thorax and side head protection airbags) will not activate.

## HOW THE AIRBAG SRS WORKS

In the event of a collision, the airbag control unit monitors the rate of deceleration or acceleration induced by the collision, to determine whether the airbags should be deployed.

Operation of the airbag SRS is dependent entirely on the rate at which the vehicle's passenger compartment changes speed as a result of a collision. The circumstances affecting different collisions (vehicle speed, angle of impact, type and size of object hit, for example), vary considerably and will affect the rate of acceleration or deceleration accordingly.

**Note:** *The airbag SRS is not designed to operate as a result of rear collisions, minor frontal or side impacts, roll over accidents; nor will it operate as a result of heavy braking or driving over bumps and potholes.*

*However, if as a result of an impact, you believe the airbags should have deployed and they failed to do so, please call 1(800)637-6837 for advice, or arrange for a Land Rover representative to inspect the vehicle to determine whether the system operated correctly.*

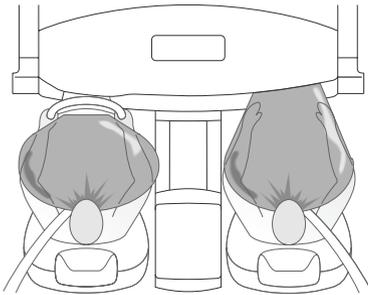
It follows, therefore, that significant superficial damage can occur without the airbags deploying or, conversely, that a relatively small amount of structural damage may cause the airbags to be deployed.

# Airbag SRS

## Dual stage deployment

The front airbags deploy in two stages, depending on the severity of the frontal collision. The unit monitors the rate of deceleration or acceleration during the impact and, if a relatively minor frontal impact in which airbag deployment is warranted occurs, the airbags only inflate sufficiently to protect the front seat occupants from the forward movement caused by the impact. If, however the system detects a relatively severe frontal impact, the airbags will fully inflate, thereby providing maximum protection to the front seat occupants.

## Airbag deployment



H4222

**Note:** Airbags will only deploy when they are required to supplement the restraining force of the seat belt.

In the case of a severe frontal collision, both front airbags will be deployed. In the case of a severe side collision, only the side thorax airbags and side head impact protection airbag on the impacted side of the vehicle will inflate. However, there may also be impact conditions whereby one set of side and both front airbags deploy at the same time, or where front and side airbags respond separately as a result of a secondary impact occurring after the initial collision has taken place.

## WARNING

**An inflating airbag can cause facial abrasions and other injuries. Reduce the risk of injury by ensuring that front seat occupants are wearing their seat belts and are seated correctly, with the seat as far back as is practical.**

Airbag inflation is virtually instantaneous and occurs with considerable force, accompanied by a loud noise. The inflated bag, together with the seat belt restraint system, limit the movement of an occupant, thereby reducing the risk of injury to the head and upper torso.

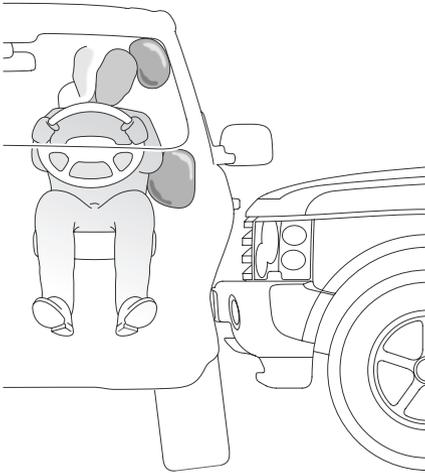
When an airbag inflates, a fine powder is released. This is not an indication of a malfunction. However, the powder may cause irritation to the skin and should be thoroughly flushed from the eyes and any cuts or abrasions of the skin. After inflation, front and side thorax airbags deflate immediately (side head protection airbags deflate slowly). This provides a gradual cushioning effect for the occupant and also ensures that the driver's forward vision is not obscured.

## WARNING

**After inflation, some airbag components are hot - DO NOT touch until they have cooled.**

# Airbag SRS

## Side airbags



H4221

### WARNING

**Ensure that a gap is maintained between the upper torso and the side of the vehicle, to enable unobstructed inflation of the side thorax airbags.**

Side thorax airbags are designed to protect the thorax region of the torso and will only deploy in the event of a severe side impact. They will NOT inflate as a result of frontal or rear impacts only.

In the event of a severe side collision, the airbags on the impacted side of the vehicle deploy from the door, rapidly inflating to form a cushion between the front seat occupants and the side of the vehicle. The airbags on the non-impacted side of the vehicle will not be deployed.

## Side head impact protection

**Note:** For the side head impact airbags to deploy correctly, the roof lining and front pillar trim must be undamaged and fitted correctly. Any damage or suspect fitting should be referred to a Land Rover Retailer for examination.

Side head impact airbags are designed to protect the head in the event of a severe side impact only. They will NOT inflate as a result of frontal or rear impacts alone.

The side head impact protection modules are located behind the roof lining and front pillar finisher, above the doors. In the event of a severe side collision, the airbag pushes out from behind the roof lining and front pillar finisher as it inflates. The side head impact airbag remains inflated for longer than the other airbags, to provide additional head protection in the event of a secondary impact.

# Airbag SRS

---

## SRS/Airbag warning light

A warning light mounted on the instrument panel will alert you to any malfunction of the airbag SRS. The airbag SRS should always be checked by a Land Rover Retailer if any of the following symptoms occur:

- The warning light fails to illuminate when the starter switch is turned to position 'II'.
- The warning light fails to extinguish within approximately four seconds after the starter switch is turned to position 'II'.
- The warning light illuminates after the engine is started, or while the vehicle is being driven.

When the starter switch is turned to position 'II', the diagnostic control unit monitors the readiness of the system's electrical circuits.

The elements of the system being monitored include:

- SRS warning light
- Rotary coupler
- Airbag modules
- Seat belt pre-tensioners
- Airbag diagnostic control unit
- Crash sensors
- Airbag wiring harnesses
- Seat occupancy sensor

## CHILD SEATS

Children aged 12 years and under are more likely than adult occupants to receive injuries from inflating airbags. For this reason, it is recommended that children should always be seated in the second row of seats in a child safety seat or restraint system appropriate to their age and size, see **CHILD RESTRAINTS FOR LARGER CHILDREN, 54**.

If it is necessary for a child to travel in the front, set the seat fully rearwards and use a front facing child seat **ONLY**.

### **WARNING**

**DO NOT USE A REAR FACING CHILD SEAT IN ANY FRONT PASSENGER SEAT LOCATION. If the passenger airbag inflates, a child in a rear facing child restraint could sustain serious injury or death.**

**Children could be endangered in a crash if their child restraints are not properly secured in the vehicle. Be sure to install child restraints according to the manufacturer's instructions.**

**Under no circumstances should a rear facing child seat be installed facing forward in any seating position.**

**Always transport children 12 years and under in the second row of seats and always properly use appropriate child restraints.**

---

# Airbag SRS

---

## SERVICE INFORMATION

### WARNING

**DO NOT attempt to service, repair, replace, modify or tamper with any part of the airbag SRS, or wiring in the vicinity of an airbag SRS component; this could cause the system to activate, resulting in personal injury.**

**Any notable damage to SRS components or covers, e.g. tears, burns, holes, chemical/detergent damage or previous accidental damage, etc., however produced, may cause the SRS module/s to fail. Ensure that any damaged components are repaired or replaced by a Land Rover Retailer.**

---

ALWAYS contact your Land Rover Retailer if:

- an airbag inflates.
- the front or side of the vehicle is damaged, even if the airbag has not inflated.
- any part of an airbag module cover shows signs of cracking or damage.

### WARNING

**The components that make up the airbag SRS are sensitive to electrical or physical interference, either of which could easily damage the system and cause inadvertent operation or a malfunction of the airbag.**

**For your safety it is recommended that you seek the assistance of a Land Rover Retailer to carry out any of the following:**

- **Removal or repair of any wiring or component in the vicinity of any of the SRS components, including the steering wheel, steering column, door trim, roof lining, instrument and facia panels.**
  - **Installation of electronic equipment such as a mobile phone, two-way radio or in-car entertainment system.**
  - **Modification to the front or side of the vehicle, including the bumper and chassis.**
  - **Attachment of accessories to the front or side of the vehicle.**
- 

### Disposing of vehicles

If you sell your vehicle, be sure to inform the new owner that the vehicle has an airbag SRS.

If your vehicle is to be scrapped; uninflated airbags are potentially very dangerous and must be safely deployed in a controlled environment by qualified personnel, before a vehicle is scrapped.

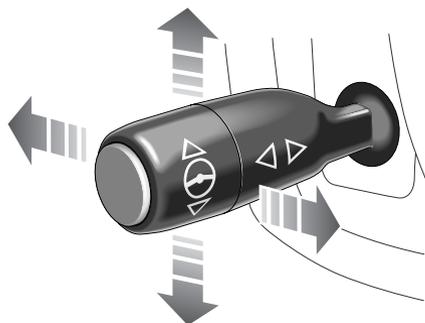
See your Land Rover Retailer for advice on safe deployment of SRS/airbags.

# Steering Column

## STEERING WHEEL ADJUSTMENT

### WARNING

**DO NOT adjust the steering wheel position while the vehicle is in motion. This is extremely dangerous.**



H3897

The steering wheel position can be adjusted in four directions, corresponding with the movement of the adjustment lever, to suit your driving position.

With the vehicle stationary, move the lever up or down to adjust the height of the steering wheel.

Move the lever forwards or rearwards, to move the steering wheel further away from, or closer to, the body.

## STEERING WHEEL POSITION MEMORY

The finalised steering wheel position is stored in memory and referenced to the starter key in use when the position was set.

When that key is next used, the stored settings associated with it will be actioned.

This enables different steering wheel settings to be stored on different keys, helping driving position to be easily optimised for more than one driver.

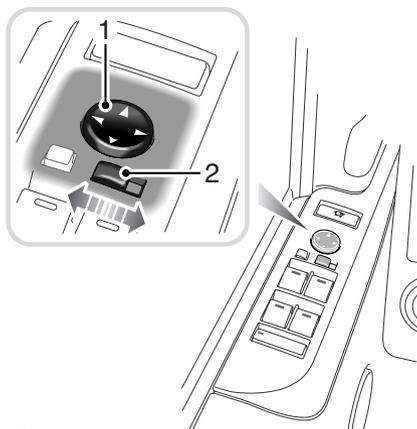
**Note:** Up to three different steering column positions can be stored in the seat memory, this enables the driver to recall the optimum steering wheel position at the touch of a button - for further information, please refer to **DRIVER'S SEAT MEMORY FACILITY, 45.**

# Door Mirrors

## EXTERIOR MIRRORS

**Note:** Objects viewed in exterior mirrors may appear further away than they actually are.

### Mirror adjustment



H3868

- Move the lower control (2) to the left or right-hand position to select either the left or right hand mirror.
- With the starter switch turned to position 'II', push the appropriate arrow on the mirror adjust control (1) to tilt the mirror glass up/down/left or right.

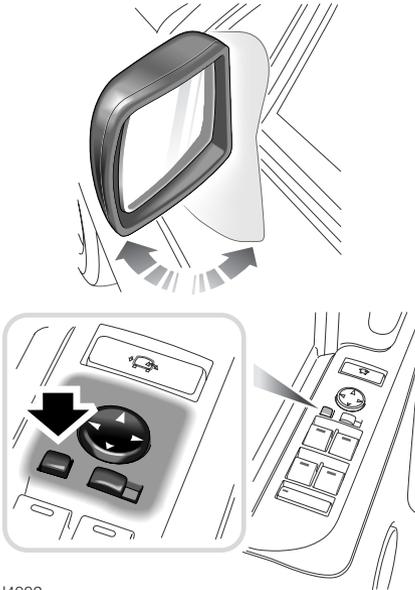
The door mirrors have integral heating elements which disperse ice or mist from the glass. These will operate automatically with the starter switch in position 'II', depending on external temperature.

**Note:** On vehicles fitted with the driver's seat memory facility, up to three different exterior mirror positions can be stored in the seat memory, this enables the driver to recall the optimum mirror position at the touch of a button - for further information, please refer to **DRIVER'S SEAT MEMORY FACILITY, 45.**

# Door Mirrors

## Folding the mirror body

The door mirrors are designed to fold forwards or rearwards on impact. They can also be folded back towards the side windows into a 'park' position to enable the vehicle to negotiate narrower openings.



H4002

Press the mirror-fold button (arrowed in inset) once to fold the mirrors into the side windows. Press again to return the mirrors to the driving position.

**Note:** Electric mirror folding is disabled if vehicle speed exceeds 10 km/h (6 mph).

If the mirrors are accidentally knocked out of position (i.e. with one mirror extended and the other in the 'parked' position), an additional operation of the switch will re-synchronise them.

## Automatic dimming\*

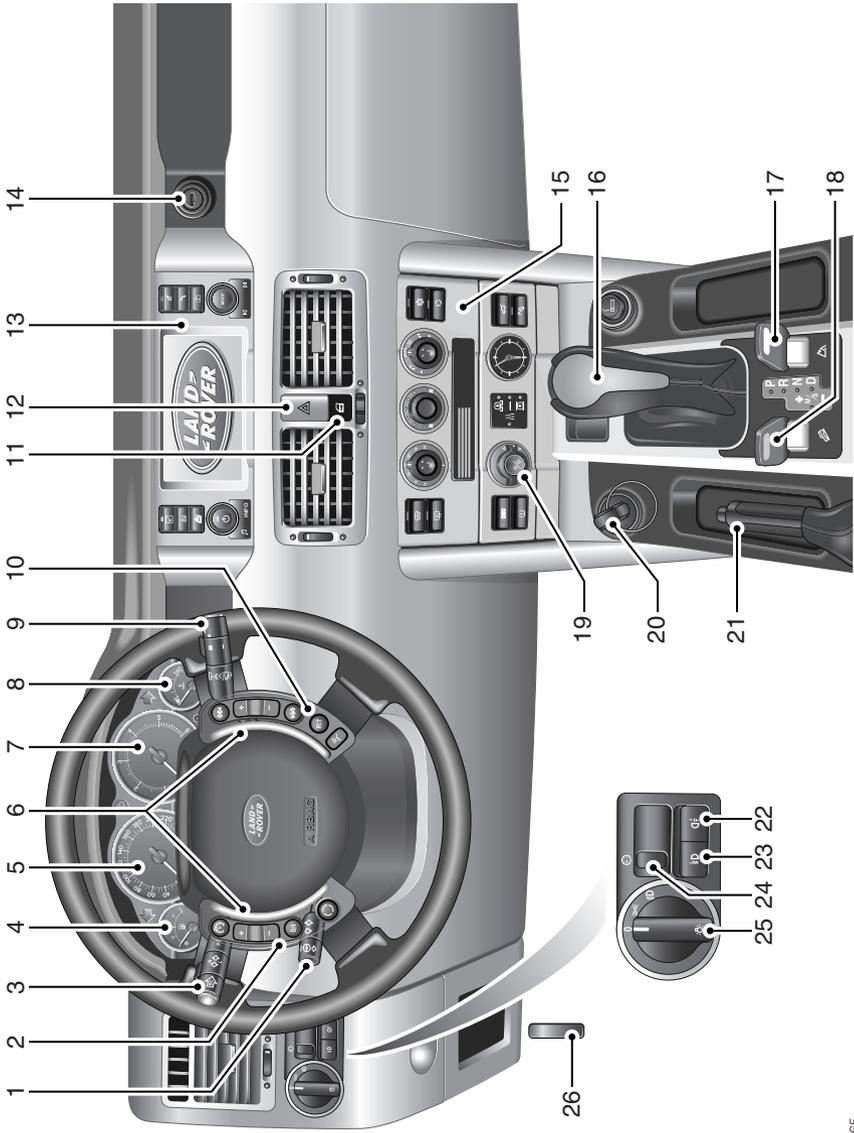
On some models, the mirrors are equipped with an electrochromatic dimming function that 'dims' the mirror to reduce glare from the headlamps of following vehicles at night.

## Automatic mirror dipping

Vehicle's have a pre-stored function, which causes the nearside mirror to dip whenever reverse gear is selected, giving the driver a view of the curbside. This facility is only available if the mirror select button ('2' on previous page), is set to the driver's side.

# Facia Controls

## FACIA CONTROLS



# Facia Controls

---

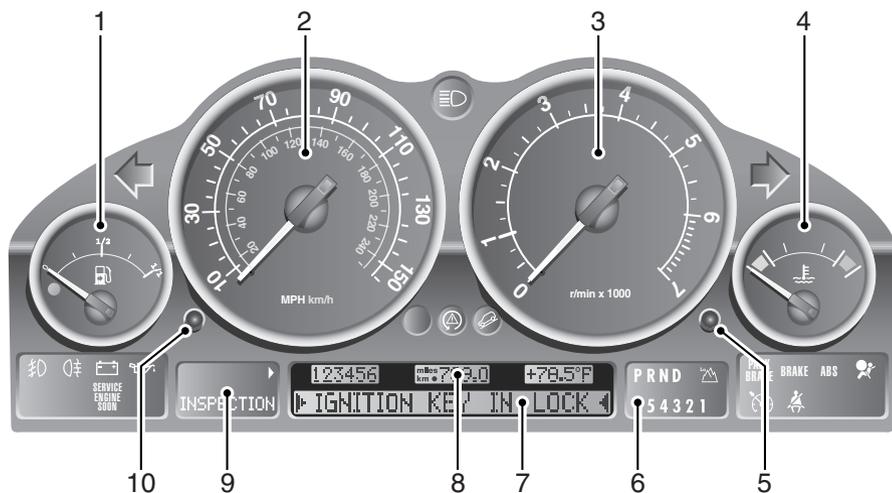
## Facia Controls Key

- |  |                                      |
|--|--------------------------------------|
| 1. Steering column adjuster                  | 14. Glovebox lock                    |
| 2. Cruise control switches                   | 15. Heater/air conditioning controls |
| 3. Lighting and direction indicator controls | 16. Main gear selector               |
| 4. Fuel gauge                                | 17. Transfer gear switch             |
| 5. Speedometer                               | 18. Hill descent control switch      |
| 6. Horn switches                             | 19. Air suspension controls          |
| 7. Tachometer                                | 20. Starter switch                   |
| 8. Temperature gauge                         | 21. parking brake                    |
| 9. Windshield wiper/washer controls          | 22. Front fog lamps                  |
| 10. Remote audio controls                    | 23. Rear fog guard lamps             |
| 11. Door locking switch                      | 24. Instrument lights dimmer         |
| 12. Hazard warning lamp switch               | 25. Main lighting switch             |
| 13. Touch screen controls                    | 26. Hood release lever               |

**Note:** *The precise specification and location of the controls may vary according to territorial requirements and from vehicle to vehicle.*

# Instruments

## INSTRUMENT PANEL



H4342

### 1. Fuel gauge

The pointer drops to zero when the starter switch is turned off, but quickly rises to show the level of fuel in the tank when the switch is turned to position 'II'. After refuelling, the gauge rapidly rises to reflect the increase of fuel in the tank.

When the fuel remaining in the tank is a minimum of 12 litres (3 Gallons) the AMBER low fuel warning light in the fuel gauge illuminates. If the light illuminates, refuel at the first opportunity.

The small arrow visible in the fuel pump symbol on the gauge indicates the side of the vehicle on which the fuel filler is located - a useful reminder to help you position the vehicle on the correct side of the forecourt pumps before refuelling.

**Caution: NEVER allow vehicles to run out of fuel (the resultant misfire may destroy the catalytic converter).**

### 2. Speedometer

Indicates road speed in miles per hour (kilometres per hour).

### 3. Tachometer

Indicates engine speed in revolutions per minute (x 1000). In normal driving conditions the engine is most fuel efficient between 2000 and 3000 rev/min.

# Instruments

---

## 4. Temperature gauge

Once the engine coolant has reached its normal operating temperature, the pointer will rise to a position midway between the RED and BLUE segments of the gauge (the precise position will vary according to climatic conditions).

If the pointer moves towards the RED segment, this indicates that the engine coolant is becoming too hot. Should the pointer move INTO the RED segment and the RED warning light within the gauge illuminates, severe engine damage could occur (under these circumstances, the air conditioning may switch off and engine performance may reduce in order to minimise engine load).

Stop the vehicle as soon as safety permits and switch off the engine and allow to cool down. If the problem persists, seek qualified assistance before continuing.

## 5. System check control

With the starter key NOT inserted, press and hold the control to check whether any system malfunctions have occurred. If faults exist, they will be listed in turn in the main message centre until the control is released. If no malfunctions have occurred, 'CHECK CONTROL OK' is displayed, see **MAIN MESSAGE CENTRE, 74**, for further information. Any messages will also be displayed during driving and when the starter switch is turned off.

This control button is also used in conjunction with the Service Interval Indicator, see **SERVICE INTERVAL INDICATOR, 80**.

## 6. Gear selector position display

This shows the current gear lever position and indicates when low range has been selected. See **GEAR SELECTOR DISPLAY, 80**, for further information.

## 7. Main message centre

Displays all warning and information messages submitted by the vehicle systems. For further information concerning messages and their meanings, refer to **MAIN MESSAGE CENTRE, 74**.

## 8. Total distance (odometer) and trip recorder

With the starter switch turned to position 'II', the display indicates the total distance travelled by the vehicle, and also shows the most recent individual journey distance. In some markets, the display can be set to show either miles or kilometres. To convert from one to another, press and hold the trip recorder reset button for more than two seconds.

## 9. Service interval indicator

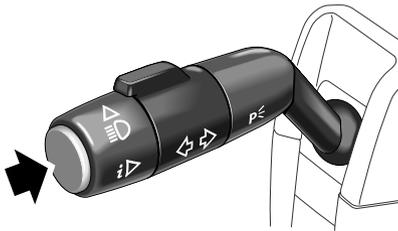
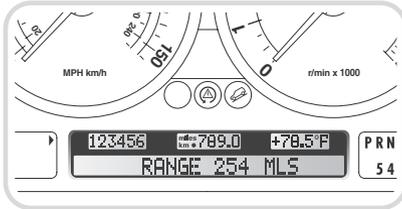
This briefly shows the distance remaining before the next oil service or inspection is due, when the starter switch is turned on. See **SERVICE INTERVAL INDICATOR, 80**, for further information.

## 10. Trip recorder reset button

Press briefly to return the trip recorder display to zero.

# Trip Computer

## TRIP COMPUTER - FUNCTION SELECTION



H4347

The trip computer utilises the message centre in the instrument pack and provides useful information to assist the driver to calculate fuel stops, journey times and distances.

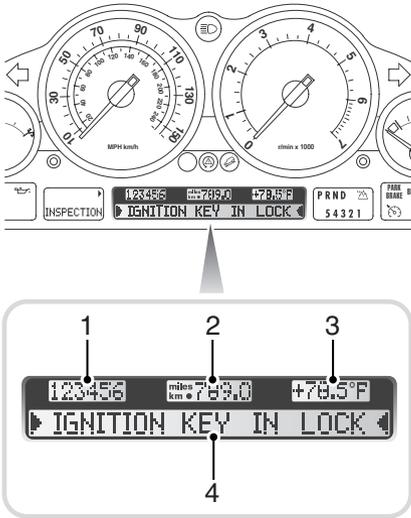
When the starter switch is in position 'II', the different trip computer statistics can be viewed in turn by pressing the button on the end of the direction indicator stalk repeatedly until the relevant statistic is displayed. The statistics are displayed in the following order:

- Speed limit.
- Distance (from destination).
- Range.
- Estimated time of arrival.
- Date.
- The current time.
- Fuel consumption 1.
- Fuel consumption 2.
- Average speed.

The driver has the option to select which of the above functions are displayed and also in which order. For further information, consult your 'In-Car Entertainment' or 'Audio, Navigation System' book.

# Message Centre

## MAIN MESSAGE CENTRE



H4344

1. Digital odometer. Displays the total distance travelled by the vehicle.
2. Trip recorder. Displays the distance travelled in kilometres or miles for individual journeys.
3. External temperature display.
4. Warning message and information display.

Driver warning and information messages are displayed in the message centre. Messages have different priority levels and are grouped into the following categories.

Messages are displayed when a fault is detected and also when the starter switch is turned off. It is also possible to view messages for up to 3 minutes after the key has been removed from the starter switch, by pressing the system check control switch.

## Warning messages

All warning messages are accompanied by an audible warning; however, there are two levels of warning.

A critical warning message is displayed continuously while the starter switch is turned on and is flanked by flashing arrows. It will remain displayed while the fault persists.

A non-critical warning is displayed for approximately 20 seconds, reducing to a minimum of 2 seconds if other warning messages are pending.

**DO NOT** ignore warning messages. **TAKE CORRECTIVE ACTION IMMEDIATELY**, see **WARNING INFORMATION MESSAGES, 75**.

## Information messages

Information messages will be displayed as and when applicable, and also when the starter switch is turned on or off. Where the message requires action by the driver - **TAKE CORRECTIVE ACTION AS SOON AS POSSIBLE**, see **WARNING INFORMATION MESSAGES, 75**.

# Message Centre

## WARNING INFORMATION MESSAGES

Warnings and information messages appear in order of importance, with critical warnings taking priority. Critical warnings are indicated by flashing arrows appearing on either side of the message. Action should be taken immediately if a critical warning is displayed.

| Message  | Meaning   | What to do?  |
|--|---|--|
| ACCESS MAX 40 KM/H (25 MPH)                                    | Crawl mode is selected.   | Do not drive at speeds exceeding 40 km/h (25 mph) whilst in crawl mode or the vehicle will return to standard height.  |
| AIR SUSP.INACTIVE + MAX 60 KM/H (40 MPH) (alternating message) | The air suspension system has overheated and has temporarily shut down.   | Drive with caution and be aware that the air suspension system will have reduced functionality. If message persists for more than 25 minutes, have the vehicle checked by a Retailer soon as possible. |
| APPLY PARKING BRAKE  | The vehicle is in 'P' (Park) and transfer neutral has been selected. The starter switch has been turned off but the parking brake has not been applied. | Apply the parking brake, or if the vehicle is to be towed on all four wheels, turn the starter switch to position 'I' or 'II'.   |
| CHECK BRAKE FLUID  | Fluid level is too low.   | Stop the vehicle as soon as safety permits and top-up the brake fluid. Have the source of a possible leak checked by your Retailer.  |
| CHECK BRAKE PADS   | The brake pads are reaching their wear limit.   | Drive cautiously and consult your Retailer at the earliest opportunity.  |
| CHECK CONTROL OK   | No system faults have been detected by the vehicle diagnostics system.  | No action required.  |
| CHECK COOLANT LEVEL  | Coolant level is too low.   | Top-up with the correct mixture of anti-freeze and water at the earliest opportunity. If the problem persists, consult your Retailer.  |

# Message Centre

| Message  | Meaning  | What to do?   |
|--|--|---|
| CHECK NORMAL BEAM LIGHT                        | A bulb has failed or there is a fault in the electrical circuit.     | Check/replace the bulb or consult your dealer.  |
| CHECK ENGINE OIL LEV                           | The oil level is at the absolute minimum.                            | Stop the vehicle as soon as safety permits and top-up the engine oil to the correct level.  |
| CHECK FRONT FOGLIGHT                           | A bulb has failed or there is a fault in the electrical circuit.     | Check/replace the bulb or consult your Retailer.  |
| CHECK FRONT LIGHT                              | More than one front light is defective.                              | Check which lights are defective, replace any failed bulb. If a light is still defective, have the fault rectified by a Retailer.               |
| CHECK FUEL TANK CAP*<br>(only in some markets) | The fuel filler cap is not fitted correctly.                         | Check the cap and tighten/fit correctly.  |
| CHECK HIGH BEAM LIGHT                          | A bulb has failed or there is a fault in the electrical circuit.     | Check/replace the bulb or consult your Retailer.  |
| CHECK NUMPLATE LIGHT                           | A bulb has failed or there is a fault in the electrical circuit.     | Check/replace the bulb or consult your Retailer.  |
| CHECK REAR FOGLIGHT                            | A bulb has failed or there is a fault in the electrical circuit.     | Check/replace the bulb or consult your Retailer.  |
| CHECK REAR LIGHT                               | More than one rear light is defective.                               | Check which lights are defective and replace any failed bulb. If the light is still defective, have the fault rectified by a Retailer.          |
| CHECK SIDE LIGHT                               | A bulb has failed or there is a fault in the electrical circuit.     | Check/replace the bulb or consult your Retailer.  |
| CHECK TAIL LIGHT                               | A bulb has failed or there is a fault in the electrical circuit.     | Check/replace the bulb or consult your Retailer.  |
| CHECK TRAILER LIGHT                            | A bulb has failed or there is a fault in the electrical circuit.     | Check/replace the bulb or consult your Retailer.  |
| COOLANT TEMPERATURE                            | Coolant temperature is too high.                                     | Stop the vehicle as soon as safety permits and switch off the engine and allow to cool down. Consult your Retailer at the earliest opportunity. |
| DOOR OPEN                                      | A door is open (displayed as the vehicle moves off from stationary). | Stop the vehicle as soon as safety permits and close the door.  |

# Message Centre

| Message                          | Meaning   | What to do?  |
|----------------------------------|---|--|
| DSC INACTIVE                     | A fault has been detected in the DSC system.  | The vehicle is driveable, but proceed with caution. Consult your Retailer at the earliest opportunity.   |
| EEPROM LCMC                      | The main lighting switch has a fault.   | Consult your Retailer at the earliest opportunity.   |
| ENGINE FAILSAFE PROG             | A fault has been detected in the engine electronics.                                    | The vehicle is driveable, but with reduced engine speed and power. Drive with caution, and consult your Retailer at the earliest opportunity. Note that the engine will be more prone to stalling and difficulties starting. |
| EXTERNAL TEMP X <sup>0</sup> C/F | The exterior temperature is equal to or less than 3 <sup>0</sup> C (37 <sup>0</sup> F). | This indicates freezing conditions, appropriate defrosting precautions should be taken before driving and ice may be present on the roads.   |
| FASTEN SEAT BELTS                | The driver's or front passenger's seat belt is not correctly fastened.                  | Ascertain which seat belt is undone and correctly fasten the belt.   |
| FUEL INJECT.SYSTEM               | A fault has been detected in the fuel injection system.                                 | Seek qualified assistance.   |
| HDC INACTIVE                     | A fault in the Hill Descent Control system has occurred.                                | Do not attempt the planned descent/ascent and consult your Retailer at the earliest opportunity.   |
| HDC TEMP.NOT AVAIL.              | The Hill Descent Control system has been over-used and temporarily shut down.           | Do not attempt the planned descent/ascent until the system has cooled (the message is no longer displayed).  |
| HEADLIGHT DELAY                  | You have selected headlight delay - headlights will switch off automatically.           | No action required.  |
| HIGH RANGE                       | HIGH range has been selected in the transfer gearbox.                                   | Select LOW range if HIGH range is not required.  |
| KEY BATTERY LOW                  | The battery in the handset key is low on charge.  | Replace the handset key battery.   |
| KEY IN STARTER LOCK              | The key has been left in the starter switch and the driver's door has been opened.      | Remove the key from the starter switch.  |

# Message Centre

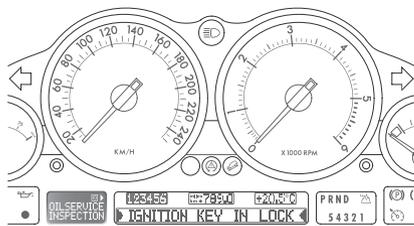
| Message                     | Meaning  | What to do?   |
|-----------------------------|--|---|
| LIGHTS ON                   | The key has been removed from the starter switch and the lights have been left on.   | Turn the light switch to the off position, if the lights are no longer required.  |
| LOW RANGE                   | LOW range has been selected in the transfer gearbox.   | Select HIGH range if LOW range is not required.   |
| LOW SCREEN WASH             | Fluid level is too low.  | Top-up the washer reservoir at the earliest opportunity.  |
| MANUAL MODE                 | The transmission is in manual mode.  | Select automatic mode if manual mode is no longer required.   |
| NO HDC, SLOW DOWN           | The Hill Descent Control operating speed range of 0 - 35 km/h (0 - 21 mph) has been exceeded, or an attempt to select HDC has been made whilst the vehicle is exceeding the operating speed range. | Slow down to below 35 km/h (21 mph) to use or select HDC.   |
| OFFROAD MAX 50KM/H (30 MPH) | Vehicle speed is exceeding 45 km/h (28 mph), while at off-road height.   | Do not drive at speeds exceeding 50 km/h (30 mph) whilst at off-road height. Otherwise the vehicle will return to standard height.                              |
| RELEASE PARKING BRAKE       | The parking brake is applied and a drive gear is selected.   | Release the parking brake.  |
| SELECT NEUTRAL              | You have attempted to change gear ranges without the gearbox being in NEUTRAL.   | Select neutral in the main gearbox.   |
| SLOW DOWN                   | Your current road speed is too high to perform a transfer box range change.  | Slow the vehicle to the required speed before changing range.   |
| SPEED LIMIT*                | You are exceeding the set maximum speed limit.   | Slow down to conform with the speed limit.  |
| SPORT MODE                  | The transmission is in sport mode.   | Select automatic mode if sport mode is no longer required.  |
| STOP!ENGINE OIL PRESS       | Engine oil pressure is too low.  | Stop the vehicle as soon as safety permits and switch off the engine. Check the oil level, top-up if necessary - if okay, consult your Retailer before driving. |

# Message Centre

| Message              | Meaning   | What to do?  |
|----------------------|---|--|
| TAILDOOR OPEN        | The taildoor is open as the vehicle moves off from stationary for the first time.                               | Stop the vehicle as soon as safety permits and close the taildoor.   |
| TRAILER MODE         | A suspension height change request has been made whilst the vehicle is being used for towing. No change occurs. | Do not attempt to change suspension height when towing - the vehicle must remain at standard height.   |
| TRANS FAILSAFE PROG  | A malfunction has occurred in the transmission.   | Drive carefully avoiding excessive 'revs' and consult your Retailer at the earliest opportunity.   |
| TRANSFERBOX NEUTRAL  | Confirmation that neutral has been selected in the transfer box.  | Remove fuse 37 if transfer neutral is no longer required.  |
| TRANSMISS'N OVERHEAT | The transmission oil temperature is too high.   | If the message persists, stop the vehicle as soon as safety permits and allow the gearbox to cool. Seek qualified assistance if the message resumes. |

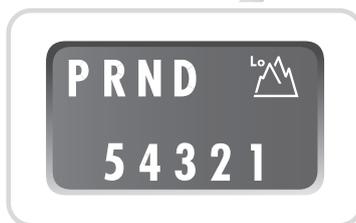
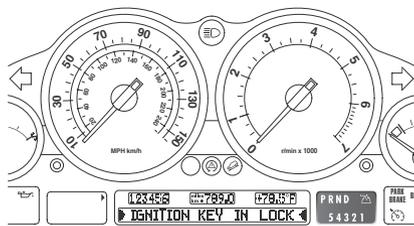
# Message Centre

## SERVICE INTERVAL INDICATOR



H3821

## GEAR SELECTOR DISPLAY



H4346

When the starter switch is turned to position 'I', a 'countdown' to when the next service is due appears in the total distance travelled display (arrowed in inset). In the left-hand sector, the type of service required is shown. A minus sign preceding the distance indicates that the service interval point has been exceeded and this is the distance by which it is overdue.

After approximately five seconds, the display reverts to show just the total distance travelled.

The mileage countdown is controlled by the engine management system and is adjusted to allow for driving style and conditions, to gauge when the appropriate service becomes necessary.

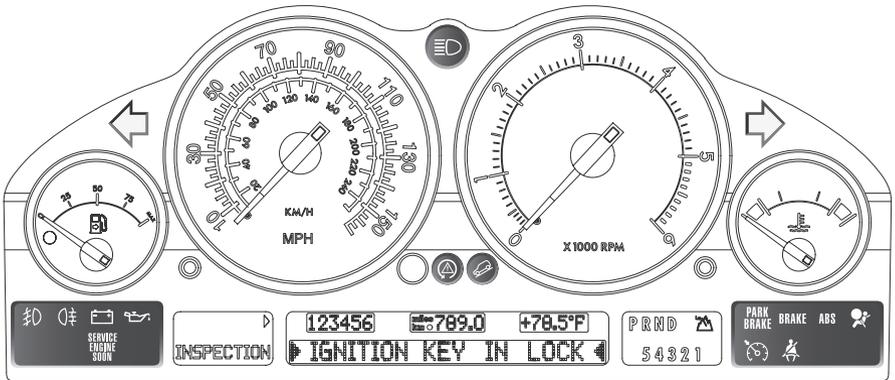
**Note:** After the completion of each service, the Retailer will reset the distance display to commence the countdown to the next service.

This shows the current gear lever position ('P', 'R', 'N' or 'D') and indicates when low range has been selected. In addition, the display indicates which gear has been selected when the gearbox is in manual mode ('5', '4', '3', '2' or '1').

The LOW range indicator (in the top right corner of the display) flashes whilst the transfer gearbox changes ranges and then illuminates constantly when low range has engaged. The range change will also be confirmed in the main message centre.

# Warning Lights

## WARNING LIGHTS



H4955

The location and specification of the warning lights may vary according to model and market requirements.

### Front fog lamps - GREEN



Illuminates when the front fog lamps are switched on.

### Rear fog guard lamp - YELLOW



Illuminates when the rear fog guard lamps are switched on.

### Battery charging - RED



The light illuminates as a bulb check when the starter switch is turned to position 'II' and extinguishes once the engine is running. If it remains on, or illuminates whilst driving, a fault is indicated. Seek qualified assistance urgently.

### Low oil pressure - RED



The light illuminates as a bulb check when the starter switch is turned to position 'II' and extinguishes when the engine is started. If the light remains on, flashes on and off, or illuminates whilst driving, stop the vehicle as soon as safety permits and SWITCH OFF THE ENGINE IMMEDIATELY. Seek qualified assistance before driving. Always check the oil level when this light illuminates.

# Warning Lights

---

## Service engine soon - AMBER

**SERVICE  
ENGINE  
SOON**

The engine management system on your Range Rover is controlled by a sophisticated engine control module which maintains optimum control of engine running and emission levels and monitors the operation of the sub-systems and components.

The 'Service Engine Soon' indicator illuminates as a system check when the starter switch is turned to position 'II' and should extinguish when the engine is started.

If an engine operation or emissions problem is registered by the engine control module when the vehicle is being operated, the 'Service Engine Soon' indicator will illuminate.

### **If 'Service Engine Soon' illuminates, and the vehicle drives normally:**

Contact your Land Rover Retailer to schedule a service appointment at your earliest convenience - YOU MAY STILL DRIVE THE VEHICLE.

### **If 'Service Engine Soon' flashes, and/or the vehicle does not drive normally:**

Avoid high speeds and seek immediate assistance from your Land Rover Retailer.

## Parking brake system - RED

**PARK  
BRAKE**

The light illuminates for about 3 seconds as a bulb check when the starter switch is turned on. It also illuminates when the parking brake is applied with the starter switch in position 'II'.

The light should extinguish when the parking brake is fully released. If the light illuminates whilst driving, a fault with the parking brake system is indicated, seek qualified assistance before continuing.

## Brake system - RED

**BRAKE**

This light shares its position and symbol with the emergency brake assist warning light and illuminates briefly as a bulb check when the starter switch is turned on (the light follows a amber-red-amber sequence).

The light should extinguish shortly after the starter switch is turned to position 'II'. If the light does not extinguish, or illuminates whilst driving, a fault with the brake systems is indicated. Stop the vehicle gently, as soon as safety permits and seek qualified assistance before continuing.

The light may be accompanied by the message 'CHECK BRAKE PADS' or 'CHECK BRAKE FLUID'. If the message 'CHECK BRAKE FLUID' is displayed, check the brake fluid level and top-up if necessary. If the light remains illuminated after the fluid is at the correct level, seek qualified assistance before continuing.

## Emergency brake assist - AMBER

**BRAKE**

This light shares its position and symbol with the brake system warning light and illuminates briefly as a bulb check when the starter switch is turned to position 'II' (the light follows an amber-red-amber sequence).

If the light remains amber after starting, or illuminates whilst driving, a fault with the EBA system is indicated. Drive with care, avoiding heavy brake application, and seek qualified assistance urgently.

# Warning Lights

## Anti-lock braking system - AMBER

**ABS**

The light illuminates as a bulb check when the starter switch is turned to position 'II'. If the light remains on or illuminates whilst driving, a fault with the ABS system is indicated. Drive with care, avoiding heavy brake application, and seek qualified assistance urgently.

## Airbag SRS - RED



The light illuminates when the starter switch is turned to position 'II' and extinguishes after about 4 seconds. If the light illuminates at any other time, the system is faulty - seek qualified assistance urgently.

## Cruise control active - GREEN



Illuminates when cruise control is operating.

## Seat belt - RED



The light illuminates when the starter switch is turned to position 'II' and extinguishes after approximately 6 seconds, even if the driver's seat belt remains unfastened. Always fasten your seat belt before driving.

## Direction indicators - GREEN



The left or right warning light flashes in time with the corresponding left or right direction indicator lights whenever they are operated. If the warning light fails to flash, or flashes very rapidly, this may indicate a bulb failure in one of the direction indicator lights. If the hazard switch is pressed, both warning lights will flash in conjunction with the direction indicator lights.

## Headlamp high beam - BLUE



Illuminates when the headlamps are switched to high beam.

## Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) - AMBER



Illuminates briefly as a bulb check when the starter switch is turned to position 'II'. The light also illuminates when the DSC switch is pressed, indicating that DSC has been switched off (but traction control is still active).

The light will flash when the system becomes active and will remain flashing until the system is no longer needed.

If the light illuminates constantly, and does not extinguish when the DSC switch is pressed, a fault has been detected in the system. If there is a fault, DSC will be inactive - drive with care and seek qualified assistance as soon as possible.

## Hill descent control (HDC) 'information' - GREEN



Illuminates briefly as a bulb and system check when the starter switch is turned to position 'II' and also illuminates when HDC is selected.

If HDC is selected and the vehicle is within the operating speed range of up to 35 km/h (21 mph), the light will illuminate continuously.

If HDC is selected and the vehicle is driven faster than the operating speed range, the light will flash and the message 'NO HDC - SLOW DOWN' is displayed.

The light will also flash during HDC fade-out (see for further information).

If a fault with the HDC system occurs, HDC will fade-out and then deselect, or immediately deselect (depending on the type of fault and whether or not HDC is in operation). The green light will extinguish and the message 'HDC INACTIVE' will appear in the message centre.

# Audible Warnings

---

## AUDIBLE WARNINGS

The market specification will determine which of the following audible warnings are appropriate to your vehicle.

### Lamps on reminder

If the lamps are left on after the starter switch is turned off, a warning chime will sound when the driver's door is opened. The chime will cease as soon as the lamps are switched off or when the driver's door is closed.

### Electronic air suspension warnings

Automatic height changes are inhibited whilst in 'Crawl mode', provided the vehicle does not exceed 40 km/h (25 mph). If vehicle speed exceeds 30 km/h (20 mph), a warning chime will sound. For further information, please refer to **Crawl mode, 165**.

### Dynamic stability control (DSC) warning

If a fault with the DSC system is detected, a warning chime will sound once and the DSC warning light will illuminate. The vehicle may still be driven with care, but seek qualified assistance at the earliest opportunity.

### Starter key reminder

If the key is left in the starter switch while the driver's door is open, a warning will chime continuously. The chime stops as soon as the door is closed or the key is removed from the starter switch.

### Seat belt reminder

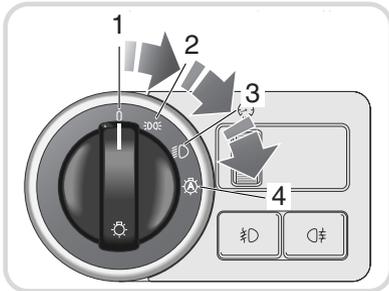
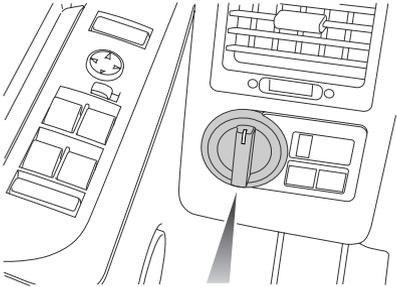
If the driver's seat belt has not been fastened when the starter switch is turned on, a warning chime will sound (one second frequency). The chime operates in conjunction with the seat belt warning light and sounds for 6 seconds, or until the seat belt is fastened (whichever occurs first).

### External temperature warning

If the external temperature drops to 3°C (37°F) or less, a warning chime sounds, accompanied by a warning in the message centre. Take appropriate measures to defrost the vehicle and be aware that there may be ice on the roads.

# Lights & Indicators

## MAIN LIGHTING SWITCH



H5740

1. Off.
2. Side, tail and instrument panel lights on.
3. Headlamps on.
4. Automatic lamps on.

### Headlamp courtesy delay

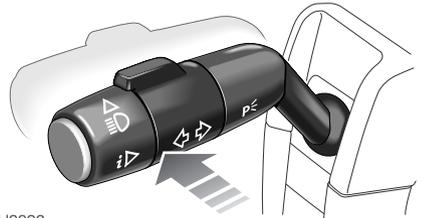
To illuminate the headlamps for a short time after the vehicle is parked, turn the starter switch off with the headlamps switched on ('LIGHTS ON' appears in the message centre). Then, turn the headlamp switch to the off position - the headlamps will remain illuminated for approximately 40 seconds after closing the driver's door, before turning off automatically.

If necessary, the courtesy delay may be cancelled at any time during this period by turning the starter switch or the main lighting switch on and then off again.



Headlamp courtesy delay can be enabled or disabled by a Land Rover Retailer, if required. The headlamp courtesy time delay period can also be adjusted by a Land Rover Retailer, to suit your requirements.

### Headlamp high and normal beams



H3892

Push the lever away from the steering wheel to change headlamps to high beam (BLUE warning light illuminates). Pull the lever back towards the steering wheel to change back to normal beam headlamps.

To flash the headlamps, pull the lever part way towards the steering wheel and release.

### Automatic control lamps

With the rotary master switch in position '4' and starter switch in position 'II', the side lamps, low beam headlamps and license plate lamps will illuminate automatically when the ambient light falls below a pre-defined level.

All of the lamps will go out when the ambient light rises above that level.

# Lights & Indicators

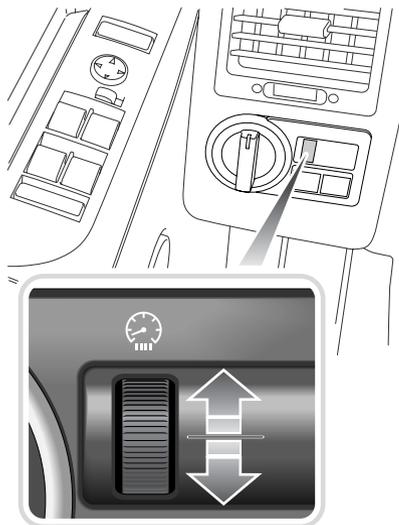
## Daytime running lamps\*

If Daytime running lamps is enabled, when the main lighting switch is turned off (position 1), the headlamp low beams will illuminate as soon as the starter switch is turned to position 'II'. The instrument panel illumination remains off.



*Unless they are required or prohibited by law, daytime running lamps can be disabled/enabled by a Land Rover Retailer.*

## Instrument Illumination Control



H3889

Rotate the control upwards to increase, or down to decrease, the intensity of the instrument panel illumination.

The illumination control also adjusts the intensity of all switch illumination forward of the driver.

## Parking lamps

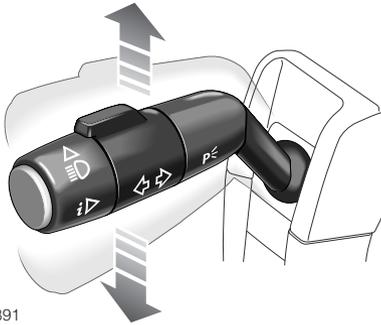
If required, the side and tail lamps on the left or right can be left illuminated at a reduced output, when the vehicle is parked.

With the starter switch in position '0', move the lights and indicator stalk fully up (to illuminate the right hand sidelamp and tail lamp) or fully down (to illuminate the left). Remove the starter key and lock the vehicle in the normal way - the lamps will remain illuminated.

**Note:** *The lamps remain on with a reduced power output, to help prevent inadvertently discharging the battery.*

# Lights & Indicators

## DIRECTION INDICATORS



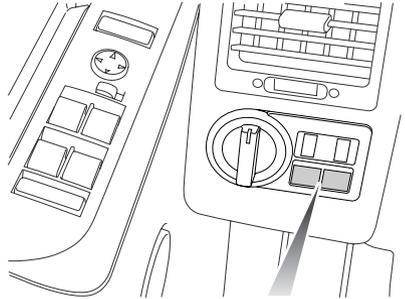
H3891

Move the lever **DOWN** to indicate a **LEFT** turn, and **UP** to indicate a **RIGHT** turn (the appropriate **GREEN** warning light on the instrument panel will flash in time with the direction indicators). Hold the lever part-way up or down against spring pressure to indicate a lane change.

## FOG LAMPS

### WARNING

Fog lamps should **ONLY** be used when visibility is severely restricted - other road users could be dazzled in clear conditions.



H3887

# Lights & Indicators

## Front fog lamps



Press to operate, press a second time to switch off (the warning light in the instrument panel illuminates when the fog lamps are switched on).

The fog lamps can be operated **ONLY** when the starter switch is at position 'II' and the side or headlamps are also switched on. The fog lamps extinguish automatically when the side lamps or the starter switch is turned off and need to be reselected when the starter switch is turned back on.

DO remember to switch off as soon as visibility is clear.

## Rear fog guard lamps

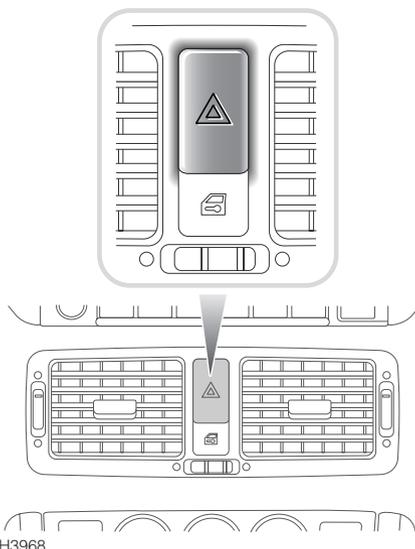


Press to operate, press a second time to switch off (the indicator light in the switch illuminates when the fog guard lamps are switched on). The rear fog guard lamps illuminate **ONLY** when the starter switch is in position 'II' and the headlamps (or front fog lamps) are also switched on. Switching off the headlamps, or front fog lamps, or turning the starter switch to position '0' will automatically extinguish the rear fog guard lamps too (the lamps will not illuminate again unless switched on).

### WARNING

**ALWAYS** remember to switch the fog guard lamps off as soon as visibility permits; in clear conditions fog guard lamps can dazzle other road users.

## HAZARD WARNING LAMPS



Press to operate; all the direction indicator lamps (including those fitted to a trailer) will flash together. Use **ONLY** in an emergency to warn other road users when your stationary vehicle is causing an obstruction, or is in a hazardous situation. Remember to switch off before moving away.

# Bi-Xenon Headlamps

## BI-XENON LAMP UNITS

### WARNING

Bi-Xenon lamp units operate at a high temperature. If they have recently been in use, allow sufficient time for them to cool down before touching them.

Used xenon lamp units contain mercury, which is hazardous and can be injurious to health.

The xenon system generates up to 28,000 volts and contact with this voltage could lead to a fatality. Ensure that headlamps are switched off and switch off the starter switch before working on the system.

Replacement or maintenance of xenon lamps should be carried out only by qualified personnel.

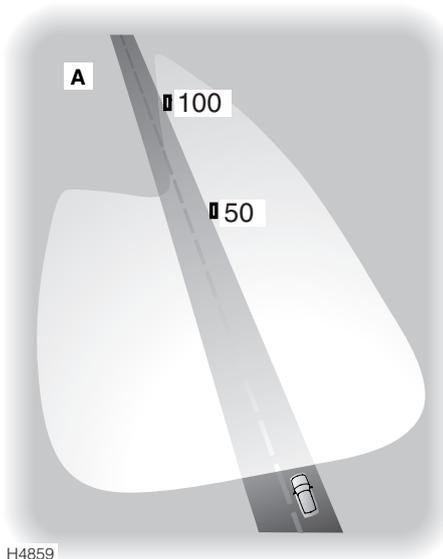
Vehicles fitted with Bi-Xenon headlamp units use a halogen bulb for the high beam and a xenon bulb for both fill-in high beam and for normal beam. A solenoid-operated shutter changes the direction of the xenon lamp beam to give either dipped or high beam.

The operational life of a Bi-Xenon lamp is significantly longer than that of a conventional or halogen bulb.

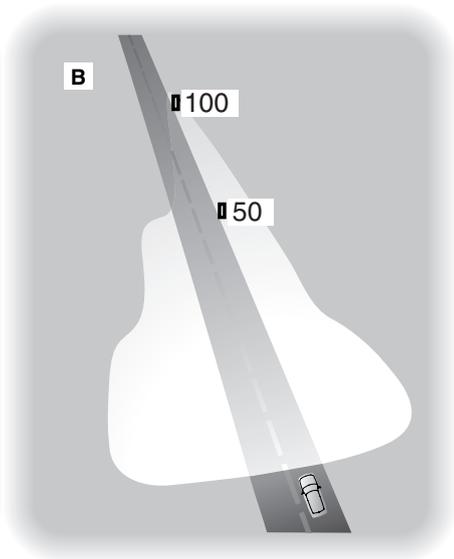
Bi-Xenon lamps (A) provide significantly improved visibility over halogen lamps (B), especially during adverse weather conditions.



*Seek advice about the proper disposal of Bi-Xenon lamp units from a Land Rover Retailer or your local authority.*



H4859



# Wipers & Washers

## OPERATING

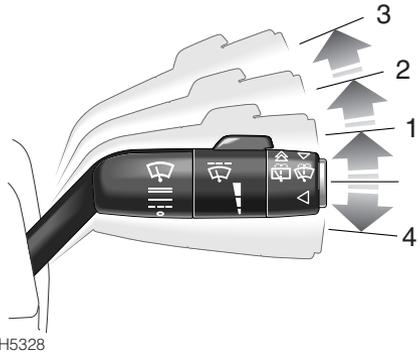
The wipers and washers will only operate when the starter switch is turned to position 'I' or 'II'.

### IMPORTANT INFORMATION

- DO NOT operate the wipers on a dry shield.
- In freezing or very hot conditions, ensure that the blades are not frozen or stuck to the glass.
- In winter, remove any snow or ice from around the arms and blades, including the wiped area of the windshield and the heater air intakes.

**Note:** If the wiper blades have stuck to the glass, an electronic cut-out may temporarily prevent the wiper motor from operating. If this is the case, switch the wipers off, wait for 3 minutes (or turn the starter switch off and then on again), free them from the obstruction and then switch on again.

## WINDSHIELD WIPERS



### Rain sensor variable delay or intermittent variable delay

Push the lever up to position 1.

### Normal speed wipe

Push the lever up to position 2.

### Fast speed wipe

Push the lever up to position 3.

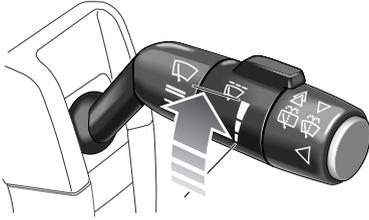
### Single wipe

Pull the lever down to position 4 and release immediately.

**Note:** With the lever held down, the wipers will operate at normal speed until the lever is released.

# Wipers & Washers

## Intermittent variable delay



H3895

With the lever in position '1', rotate the switch clockwise to increase and counter-clockwise to decrease the frequency of the intermittent wipe.

## Road speed sensor

The frequency of wiper operation is also adjusted automatically according to road speed. As the speed of the vehicle increases, the wiper frequency increases accordingly to help maintain optimum visibility. This feature is automatic and cannot be adjusted by the driver.

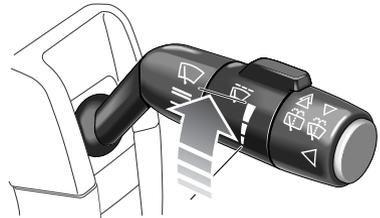


*Speed sensitive wiper operation can be disabled by a Land Rover Retailer.*

## Rain sensor variable delay

### IMPORTANT INFORMATION

Ensure that the rain sensor mode is deselected BEFORE entering an automatic car wash - otherwise, the wipers will operate during the car wash program and be damaged.

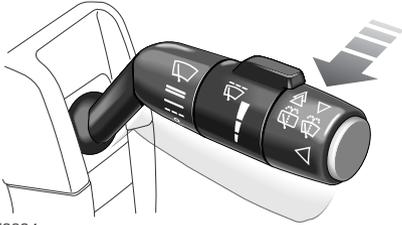


H3895

Your vehicle is equipped with an optical rain sensor fitted to the inside of the windshield, immediately to the front of the rear view mirror. The sensor is able to detect varying amounts of dirt or water on the outside of the shield. With the wiper switch in the first position, the variable delay adjusts automatically according to the information supplied by the rain sensor, to increase or decrease the frequency of wiper operation. You can increase or decrease the sensitivity of the rain sensor and therefore the frequency of wiper operation, by rotating the control - either clockwise to increase or counter-clockwise to decrease sensitivity. If the sensor detects constant rain, the wipers automatically operate continuously at normal speed wipe.

# Wipers & Washers

## WINDSHIELD WASHER



H3894

Pull the lever towards the steering wheel (for at least 0.5 seconds). The windshield wipers will operate in conjunction with the washers for as long as the lever is held in this position, the wipers continuing for a further 3 wipes after the lever is released.



H4056

This feature can also be activated by pressing the button on the end of the lever.

## HEADLAMP WASH/WIPE

With the starter switch on and the headlamps illuminated, the headlamp washers operate automatically in conjunction with the windshield washers as follows:

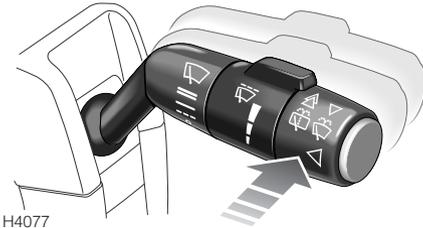
On the first operation of the windshield washers, the headlamp wipers operate for 4 wipes, with the headlamp washers operating for the first two of those wipes. Subsequently, the headlamp washers and wipers operate every fifth time the windshield washers are operated (provided that at least 3 minutes has elapsed since the last headlamp wash/wipe).

# Wipers & Washers

## REAR WINDOW WIPER AND WASHER

## Rear window wiper - variable delay operation

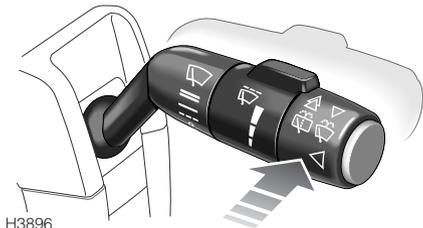
### Rear window wash/wipe



H4077

Push the lever forward to the first position, then forward again and hold against spring pressure for the required duration of window washing. The wiper operates automatically during washing and continues for a further 3 wipes after the switch is released.

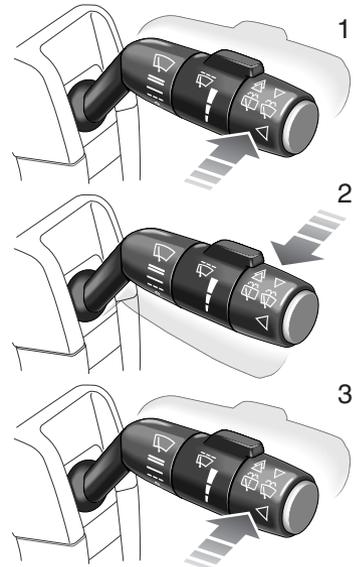
### Rear window wiper - intermittent operation



H3896

Push the lever forward to the first position to operate, the wiper operates intermittently until switched off.

**Note:** If the rear wiper is switched on, whenever reverse gear is selected, it will operate continuously rather than intermittently.



H4812

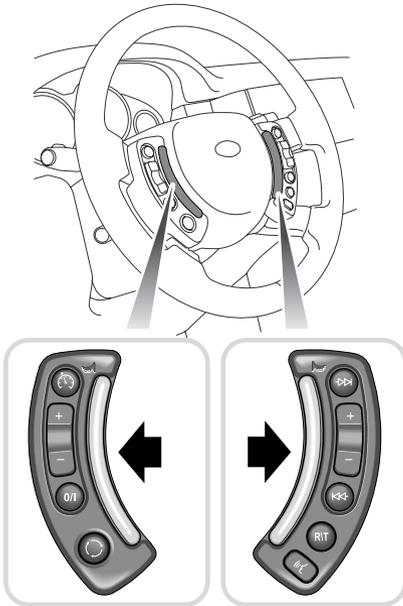
To set the variable wiper delay:

1. Push the lever forward to operate the rear wiper.
2. Immediately pull the lever back and wait for the desired delay period.
3. Push the lever forward again. The delay period is now set and the wiper will operate accordingly.

# Horn

---

## HORN



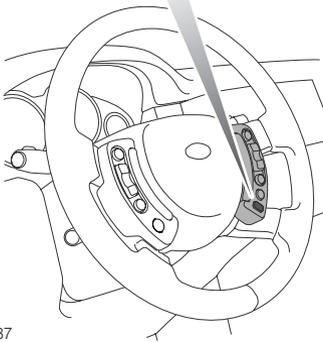
H4083

To operate, press either of the horn switches set into the steering wheel pad.

# Notepad

## USING NOTEPAD

Notepad is a feature for recording short messages as memory aids or reminders.



H5837

You can record up to 10 notes for up to 30 seconds each in length. Press the voice button shown in the illustration until 'LISTENING' appears in the message centre, then give the '**Notepad**' command.

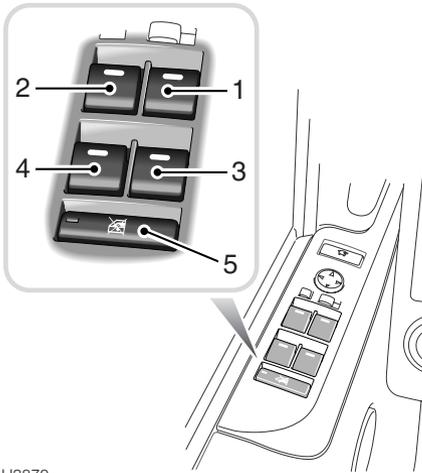
The voice recording will automatically be stopped if the note is longer than 30 seconds.

To stop voice recording at any time, press the voice button again.

| COMMAND                                       | SYSTEM RESPONSE  | ACTION  |
|---|--|---|
| <b>Record note</b> or <b>Notepad record</b>   | The system gives a beep to indicate the start of recording.  | You may start your recording after the beep. To stop recording, press the steering wheel voice button   |
| <b>Play notepad</b> or <b>Read notepad</b>    | Notepad audio will read out each note in turn. You can say <b>Replay</b> , <b>Delete</b> or <b>Cancel</b> after each beep, or remain silent to hear the next note. | Saying replay will replay the previous message. Saying <b>Delete</b> will delete the previous message. Saying <b>Cancel</b> will end the notepad session. |
| <b>Clear Notepad</b> or <b>Notepad delete</b> | >Do you want to clear the notepad?<  | Say <b>Yes</b> to delete all stored notes. Say <b>No</b> to cancel the command.   |
| <b>Notepad help.</b>                          | The system will read out Notepad information and all the commonly used commands.   |   |

# Electric Windows

## ELECTRIC WINDOWS



H3870

The switches on the driver's door operate the windows as follows:

1. Right hand front window.
2. Left hand front window.
3. Right hand rear window.
4. Left hand rear window.
5. Isolating switch for rear door window switches.

**Note:** Rear windows can also be operated by the individual switches mounted on each rear door. The rear window switches will not operate if the isolation switch has been activated.

## Operating the windows

The electric windows can be operated when the starter switch is at position 'I' or 'II' and for up to 16 minutes after the starter switch is turned to position '0' (provided a front door is not opened).

Press lightly and hold the top of a switch to lower and lift lightly and hold the top of a switch to raise. The window will stop moving as soon as the switch is released.

## WARNING

**Accidental closing of an electrically operated window on fingers, hands or any vulnerable part of the body, can result in serious injury. Always observe the following precautions:**

**ALWAYS ISOLATE** the rear window switches when carrying children.

**ENSURE** that children are kept clear whilst raising or lowering windows.

**ENSURE** that all adult passengers are familiar with the controls and the potential dangers of electrically operated windows.

**DO NOT** allow passengers to extend any part of their bodies through a window aperture while the vehicle is moving - injury from flying debris, branches of trees or other obstructions could occur.

**It is recommended that the starter key be removed when leaving the vehicle.**

# Electric Windows

---

## **'One touch' operation**

By pressing firmly (and then releasing) the top of a switch, a window will open fully at a single touch. Window movement can be stopped at any time by BRIEFLY pressing the top of the switch.

To close the window at a single touch, firmly lift and release the top of a switch. Window movement can be stopped at any time by BRIEFLY lifting the top of the switch.

To stop window movement during a 'one-touch' open or close operation, operate the switch in the opposite direction to which the window is travelling.

## **Rear window isolation switch**

Press once to isolate the window switches in the rear doors (the indicator light in the switch illuminates); press a second time to restore independent control.

### **WARNING**

**ALWAYS isolate the rear window switches when carrying children.**

---

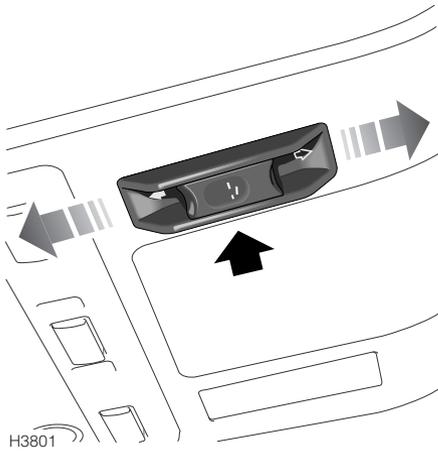
## **Anti-trap mechanism**

If the anti-trap sensor detects an obstruction during window closing, the closing operation is interrupted and the window backs off. This is a safety feature designed to prevent inadvertent closing of a window on vulnerable parts of the body or other obstructions. Remove any obstruction and then close the window.

If, for any reason, it is required to override the anti-trap mechanism, lift and hold the relevant window switch until the window has closed.

# Sunroof

## SUNROOF OPERATION



The electric sunroof can be operated when the starter switch is at position 'I' or 'II', and for up to 16 minutes after the starter switch is turned off (provided a front door is not opened).

- **To tilt the roof:** Press the centre part of the switch - the rear edge of the roof automatically rises to the fully tilted position.
- **To open the roof:** Push the switch rearwards to the first position, the sunroof slides open until the switch is released - push the switch rearwards to the second position and release, to fully open the roof in one go.
- **To close the roof:** With the roof open or tilted, push the switch forwards to the first position - the roof closes until the switch is released.

To fully close the roof in one go, push the switch forwards to the second position and release.

## Anti-trap mechanism

If the roof encounters resistance during closing, the closing operation is interrupted and the roof opens slightly. This is a safety feature designed to prevent inadvertent closing of the roof on vulnerable parts of the body or other obstructions. Remove any obstruction and then close the roof.

## WARNING

**Accidental closure of a sunroof on fingers, hands or any vulnerable part of the body, can result in serious personal injury. Always observe the following precautions:**

**ENSURE that children are kept clear and that the sunroof is not obstructed when opening or closing.**

**ENSURE that all adult passengers are familiar with the controls and the potential dangers of operating an electrically operated sunroof.**

**DO NOT allow passengers to extend any part of their bodies through the sunroof aperture while the vehicle is moving - injury from flying debris, branches of trees or other obstructions could occur.**

**ALWAYS close the roof when the vehicle is unattended.**

**NEVER leave children alone in the vehicle as this could result in serious injury or death.**

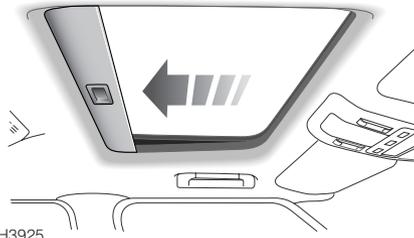
## Driving with the sunroof open

If, when driving with the sunroof open, unwanted drafts are experienced, open the front fascia air vents, and increase the blower speed if necessary. DO NOT operate the air conditioning.

# Sunroof

---

## Sunroof blind



Pull the sunroof blind across the sunroof aperture to open and close.

**Note:** *The sunroof blind can be opened and closed manually, but will retract automatically when the sunroof is opened, and will open slightly if the roof is tilted.*

### Operation after power supply interruption

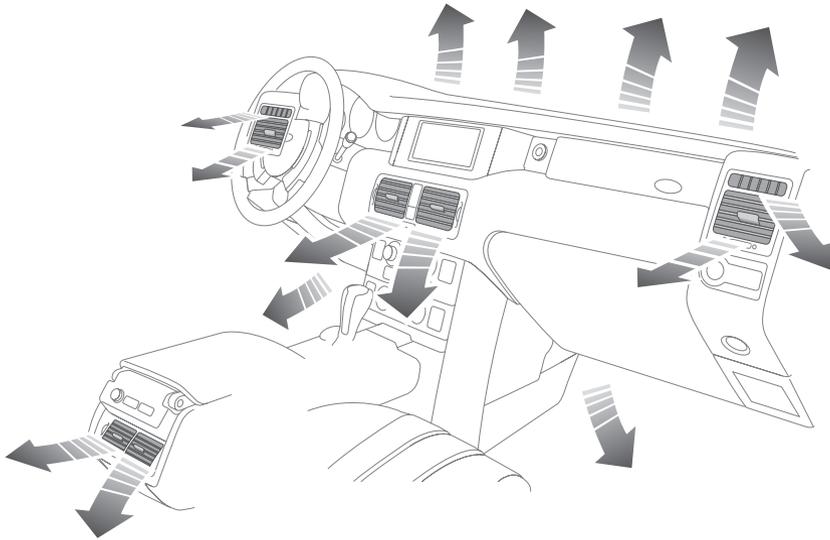
If the vehicle power supply is interrupted, the sunroof will need to be recalibrated as follows:

- With the power supply reconnected, fully tilt the sunroof open.
- Continue to push the switch in the tilt position for approximately 20 seconds.

The sunroof can now be operated as normal.

# Heating & Ventilation

## VENTILATION



H5829

The ventilation system provides fresh or heated air to the interior of the vehicle from the air intake grille in front of the windshield.

**Note:** Always keep the air intake grille clear of obstructions such as leaves, snow or ice.

Air outlets are provided to the windshield, face and feet - the location of those vents is shown in the illustration above. The temperature of the air supplied to the vents is controlled by the heater.

Information concerning the operation of the heating and ventilation system, appears on the following pages.

### Air Vents

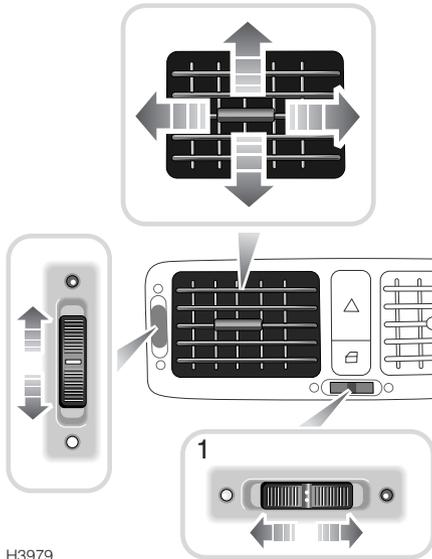
The temperature of the air from all vents is controlled by the temperature settings of the heater.

Rotate the thumbwheel towards the green indicator to open, or the white indicator to close the vents. Direct the air flow by moving the control in the centre of the louvres.

To ensure best ventilation and minimum noise, the vents should be fully open when the air conditioning air distribution control is set to face level.

# Heating & Ventilation

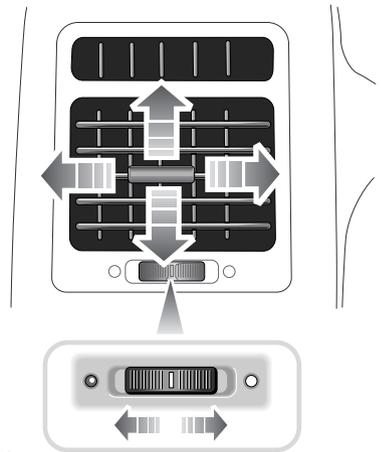
## Centre foot/face level vents



H3979

When the air conditioning air distribution control is set to either 'Auto' or 'Face and Foot' outlet, the temperature of the air emitted through the foot/face level vents can be finely adjusted to differentiate between foot and face temperature. Rotate the thumbwheel (1), towards the left (red indicator) for warm air and to the right (blue indicator) for cooler air.

## Side face level vents

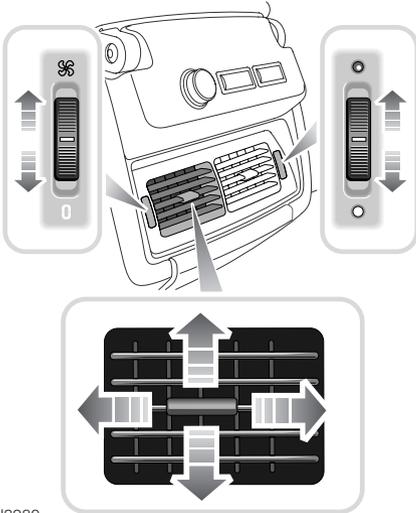


H3978

# Heating & Ventilation

---

## Rear vent controls



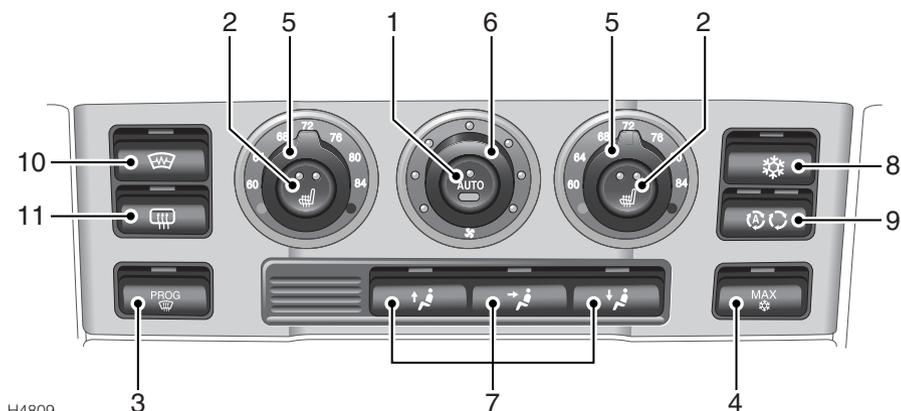
H3980

The left hand control operates the blower; rotate the thumbwheel upwards to increase the blower speed. The right hand control adjusts the temperature; rotate the thumbwheel upwards (red indicator) for warmer air, downwards (blue indicator) for cooler air.

**Note:** *The temperature set by the front occupants restricts the maximum level of warm air the rear passenger can select.*

# Heating & Ventilation

## CLIMATE CONTROL SYSTEM



H4809

The air conditioning system features automatic temperature and air distribution control, which is programmed to maintain optimum levels of comfort within the vehicle in all but the most severe climatic conditions.

While the controls can be adjusted manually to satisfy individual requirements, allowing the system to function automatically (in Auto mode) is by far the simplest method of operation for the owner and is preferable in most operating conditions.

### 1. Auto mode

In Auto mode, air conditioning, air distribution, blower speeds and air recirculation are adjusted automatically to achieve and then maintain the desired driving environment.

- Press 'AUTO' (1) for fully automatic operation (both indicator lights in the switch illuminate).
- Rotate the temperature controls (5) to select the required temperature.
- Let the automatic temperature control system do the rest.

Both the air distribution and blower controls can be operated independently to override the automatic setting. In this case, the appropriate indicator light in the 'AUTO' switch extinguishes (the circular light represents the blower, the rectangular light represents air distribution). Press 'AUTO' again to re-establish automatic operation.

**Note:** If the air distribution and blower controls are operated independently, the system may not be able to achieve or maintain the required temperature settings.

### 2. Front seat heaters\*



Press once to operate at a high level, press twice to heat the seats at a lower level. For further information concerning the operation of both front and rear seat heaters, please refer to **SEAT HEATERS\***, 107.

# Heating & Ventilation

## 3. Defrost mode



If the windshield is misting or covered in ice, press to activate the automatic defrost programme; the system will immediately direct its output to achieve maximum shield clearing by:

- Setting the blower speed and temperature to maximum.
- Distributing air flow to the shield only.
- Deactivating the rear blower.
- Deactivating air recirculation.

In addition, the rear and front shield heaters will be switched on (or their timed operating cycle will recommence if they are already switched on).

Press the button a second time (or select 'AUTO' or any air distribution control) to leave the Defrost mode.

## 4. Maximum air conditioning



This mode automatically activates the air conditioning and air recirculation, and sets the blower speed at maximum and the air distribution to the face level vents. This mode overrides the current temperature settings.

## 5. Temperature controls

Rotate the controls to set the required temperature for the corresponding side of the passenger compartment (left hand switch for the left side of the vehicle, and right hand switch for the right side).

Temperatures above 28°C (82°F) and below 16°C (61°F) cannot be set.

The temperatures on the control surrounds are relative, target, temperatures only and are not reflective of any specific temperature measured within the vehicle interior.

**Note:** *The system will not achieve temperatures on the passenger side of the vehicle that are more than 5°C (9°F) greater or less than the temperature set for the driver's side.*

## 6. Blower control

Rotate clockwise to increase and counter-clockwise to decrease airflow from the vents.

## 7. Air distribution control

Press the appropriate button to select the desired distribution setting:

- Foot level vents
- Face level vents
- windshield and side window vents

More than one setting can be selected at once, to get the desired distribution.

# Heating & Ventilation

---

## 8. Air conditioning control



With the engine running, press the button to manually activate the air conditioning, or to switch off the air conditioning if it has been previously selected (manually or automatically).

## 9. Air recirculation



Air recirculation prohibits the entry of air from outside the vehicle, alternatively recirculating the air inside the vehicle instead. This is useful to prevent the entry of traffic fumes.

**Note:** *On some vehicles, there is also a remote air recirculation button on the steering wheel. This button is a simple on/off button and does not incorporate the automatic recirculation feature, see **REMOTE AIR RECIRCULATION, 108.***

Press the button once to activate automatic recirculation. This feature automatically activates air recirculation when sensors fitted to the vehicle detect high levels of air pollution, therefore preventing the ingress of fumes into the vehicle (in traffic, for example).

Press the button a second time to activate air recirculation.

Press the button a third time to deactivate air recirculation.

Air recirculation also significantly influences the dehumidifying and cooling performance of the air-conditioning system. Therefore, in Auto mode, air recirculation is regulated automatically to enable the air-conditioning system to achieve its optimum performance.

**Note:** *Prolonged recirculation may cause the windows to mist.*

## 10. Heated windshield



Press to operate, the indicator light in the switch will illuminate whenever the shield heater is on.

## 11. Heated rear screen



Press to operate; the indicator light in the switch illuminates whenever the screen heater is on.

**Caution: DO NOT stick labels over the heating elements on the rear screen, and DO NOT scrape or use abrasive materials to clean the inside of the rear screen.**

# Heating & Ventilation

---

## USING YOUR HEATER

Fresh air enters the heater unit through the grille in front of the windshield and stale air is drawn out through vents in the rear of the vehicle.

The following examples of basic heater settings are intended as a general guide; the air distribution, temperature and blower controls can then be further adjusted to suit your comfort requirements. Always remember that full heating is not available until the engine has reached its normal operating temperature.

### Maximum heating

Set the temperature control to maximum and the air conditioning air distribution control to 'AUTO', with the blower at the slowest speed (position 1) until the temperature gauge indicates that the engine is warming up - the blower speed can then be increased. Set the centre face ventilation temperature control fully towards the red indicator.

### Demisting/defrosting

Switch on the air conditioning and the windshield heaters, then set the temperature and blower controls to maximum. Set the air conditioning air distribution control to 'all air to windshield', to obtain the maximum flow of heated air from the windshield and side window vents. When defrosting, switching on air recirculation will help, but remember to switch off air recirculation as soon as defrosting has completed, to avoid windshield misting.

### Maximum ventilation

Set the temperature control to your preferred interior temperature. Switch on the air conditioning and select air recirculation. Set the air distribution control to 'Air to face vents'. Ensure the face level vents are open and set the centre face vent temperature control fully towards the blue indicator. Adjust the blower speed to maximum.

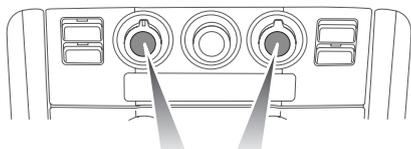
Opening a window or the sunroof may improve ventilation. Remember; do not open a window or the sunroof, if the air conditioning is operating.

## GENERAL NOTES

- For optimum operating efficiency, ensure all the air vents (including those in the rear of the vehicle) are open.
- For the automatic temperature control system to function efficiently, all windows (and the sunroof) should be closed, and the air intake vents free from ice, snow, leaves or other debris.
- In very humid conditions, slight shield misting may be experienced when the air conditioning system is turned on. This is a natural occurrence on most automotive air conditioning systems. It is not a fault and misting will clear after a few seconds once the air conditioning system is operating.
- The air conditioning compressor will not function unless the engine is running.
- Surplus water produced by the dehumidifying process is expelled from the system via drain tubes beneath the vehicle. This may result in a small pool of water forming on the road when the vehicle is stationary and is not a cause for concern.

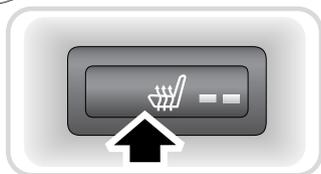
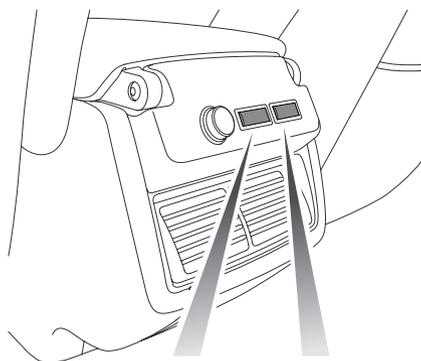
# Heating & Ventilation

## SEAT HEATERS\*



H4036

*Front seat heaters*



H4037

*Rear seat heaters*

With the starter switch turned on, the seat cushion and seat back can be heated at two different levels.

- Press once to operate at a high level (both indicator lights illuminate).
- Press twice to heat the seats at a lower level (right hand indicator light extinguishes).
- Press the switch a third time to turn off the heater manually (both indicator lights will extinguish).

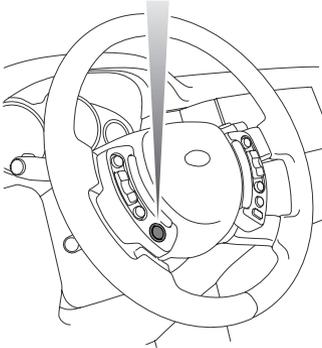
The seat heaters are thermostatically controlled and will operate intermittently to maintain a predetermined temperature. The indicator lights in the switches will remain illuminated until the heaters are either manually turned off, or if the starter switch is turned off.

### IMPORTANT INFORMATION

The seat heaters consume considerable power from the battery. For this reason, they should **ONLY** be operated while the engine is running.

# Heating & Ventilation

## REMOTE AIR RECIRCULATION

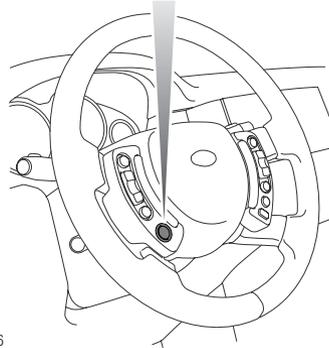


H4087

Press to turn air recirculation on or off. The indicator light in the main recirculation control will illuminate when air recirculation is active.

**Note:** On vehicles not fitted with remote air recirculation or a heated steering wheel, no button is fitted in this position.

## HEATED STEERING WHEEL \*



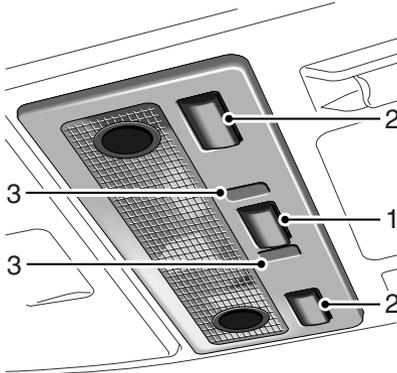
H4086

Press to activate the steering wheel heating elements. The heating elements are thermostatically controlled and operate intermittently (when switched on) to maintain a comfortable temperature. Press the switch again to manually deactivate the heater.

**Note:** On vehicles not fitted with remote air recirculation or a heated steering wheel, no button is fitted in this position.

# Interior Equipment

## INTERIOR COURTESY LIGHTS & MAP LIGHTS



H3798

### *Front interior light and map lights illustrated*

The interior light illuminates automatically whenever the vehicle is unlocked, when the starter switch is turned off (provided the sidelamps have been on in the last 30 seconds), or when a door or taildoor is opened. The light remains illuminated for 20 seconds after the doors and taildoor are closed, or until the starter switch is turned on.

After driving, the interior lights will fade and then extinguish as soon as the vehicle is locked or when all the doors and taildoor are closed.

**Note:** *If a door is left open the lights will automatically extinguish after 16 minutes, to prevent battery drain.*

To turn the light on and off manually, briefly press switch 1.

To turn off the automatic illumination feature (i.e. when a door is opened), press and hold switch 1 for 3 seconds. Repeat to restore the automatic illumination feature.

### **Vehicle finder**

When returning to your vehicle, if you press the lock button on the remote handset, the interior lights will come on for 8 seconds to assist you in locating your vehicle in a busy car park.

### **Map light operation**

Press the relevant map light switch (2) to turn on and off. If a map light is left on, it will extinguish after 16 minutes to prevent battery drain.

## LOW LEVEL NIGHT TIME ILLUMINATION

With the main lighting switch turned to sidelamps or headlamps, the interior lights provide very low level illumination using the LEDs (3), in conjunction with the optional door bin and door handle lights. The level of illumination can be adjusted using the instrument illumination dimmer switch.

Low level lighting provides very limited illumination for the interior of the vehicle, whilst the vehicle is being driven, without affecting the driver's night vision.

## GLOVEBOX LIGHT

Illuminates automatically whenever the glovebox is opened and extinguishes when the glovebox is closed. If the glovebox is left open, the light will extinguish automatically after 16 minutes, to prevent battery drain.

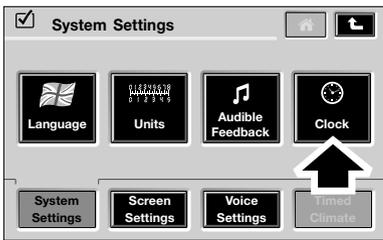
## PUDDLE LIGHTS/APPROACH LIGHTS

A light, mounted in the bottom of each of the exterior mirror housings, illuminates for 20 seconds when the vehicle is unlocked. These lights illuminate the approach to the vehicle.

# Interior Equipment

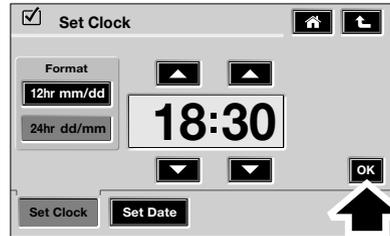
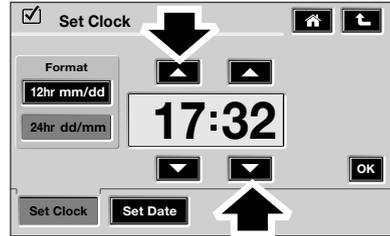
## CLOCK

### Setting the time



H5808G

To set the time, firstly access the system settings menu on the display and then select the clock icon on the touch screen.



H5809G

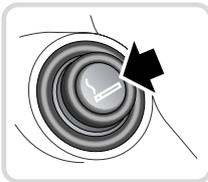
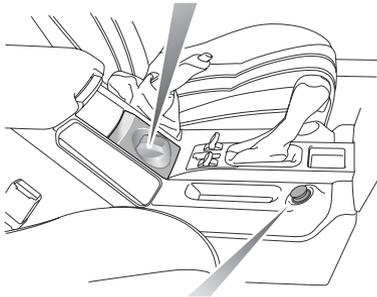
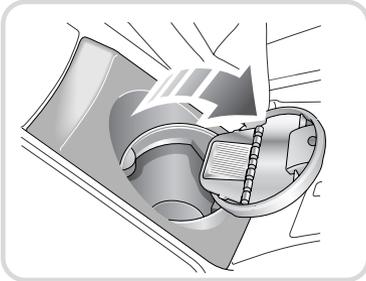
Scroll up or down to select the correct time then press 'OK'

### Using the clock

The analogue clock display illuminates constantly and dims automatically for night time viewing, when the sidelamps are illuminated. The dimming level can be adjusted using the instrument panel dimmer switch.

# Interior Equipment

## CIGAR LIGHTER



H4368

With the starter switch turned on, press the lighter in (lower arrow) to heat up. When it has reached the correct temperature it will partially eject and can then be withdrawn for use.

- ONLY hold the cigar lighter by the handle.
- DO NOT plug accessories into the cigar lighter socket unless they are approved by Land Rover.

**Note:** The cigar lighter socket remains powered with the ignition switched off. Battery drain could occur if accessories are left plugged in when leaving the vehicle parked.

## ASHTRAYS

### WARNING

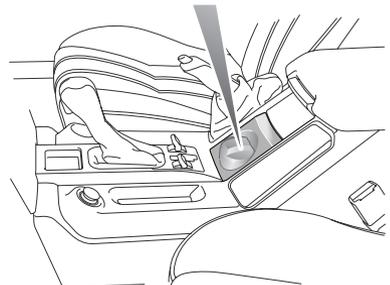
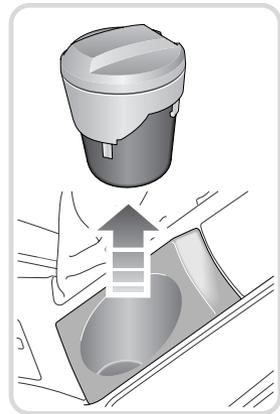
**DO NOT use the ashtrays for disposing of waste paper or other combustible items.**

### Front

To open the ashtray pull back the top edge.

To remove the ashtray, lift and twist upwards. Removing the ashtray offers the option to use the ashtray support frame as a cupholder.

When replacing the ashtray, do not force it into the cupholder.

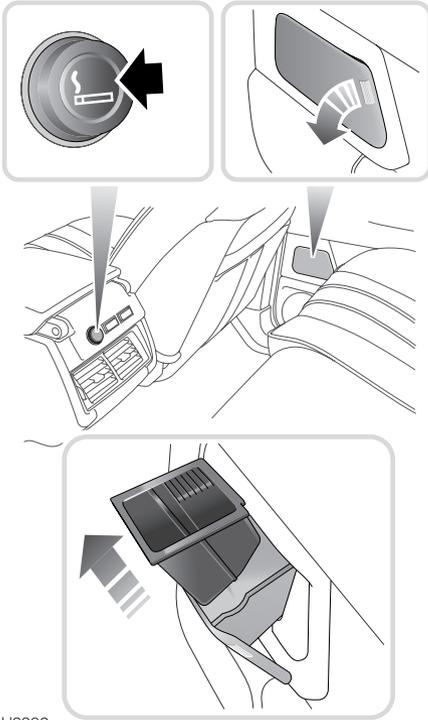


H5014

# Interior Equipment

---

## Rear



H3982

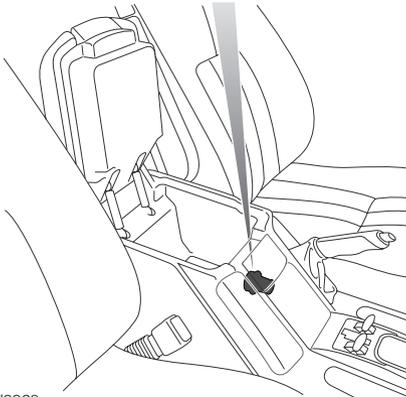
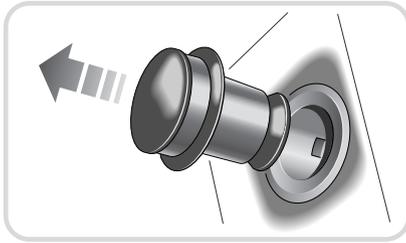
The rear ashtrays are set into the rear doors - pull where arrowed to open. To remove for emptying, open the ashtray and pull the inner compartment upwards.

The rear cigar lighter is incorporated in the rear of the cubby box, between the front seats. Operation of the rear cigar lighter is the same as that of the front cigar lighter.

**Note:** The cigar lighter socket remain powered with the ignition switched off. Battery drain could occur if accessories are left plugged in when leaving the vehicle parked.

# Interior Equipment

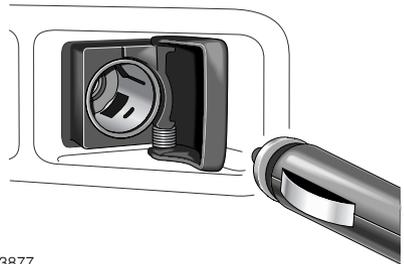
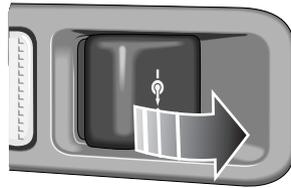
## AUXILIARY POWER SOCKETS



H3928

### *Cubby box power socket*

An auxiliary power socket is mounted in the cubby box, between the front seats.



H3877

### *Rear loadspace power socket*

A second power socket is located on the right hand side of the rear loadspace area.

### Using a power socket

The power sockets can be used to power Land Rover approved accessories that use a maximum of 180 watts.

Always run the engine during prolonged use of electrical accessories, otherwise the battery may become discharged.

**Note:** Auxiliary power sockets remain live with the starter switch in the off position. Battery drain resulting in failure to start the engine may occur if accessories remain plugged in whilst the engine is switched off.

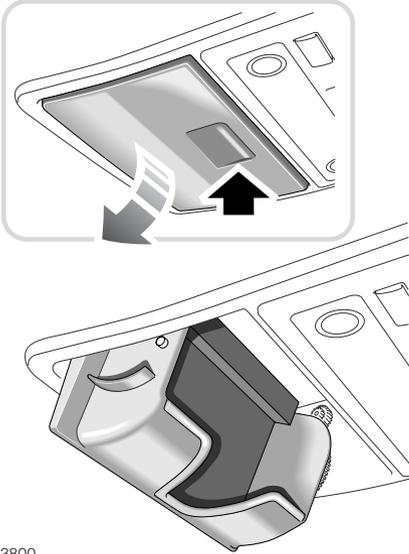
### WARNING

**NEVER plug non-approved accessories into a power socket - damage to the vehicle's electrical systems could occur.**

# Interior Equipment

---

## SUNGLASSES HOLDER



H3800

Press where arrowed (in inset) to open.

## CUP HOLDERS

### WARNING

The driver should not drink or use the cup holder whilst driving.

If the cup holder is retractable, it should be kept closed when not in use.

**DO NOT** place anything other than suitable drinks containers in the cup holder. Such items may be thrown about in the compartment in the event of an accident or emergency manoeuvre, which may cause injuries to the occupants.

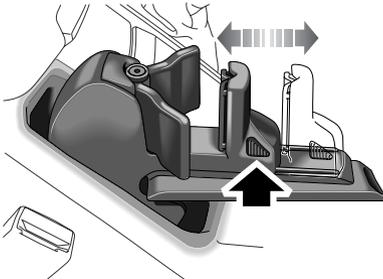
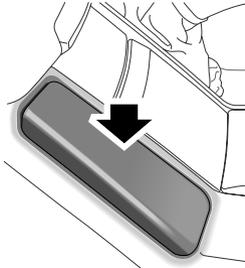
Do not carry open-top drink containers in the cup holders while the vehicle is in motion; a spilled hot drink could cause personal injury, and may damage upholstery, carpeting and electrical components.

Use only for soft drinks containers. **DO NOT** use to hold cups made of glass, china or hard plastic, as these may cause injury in the event of an accident or emergency manoeuvre. Unopened, sealed containers (drinks cans, for example) are hard objects and may also cause injury.

---

# Interior Equipment

## Driver's

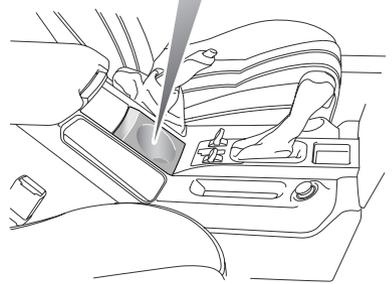
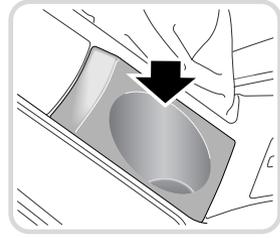


H5835

Push the middle of the cover to open (upper solid arrow). Push the cover forwards to open the cup holder. Press the catch (lower solid arrow) and slide the cup holder clamp to adjust the aperture to suit the size of the cup.

**Note:** The clamp has to be fully closed before the cup holder can be folded back into the centre console.

## Large cup holder

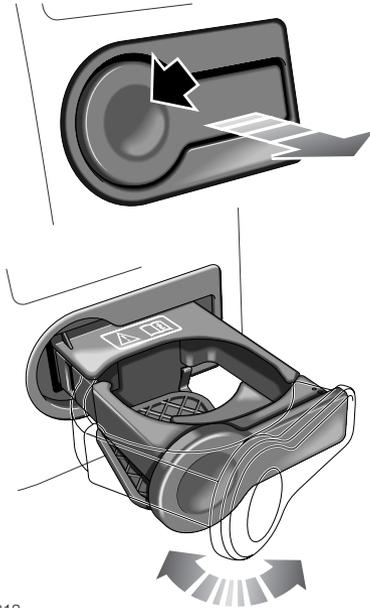


H4366

Alongside the driver's cup holder is a holder suitable for large drinks containers.

# Interior Equipment

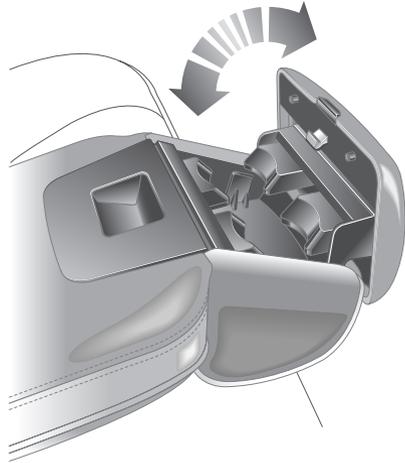
## Front passenger's



H5813

Press to open (solid arrow). When the holder is open, the leading edge can be pivoted out (as lower illustration) to adjust the aperture to suit the size of the cup. Push the cup holder in to close.

## Rear passenger's

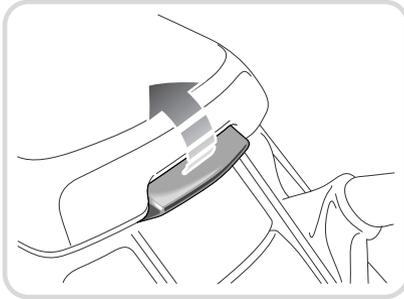
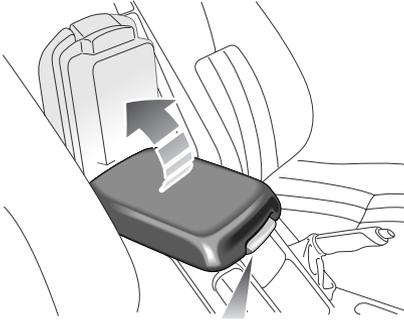


H3936

With the armrest folded down, depress the release catch and fold out the double cup holder (mounted in the back of the centre seat headrest).

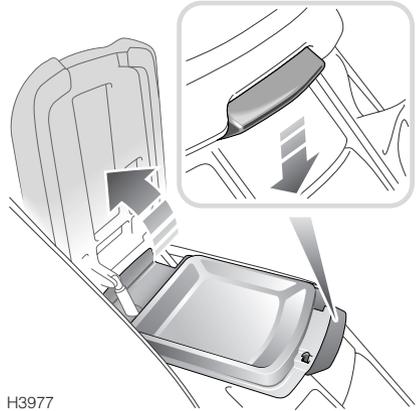
# Interior Equipment

## CUBBY BOX



H3927

Lift the catch at the front of the cubby box lid to access the main cubby box.

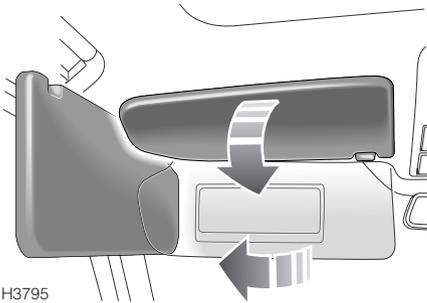


H3977

Press down on the catch and lift up the main lid of the cubby box to access the trinket tray.

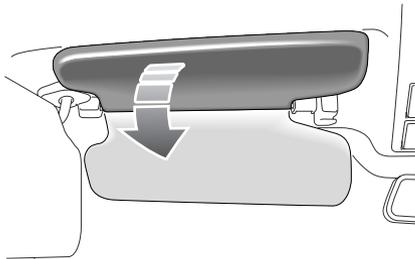
# Interior Equipment

## SUN VISOR



H3795

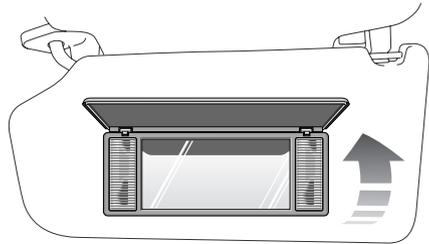
Pivot the sun visor downward to reduce sun glare through the front windshield. If required, the visor can then be pivoted towards the side window to reduce sun glare from that side of the vehicle.



H3796

A secondary sun visor is located behind the main visor and can be used as required.

## SUN VISOR VANITY MIRROR ILLUMINATION

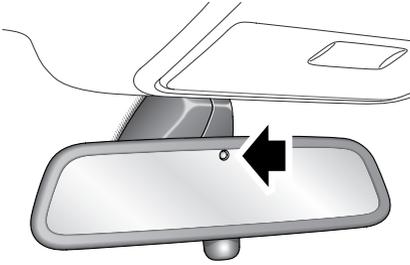


H3797

Pivot the sun visor downward and raise the cover on the vanity mirror to illuminate the mirror. Close the cover to extinguish the lights. If the cover is left open, the lights will extinguish automatically after 16 minutes to prevent battery drain.

# Interior Equipment

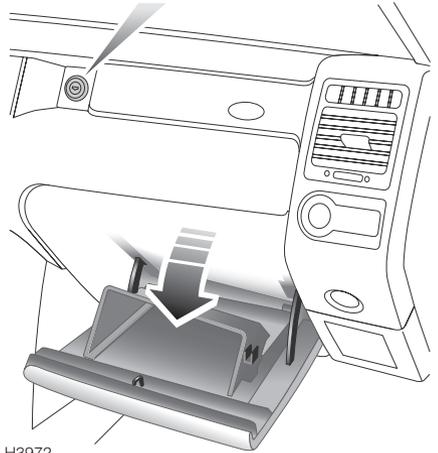
## INTERIOR REAR-VIEW MIRROR



H3921

The automatic rear view mirror is equipped with an automatic dipping function which operates whenever the starter switch is turned to position `II'. When powered, the light sensor (arrowed) detects excessive light and automatically dips the mirror, to reduce glare from the headlamps of following vehicles in dark or low light conditions.

## GLOVEBOX



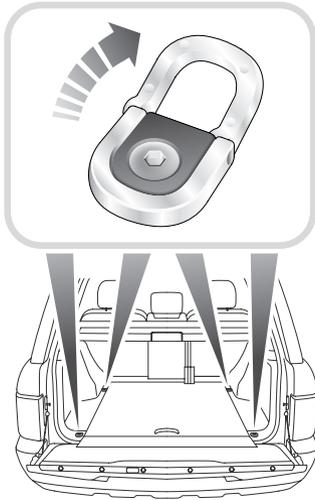
H3972

Press the release button (arrowed in inset) to open.

For added security, the starter key can be used to lock the glovebox.

# Interior Equipment

## LUGGAGE ANCHOR POINTS



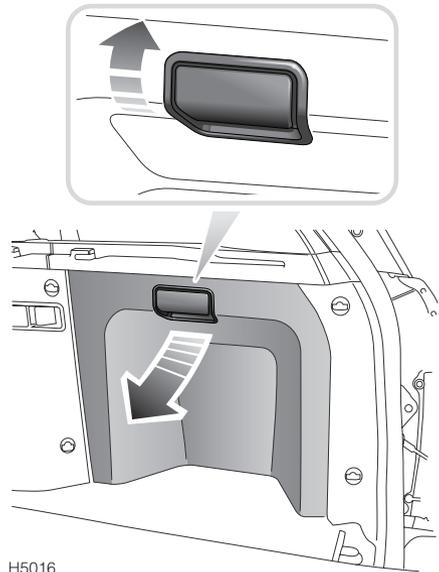
H4185

Four fixing points are provided in the rear loadspace floor, to assist in safely securing large items of luggage. Land Rover provide a range of approved luggage retention accessories.

### **WARNING**

**DO NOT carry unsecured equipment, tools or luggage, which could move and cause personal injury in the event of an accident or emergency manoeuvre either on or off-road.**

## REAR LOADSPACE ACCESS HATCH



H5016

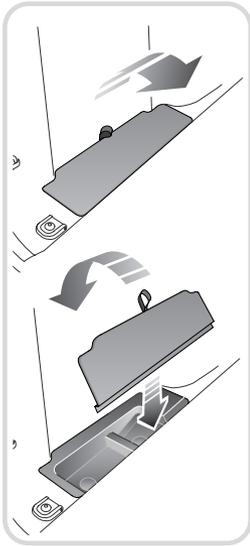
The access hatch is located on the right hand side of the rear loadspace and provides access to the warning triangle\*, the rear loadspace fuse box and the emergency fuel filler flap release.

Lift the catch (upper inset) and pull the hatch away from the side of the vehicle.

When refitting the hatch, ensure that it is securely and correctly fitted, before driving.

# Interior Equipment

## REAR LOADSPACE STOWAGE AREAS

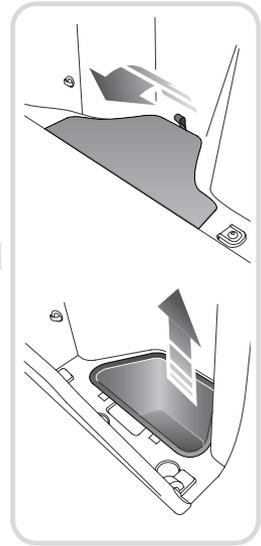
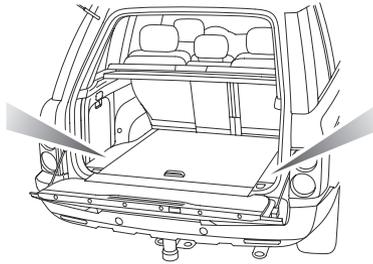


H4232

### Hidden trinket tray

On the left-hand side of the loadspace, a small covered trinket tray is provided, to store smaller items in a concealed area. Pull up the tab to open the tray cover.

When replacing the cover, fit the right-hand edge first.



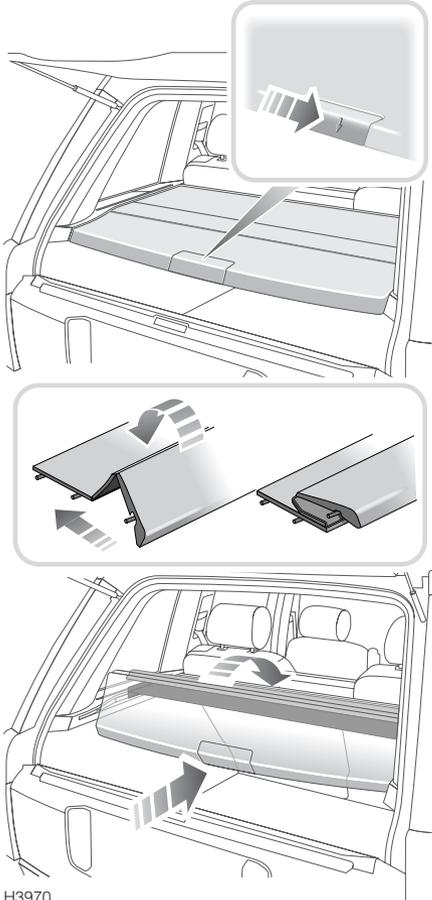
### Removable storage box

On the right-hand side of the loadspace, a removable box is fitted, beneath the loadspace floor. Pull up the tab to open the box cover. Pull the box out to remove.

# Loadspace Cover

## LOADSPACE COVER

### Operating the loadspace cover



H3970

Push firmly downwards and forwards on the centre of the rear edge of the cover (where arrowed in the upper inset), then lift and fold forwards.

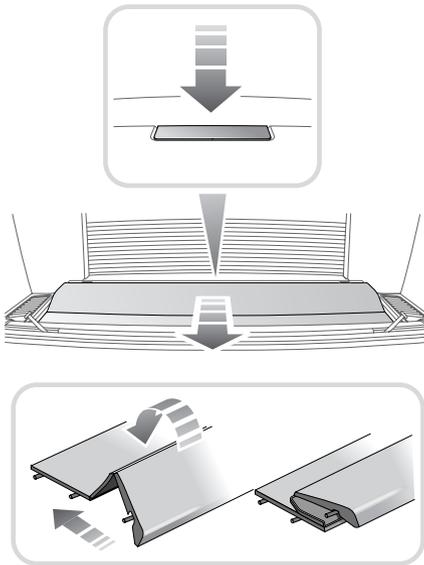
## WARNING

**DO NOT** carry loose items of luggage on top of the loadspace cover - these may obscure vision and could become dangerous projectiles in the event of a sudden stop or collision.

All equipment, luggage or tools carried in the loadspace should be secured to minimise the risk of injury to the driver and passengers in the event of an accident or emergency maneuver.

# Loadspace Cover

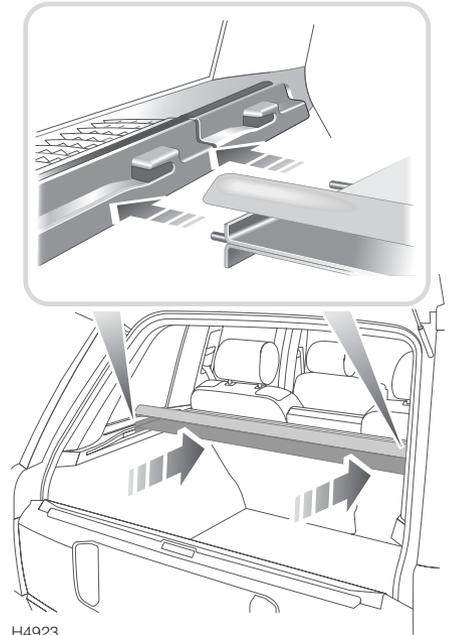
## Folding the loadspace cover from inside the vehicle



H4051

If it is necessary to fold the loadspace cover from inside the vehicle (to access the emergency taildoor release lever, for example), remove the rear head restraints to improve access to the loadspace. From the rear seats, push firmly down on the centre rear edge of the cover (see upper inset), while pulling the cover towards the rear seats. The cover folds as shown in the lower inset.

## Fitting the loadspace cover



H4923

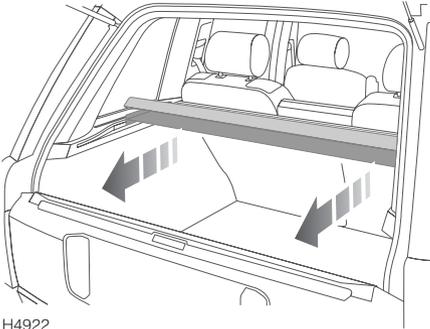
Place the loadspace cover in position, ensuring that the two locating pins on each side rest on the slides just rearwards of the sockets.

Press firmly forwards to engage and lock the pins in the sockets.

# Loadspace Cover

---

## Removing the loadspace cover



H4922

With the cover folded, pull the whole assembly rearwards to disconnect the locating pins and withdraw the loadspace cover carefully from the vehicle.

### **WARNING**

**DO NOT** store the loadspace cover loose in the vehicle.

---

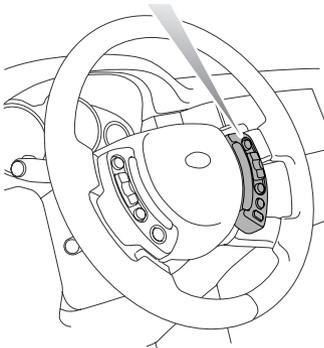
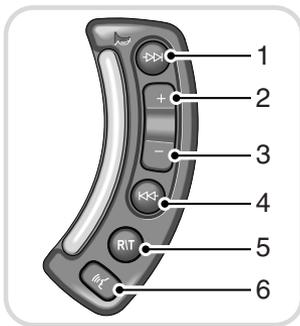
# In-Car Entertainment

## RADIO AERIAL

The aerial is etched onto the surface of the glass of the left hand rear side window.

No maintenance is possible, however it is important to ensure that the interior surface of the glass is protected from possible damage caused by contact with hard objects or from the injurious effects of abrasive cleaners.

## AUDIO REMOTE CONTROLS



H4085

### 1. Search forward

#### Tuner/Radio mode

Short press = Next preset up.

Long press = Seek up.

### CD mode

Short press = Next track.

Long press = Fast forward with audio output.

### Phone mode

Short press = Next entry in the phone book, if the phone is docked. If the phone isn't docked the text 'PHONE' is displayed in the instrument pack.

No long press functionality.

### 2. Volume increase control

Press to increase playback volume.

### 3. Volume decrease control

Press to decrease playback volume.

### 4. Search backward

#### Tuner/Radio mode

Short press = Next preset down.

Long press = Seek down.

### CD mode

Short press = Previous track.

Long press = Fast backward with audio output.

### Phone mode

Short press = Previous entry in the phone book, if the phone is docked. If the phone isn't docked the text 'PHONE' is displayed in the instrument pack.

No long press functionality.

### 5. Radio/telephone change over switch

Press to switch operation from radio to telephone.

### 6. Telephone/voice recognition control

Press to receive/terminate a call. Press to start dialling.

Press and hold to activate voice recognition.

See the '**In-Car Entertainment**' or '**Audio, TV Navigation system**' book for further information.

# In-Car Entertainment

---

**Note:** *The Audio system can operate up to an hour when the starter key is removed. However the steering wheel remote switches will only work if the starter switch is in Aux, Run or Cranking positions.*

## IN-CAR ENTERTAINMENT

### Audio system

Full operating instructions for any audio equipment fitted as standard to your vehicle, are contained in the '**In-Car Entertainment**' or '**Audio, TV Navigation system**' book for further information.

### CD autochanger

The CD autochanger is located in the glovebox. Full operating instructions are contained in the '**In-Car Entertainment**' or '**Audio, TV Navigation system**' book.

### WARNING

**DO NOT** insert or eject the magazine while driving.

---

# Land Rover Homelink®

## HOMELINK® TRANSMITTER

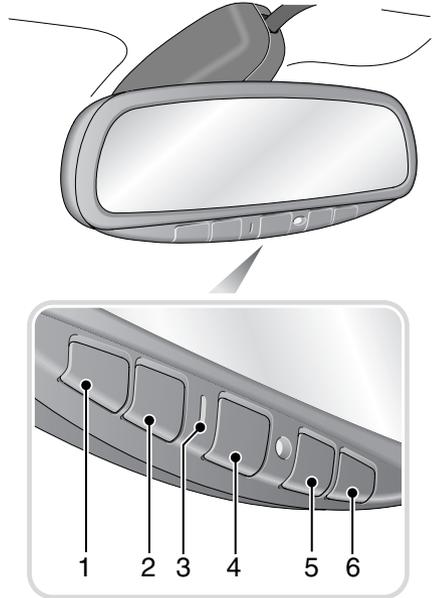
The Land Rover HomeLink® Universal Transmitter is built into the underside of the rear view mirror and provides a convenient way to replace up to three hand-held transmitters with a single built-in device. This innovative feature will learn the radio frequency codes of most current transmitters to operate garage doors and gates. With the available accessory package, the HomeLink® Transmitter can also control home or office lighting and security systems. For reliability, the HomeLink® Transmitter is powered by your vehicle's battery and charging system.

### Precautions

When programming your HomeLink® Transmitter, you will be operating the garage door or gate. Be sure that people and objects are out of the way, to prevent potential harm or damage.

### WARNING

**Do not use this HomeLink® Transmitter with any garage door that lacks safety 'stop' and 'reverse' features, as required by federal safety standard (this includes any garage or door opener model manufactured before April 1, 1982). A garage door opener which cannot 'detect' an object in the path of a closing door and then automatically 'stop' and 'reverse' the door, does not meet current federal safety standards. Using a garage door opener without these features increases the risk of serious injury or death. For more information on this matter, call toll-free: 1-800-355-3515 or consult [www.homelink.com](http://www.homelink.com).**



H5842N

1. Channel 1 button
2. Channel 2 button
3. Status indicator light  
Red - transmitter  
Green - auto dimming
4. Channel 3 button
5. Dimming on button
6. Dimming off button

# Land Rover Homelink®

---

## Programming

1. Turn the starter switch to position 'II'.
2. If you have previously programmed your Homelink® Transmitter, proceed to step 3. Otherwise, hold down the two outside buttons (1) and (4) on the Homelink® Transmitter until the red light (3) begins to flash (approximately 20 seconds). Release both buttons.  
This initializes the Homelink® Transmitter and erases previous settings from all three channels.  
DO NOT perform this step when programming additional hand-held transmitters.
3. Decide which one of the three channels you want to program.
4. Hold the signal-emitting end of your hand-held transmitter 5 - 14 cm (1 - 3 in.) away from the Homelink® Transmitter buttons so that you can still see the red status indicator light (4).
5. With one hand, push the hand-held transmitter button, and with the other, the desired button on the Homelink® Transmitter. Continue to press both buttons through step 6.
6. Hold down both buttons until you see the red light on the Land Rover Homelink® Transmitter flash, first slowly and then rapidly. (This could take up to a minute). It indicates that you have successfully programmed the Homelink® Transmitter to learn the new frequency signal. Release both buttons once the rapid flashing begins.
7. Turn the starter switch to position '0'.

If after repeated attempts you do not successfully program the Homelink® Transmitter to learn the signal of the hand-held transmitter, call toll-free for customer assistance: 1-800-355-3515 or consult [www.homelink.com](http://www.homelink.com).

## Operating the Land Rover Homelink® Transmitter

Once it is programmed, the Homelink® Transmitter can be used in place of your hand-held transmitter(s). To operate, simply press the appropriate button on the Homelink® Transmitter. The red light (3) comes on while the signal is being transmitted.

**NOTE:** If your hand-held transmitter appears to program the Homelink® Transmitter, but does not open your garage door and, if your garage door was manufactured after 1995, your garage door opener may have a 'code protected' or 'rolling code' feature.

A 'rolling code' type of system will change the 'code' of your garage door opener every time you open or close your garage door.

To determine if you have one of these systems, depress the button on your Homelink® Transmitter that you programmed. If the red light on the Homelink® Transmitter flashes rapidly for 1-2 seconds, then lights continuously, your garage door opener has a rolling code system.

# Land Rover Homelink®

---

## Training a garage door opener equipped with 'rolling codes'

To train your 'rolling code' garage door opener to operate from your HomeLink® Transmitter, follow these steps:

1. Program your hand-held transmitter to the HomeLink® Transmitter by following the procedures outlined previously (if you have already completed this programming, proceed to the next instruction).
2. Train your garage door opener receiver to recognize your HomeLink® Transmitter: (your garage door opener receiver will learn to recognize the HomeLink® Transmitter by following the same process used to train the hand-held transmitter)
  - a) Remove the cover panel from your garage door opener receiver (the receiver should be located by the garage door motor).
  - b) Locate the training button on the garage door opener receiver. The exact location and color of the button may vary by garage door opener brand. If you have difficulty locating the training button, reference your garage door opener manual, call 1-800-355-3515 or consult [www.homelink.com](http://www.homelink.com).
  - c) Press the training button on the garage door opener receiver for 1-2 seconds, then perform the next step within 30 seconds.
  - d) Return to the HomeLink® Transmitter in the vehicle and depress the programmed button twice. Depress the button to confirm that the HomeLink® Transmitter has been trained to the receiver.

e) Your garage door opener should now recognize your HomeLink® Transmitter. If not, repeat the procedure but pre, but in step d) press and release the transmitter button three times. You may use either your HomeLink® Transmitter or your original hand-held transmitter to open your garage door.

If after following these suggestions you still have difficulties programming your HomeLink® Transmitter, call toll-free for customer assistance: 1-800-355-3515 or consult [www.homelink.com](http://www.homelink.com).

## Erasing channels

To erase all three programmed channels, hold down the two outside buttons (1) and (3) until the red light begins to flash, then release both buttons. Individual channels cannot be erased, but can be reprogrammed using the procedures for programming the HomeLink® Transmitter (steps 3 through 6).

# Land Rover Homelink®

## Reprogramming a single button

To program a device to the HomeLink® Transmitter using a previously trained button:

1. Press and hold the desired button. No NOT release the button until step 4 has been completed.
2. When the indicator light begins to flash slowly (after 20 seconds), position the hand-held transmitter 5 - 14 cm (1 - 3 in.) away from the HomeLink® Transmitter surface.
3. Press and hold the hand-held transmitter button. The HomeLink® indicator light will flash, at first slowly and then rapidly.
4. When the indicator light begins to flash rapidly, release both buttons.

**Note:** Be sure to retain your original transmitter for future programming procedures (i.e. new vehicle purchase).

*When selling your vehicle, be sure to erase all channels on the HomeLink® Transmitter that you programmed.*

## Accessories

Accessories for your HomeLink® Transmitter are available from the manufacturer of the device. If you would like additional information or would like to purchase other accessories such as home lighting or security products that can be operated by the HomeLink® Transmitter, please call the toll-free: 1-800-355-3515 or consult [www.homelink.com](http://www.homelink.com).

### IMPORTANT INFORMATION

**FCC ID: NZLBTPHL3**

**IC: 4112A-NZLBTPHL**

This device complies with Part 15 FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

HomeLink® is a registered trademark owned by the Johnson Controls, Inc. Milwaukee, Wisconsin.

## Auto-dimming

The auto-dimming feature of the interior mirror, see **INTERIOR REAR-VIEW MIRROR, 119** can be turned on or off using buttons (5) and (6).

# Driving & Operating

## Starting & Driving

|                               |     |
|-------------------------------|-----|
| STEERING COLUMN LOCK .....    | 133 |
| STARTER SWITCH .....          | 133 |
| STARTING .....                | 134 |
| DRIVING .....                 | 135 |
| FUEL ECONOMY .....            | 136 |
| AUXILIARY EQUIPMENT .....     | 137 |
| EMISSION CONTROL SYSTEM ..... | 137 |

## Catalytic Converter

|                           |     |
|---------------------------|-----|
| CATALYTIC CONVERTER ..... | 138 |
|---------------------------|-----|

## Fuel Filling

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| GAS STATION SAFETY .....                    | 139 |
| FUEL FILLER .....                           | 139 |
| TYPE OF FUEL .....                          | 140 |
| FUEL FILLING .....                          | 141 |
| EMPTY FUEL TANK .....                       | 141 |
| FUEL FILLER FLAP EMERGENCY<br>RELEASE ..... | 141 |

## Park Distance Control

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| USING PARK DISTANCE<br>CONTROL (PDC) ..... | 142 |
|--|-----|

## Automatic Transmission

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| GEAR SELECTOR .....  | 144 |
| GEAR SELECTOR LEVER .....  | 144 |
| MANUAL CommandShift™ GEAR<br>SELECTION .....                                   | 147 |
| USING AN AUTOMATIC GEARBOX<br>ELECTRONICALLY SELECTED<br>AUTOMATIC MODES ..... | 149 |

## Transfer Gearbox

|                                  |     |
|----------------------------------|-----|
| TRANSFER GEAR SWITCH .....       | 150 |
| USING THE TRANSFER GEARBOX ..... | 150 |



# Driving & Operating

---

## **Cruise Control**

CRUISE CONTROL ..... 152

## **Brakes**

FOOT BRAKE ..... 154

ANTI-LOCK BRAKES ..... 155

PARKING BRAKE ..... 157

## **Dynamic Stability & Traction Control**

DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC) .. 158

ELECTRONIC TRACTION  
CONTROL (ETC) ..... 159

## **Hill Descent Control**

HILL DESCENT CONTROL ..... 160

## **Electronic Air Suspension**

ELECTRONIC AIR SUSPENSION (EAS) .. 162

MANUAL OPERATION ..... 162

MOTORWAY HEIGHT ..... 163

OFF-ROAD HEIGHT ..... 164

ACCESS HEIGHT ..... 164

TOWING A TRAILER ..... 165

## **Towing**

TOWING ..... 166

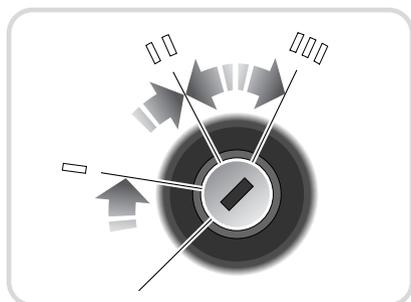
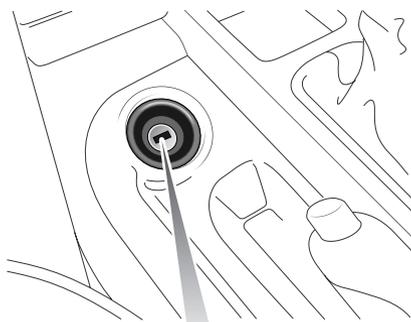
## **Load Carrying**

LUGGAGE ANCHOR POINTS ..... 170

ROOF RACKS ..... 170

# Starting & Driving

## STEERING COLUMN LOCK



H3923

The starter switch and steering column lock is located on the centre console, forward of the parking brake.

### To unlock the steering column

Insert the key into the starter switch.

### To lock the steering column

Remove the key from the starter switch.

**Note:** The gear selector **MUST** be in the 'P' (park) position, before the starter key can be removed.

## WARNING

Once the steering lock is engaged, it is impossible to steer the vehicle. **DO NOT** remove the key or turn the starter switch to position '0' while the vehicle is in motion.

**Note:** Once removed, the starter key should not be left in close proximity to the starter switch. This can lead to the steering column lock operating repeatedly, discharging the vehicle battery.

## STARTER SWITCH

The starter switch uses the following sequence of key positions to operate the steering lock, electrical circuits and starter motor:

### Position '0'

- Steering locked (if key is removed).
- Most lighting circuits are operational, including: sidelamps, headlamps and hazard warning lamps.
- With the driver's door open, seat switches and seat memory facility operational.

### Position 'I'

- Steering unlocked.
- Steering wheel adjusts to set driving position.
- Clock, audio system and cigar lighter can now be operated.

### Position 'II'

- All instruments, warning lights and electrical circuits are operational.

### Position 'III'

- The starting sequence is initiated. Note that operation of position 'I' electrical functions will be interrupted during engine cranking.

# Starting & Driving

---

**Note:** The gear selector position 'P' or 'N' must be selected before the engine will start.

## STARTING

### WARNING

**Never start or leave the engine running in an unventilated building - exhaust gases are poisonous and contain carbon monoxide, which can cause unconsciousness and may even be fatal.**

Before starting the engine and driving, ENSURE you are familiar with the precautions shown under **CATALYTIC CONVERTER, 138**.

In particular, you should be aware that if the engine fails to start, continued use of the starter may result in unburnt fuel damaging the catalytic converter.

1. Check that the parking brake is applied and that the gear selector is in the 'P' (Park) or 'N' (Neutral) position.
2. Switch off all unnecessary electrical equipment.
3. Turn the starter switch to position 'II' and then on to position 'III' to operate the starter motor. DO NOT press the accelerator pedal while starting, and RELEASE THE KEY as soon as the engine starts cranking (the engine will automatically continue cranking until the engine starts).

If the engine stalls or fails to start, you MUST return the starter switch to position 'I' before attempting to restart; the engine will not start by turning the starter switch from position 'II'.

**Note:** The battery charging and oil pressure warning lights should extinguish as soon as the engine is running.

## Cold climates

In very cold climates the oil pressure warning light may take several seconds to extinguish. Similarly, engine cranking times will also increase; at -30°C (-22°F) the starter motor may operate continuously for as long as 30 seconds before the engine will start. For this reason, ensure that all non-essential electrical equipment is switched off.

## After starting

Ensure that the parking brake and foot brake are firmly applied and the accelerator pedal is not depressed while moving the gear selector lever from 'N' or 'P', otherwise, the vehicle may move immediately the selector lever is moved to one of the drive positions ('D' or 'R'). This is particularly important when the engine is cold, because the engine will be idling at a faster speed than normal.

**Note:** The foot brake **MUST** be applied, before the gear selection lever can be moved out of 'P' or 'N' into a drive position.

# Starting & Driving

## DRIVING

### WARNING

#### Vehicle stability

**Your vehicle has a higher ground clearance and, hence, a higher centre of gravity than ordinary passenger cars to enable the vehicle to perform in a wide variety of different off-road applications. An advantage of the higher ground clearance is a better view of the road, allowing the driver to more easily anticipate problems. Inexperienced drivers should take additional care, remembering that your vehicle is not designed for cornering at the same speeds as conventional passenger cars, any more than a low slung sports car is designed to perform satisfactorily in off-road conditions. As with other vehicles of this type, failure to operate your vehicle correctly may result in loss of control or even vehicle rollover.**

### IMPORTANT INFORMATION

#### Vehicle height

The overall height of your vehicle exceeds that of ordinary passenger cars. Always be aware of the height of your vehicle and check the available headroom before driving through low entrances. This is particularly important if the vehicle is fitted with a roof rack or if the sunroof is tilted open.

#### Before Driving

Learn the layout and function of all the instruments, warning lights and controls. Adjust the seat to a comfortable driving position from which you can ensure full control of the vehicle. Always start the vehicle and operate the controls from the driving position.

#### Instruments and warning lights

Before driving it is important to fully understand the function of the instruments and warning lights, see **INSTRUMENT PANEL, 71**.

**Note:** *Red warning lights are of particular importance, illumination indicating that a fault exists. If a red light illuminates, always stop the vehicle and seek qualified assistance before continuing.*

#### Warming-up

DO NOT warm-up the engine by allowing it to idle at a slow speed.

In the interests of fuel economy, it is advisable to drive the vehicle straight away, remembering that harsh acceleration and labouring the engine before the normal operating temperature has been reached can damage the engine.

When the engine is cold, engine idle speeds will be faster than normal. Under these circumstances, use the foot brake to control the vehicle until the engine is warm and running at normal speed, and be aware of the need to take additional care when manoeuvring the vehicle.

# Starting & Driving

---

## Breaking-in

Proper breaking-in will have a direct bearing on the reliability and smooth running of your vehicle throughout its life.

In particular, the engine, gearbox, brakes and tires need time to 'bed-in' and adjust to the demands of everyday motoring. During the first 800 km, it is essential to drive with consideration for the breaking-in process and heed the following advice:

- LIMIT maximum road speed to 112 km/h (70 mph) or 3,000 rev/min. Initially, drive the vehicle on a light throttle and only increase engine speeds gradually once the breaking-in distance has been completed.
- DO NOT operate at full throttle or allow the engine to labour in any gear. It is advisable NOT to use Sport Mode when running in.
- AVOID fast acceleration and heavy braking except in emergencies.

## FUEL ECONOMY

Fuel consumption is influenced by two major factors:

- How your vehicle is maintained.
- How you drive your vehicle.

To obtain optimum fuel economy, it is essential that your vehicle is maintained in accordance with the manufacturer's service schedule.

Items such as the condition of the air cleaner element, tire pressures and wheel alignment will have a significant effect on fuel consumption. But, above all, the way in which you drive is most important. The following hints may help you to obtain better value from your motoring:

- Avoid unnecessary, short, start-stop journeys.
- Avoid fast starts by accelerating gently and smoothly from rest.
- Do not drive in the lower gears for longer than necessary (in Manual mode).
- Decelerate gently and avoid sudden and heavy braking.
- Anticipate obstructions and adjust your speed accordingly well in advance.
- When stationary in traffic, select neutral ('N') to improve fuel economy and air conditioning performance.

# Starting & Driving

---

## AUXILIARY EQUIPMENT

**Caution: DO NOT use auxiliary equipment, such as roller generators, that are driven by one wheel of the vehicle, as they could cause failure of the gearbox differential.**

Some local jurisdictions require emission testing using a two-wheel roller dynamometer. Your vehicle is equipped with permanent 4-wheel drive and cannot be safely operated on these machines. For more information regarding safe emission testing of your vehicle, consult your Land Rover Retailer.

## EMISSION CONTROL SYSTEM

### WARNING

**Exhaust fumes contain poisonous substances which can cause unconsciousness and may even be fatal.**

- **DO NOT inhale exhaust gases.**
- **DO NOT start or leave the engine running in an enclosed unventilated area, or drive with the taildoor open.**
- **DO NOT modify the exhaust system from the original design.**
- **ALWAYS repair exhaust system leaks immediately.**
- **If you think exhaust fumes are entering the vehicle have the cause determined and corrected immediately.**

---

Land Rover vehicles are fitted with emission and evaporative control equipment necessary to meet a number of territorial requirements.

In many some jurisdictions it is against the law for vehicle owners to modify or tamper with emission control equipment, or to sanction the unauthorised replacement or modification of this equipment. In such cases the vehicle owner and the repairer may both be liable for legal penalties.

It is important to remember that all Land Rover Retailers are properly equipped to perform repairs and to maintain the emission control system on your vehicle.

# Catalytic Converter

---

## CATALYTIC CONVERTER

The exhaust system incorporates a catalytic converter, which converts poisonous exhaust emissions from the engine into environmentally less harmful gases.

**Caution: Severe damage to the catalytic converter could occur if the engine is stopped for any length of time when being driven through water whose level is above the exhaust tailpipe.**

**Catalytic converters can be easily damaged through improper use, particularly if the wrong fuel is used, or if an engine misfire occurs. For this reason it is VERY IMPORTANT that you heed the precautions which follow.**

### Fuel

ONLY use fuel recommended for your vehicle, see **V8 ENGINE, 275**.

### Starting the engine

- DO NOT continue to operate the starter after a few failed attempts (unburnt fuel may be drawn into the exhaust system, thereby poisoning the catalyst), and do not attempt to clear a misfire by pressing the accelerator pedal - seek qualified assistance.
- When starting a COLD engine, DO NOT drive if a misfire is suspected and do not attempt to clear a misfire by pressing the accelerator - seek qualified assistance.
- Do not attempt to push or tow-start the vehicle.

### Driving

- If a misfire is suspected, or the vehicle lacks power while driving, provided the engine has reached its normal operating temperature, it may be driven SLOWLY (at risk of catalyst damage) to a Land Rover Retailer for assistance.

- NEVER allow the vehicle to run out of fuel (the resultant misfire could damage the catalyst).
- Consult your Retailer if your vehicle is burning excessive oil (blue smoke from the exhaust), as this will progressively reduce catalyst efficiency.
- On rough terrain do not allow the underside of the vehicle to be subjected to heavy impacts which could damage the catalytic converter.
- DO NOT overload or excessively 'rev' the engine.
- DO NOT switch off the engine when the vehicle is in motion with a drive gear selected.

## WARNING

**Exhaust system temperatures can be extremely high - DO NOT park on ground where combustible materials such as dry grass or leaves could come into contact with the exhaust system - in dry weather a fire could result.**

---

### Vehicle maintenance

- Any engine misfire, loss of engine performance or engine run-on, could seriously damage the catalytic converter. For this reason, it is vital that unqualified persons do not tamper with the engine, and that regular systematic maintenance is carried out by a Land Rover Retailer.
- DO NOT run the engine with a spark plug or HT lead removed, or use any device that requires an insert into a spark plug.

# Fuel Filling

## GAS STATION SAFETY

### WARNING

Petroleum gases are highly inflammable and, in confined spaces, are also extremely explosive.

Always place portable gasoline containers on the ground while filling and keep the pump nozzle in contact with the container to avoid a static electricity ignition of fuel vapors. A fire may result if gasoline is pumped into a container that is inside a vehicle. You could be burned!

Always take sensible precautions when refuelling:

- Switch off the engine.
- Do not smoke or introduce other ignition sources.
- Switch off mobile phones.
- Take care not to spill fuel.
- Do not overfill the tank.
- Do not fill gas cans in the vehicle.
- Do not leave the fuel filler pump unattended during refuelling.
- Use only the hold-open latch provided on the fuel filler pump. Never jam the latch open with some other object.

### WARNING

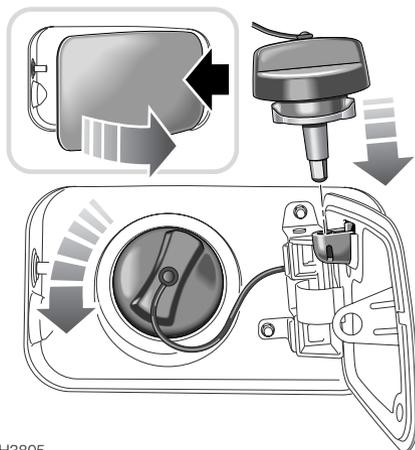
**If a flash fire occurs during refuelling, leave the nozzle in the vehicle fill pipe and back away from the vehicle. Notify the station attendant at once so that all dispensing devices and pumps can be shut off with emergency controls. If the facility is unattended, use the emergency intercom to summon help and the emergency shutdown button to shut off the pump.**

## FUEL FILLER

### WARNING

**DO NOT** fully remove the filler cap until any captive tank pressure has been released.

Take careful note of any warning labels located around the filler flap.



H3805

The fuel filler is located in the rear right-hand fender. With the vehicle fully unlocked (all doors and taildoor), press the right side of the fuel filler flap to open (shown in inset).

Carefully turn the cap counter-clockwise and allow any fuel tank pressure to be released. Once the pressure is released, it is safe to fully remove the filler cap. When refuelling, insert the filler cap in the socket on the back of the filler flap (see illustration).

When replacing, tighten the cap clockwise until you hear the fuel cap ratchet click once.

# Fuel Filling

## TYPE OF FUEL

### IMPORTANT INFORMATION

#### **ONLY USE UNLEADED FUEL**

- Unleaded fuel is essential for proper operation of the emission control system.

**Caution: DO NOT use leaded fuel! Your engine is designed to use unleaded fuel ONLY.**

- Even a very small quantity of leaded fuel will damage your vehicle's emission control system and could invalidate the emissions warranty. In addition, leaded fuel will damage the oxygen sensors in the fuel injection system and also seriously damage the catalyst in the catalytic converter.

**Caution: Fuel system cleaning agents should be avoided, as many of these products can be harmful to gaskets and other materials used in fuel system components.**

### Octane requirements

Premium unleaded gasoline with a CLC or AKI octane rating of 90 - 92 should be used.

**Note:** Federal law requires that gasoline octane ratings be posted on the pumps. The Cost of Living Council (CLC) octane rating or Anti Knock Index (AKI) octane rating shown is an average of Research Octane Number (RON) and Motor Octane Number (MON).

Using unleaded fuel with an octane rating lower than that recommended, can cause persistent, heavy 'engine knock' (a metallic rapping noise). If severe, this can lead to engine damage.

If heavy engine knock is detected when using the recommended octane rated fuel, or if steady engine knocking is present while maintaining a steady speed on level roads, contact your Retailer for advice.

**Note:** An occasional, light, engine knock while accelerating or climbing hills is acceptable.

### Octane enhancers

The use of octane enhancers is not recommended and may invalidate the vehicle warranty.

**Note:** Reformulated gasolines and gasolines that contain detergents, anti-corrosion and stability additives are recommended - they will help your vehicle maintain the correct level of emissions and engine performance.

### Driveability

If you encounter driveability, starting and stalling problems, especially in high ambient temperatures or at high altitude when the engine is cold, it may be caused by poor quality fuel. Try an alternative brand and if the problem persists, seek advice from your Retailer.

### Gasoline/oxygenated fuel blends

To avoid invalidating the vehicle warranty, use ONLY fuels blended within the following limits:

- Up to 15% of Methyl Tertiary Butyl Ether (MTBE) and unleaded fuel mix.
- Up to 15% of Ethyl Tertiary Butyl Ether (ETBE) and unleaded fuel mix.
- Up to 10% of Ethanol (Ethyl or grain alcohol) and unleaded fuel mix.

# Fuel Filling

## Methanol/unleaded fuel blends

In some areas, it is possible to buy unleaded fuel that is blended with up to 5% Methanol (Methyl or wood alcohol) and cosolvents and corrosion preventatives. Using these blends can cause driveability problems and damage the fuel system components. Their use may also invalidate the vehicle warranty. WHEREVER POSSIBLE, AVOID USING FUEL CONTAINING METHANOL!

### WARNING

**Automotive fuels can cause serious injury and even death if misused.**

**Methanol/unleaded fuel blends, even in small amounts, can cause blindness and possible death if swallowed. Additionally, take precautions to prevent methanol from coming into contact with the skin.**

## FUEL FILLING

Gas station pumps are equipped with automatic cut-off sensing to avoid fuel spillage. Fill the tank SLOWLY until the filler nozzle automatically cuts off the supply. DO NOT attempt to fill the tank beyond this point or spillage could result due to expansion of the fuel.

The fuel filler neck will accept ONLY a narrow filler nozzle of the type found on pumps that deliver UNLEADED fuel. A flap lies across the filler neck; insert the nozzle sufficiently to fully open the flap before filling.

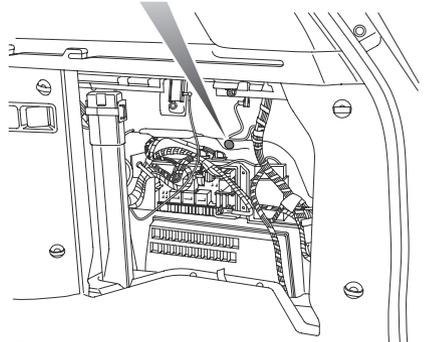
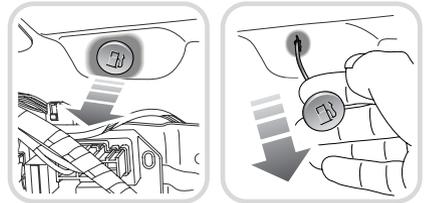
### Filling difficulties

The fuel delivery rate of gas station pumps can vary significantly. This, coupled with the fact that modern pumps are equipped with a sensor which automatically cuts off the supply as soon as turbulence is detected in the upper part of the vehicle's filler neck, could result in isolated fuel filling problems.

## EMPTY FUEL TANK

**Caution: DO NOT run the fuel tank dry! Running the fuel tank dry could create an engine misfire capable of damaging the catalytic converter. DO NOT RUN THE FUEL TANK DRY!**

## FUEL FILLER FLAP EMERGENCY RELEASE



H4050

If the vehicle battery has been disconnected or has discharged, the fuel filler flap can be opened manually. Open the rear loadspace access hatch (see **REAR LOADSPACE ACCESS HATCH, 120**). Pull the green release handle (as illustrated in the insets) to open the filler flap.

# Park Distance Control

---

## USING PARK DISTANCE CONTROL (PDC)



H5275

Park Distance Control (PDC) is a system that assists the driver when manoeuvring the vehicle into a parking space, or anywhere there are obstacles that need to be avoided, warning the driver accordingly.

The vehicle is fitted with four ultrasonic sensors on each of the bumpers.

The range of the front sensors, and the two sensors on the corners of the rear bumper is approximately 0.6 metres (2 feet). The two centre rear sensors have a range of approximately 1.5 metres (5 feet).

### WARNING

**Keep the sensors free from dirt, ice and snow. If deposits build up on the surface of the sensors, their performance may be impaired. When washing the vehicle, avoid aiming high pressure jets directly at the sensors at close range.**

---

### WARNING

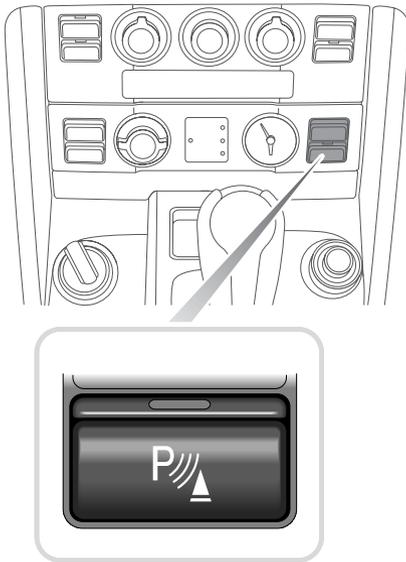
**The parking aid is not infallible, it is for guidance only. The sensors may not be able to detect certain types of obstruction (narrow posts or small narrow objects, small objects close to the ground and some objects with dark, non-reflective surfaces, for example).**

---

# Park Distance Control

## Activating PDC

PDC is automatically activated whenever the reverse gear ('R') is engaged. When the starter switch is turned on, the indicator light in the switch illuminates and a short tone sounds after 1 second as confirmation.



H4879

PDC can also be manually selected by pressing the switch (illustrated) on the centre front fascia (the indicator light in the switch illuminates and a short tone sounds as confirmation). A second press of the switch deactivates the PDC system. If PDC has been manually switched off by pressing the switch, it will not activate automatically until either the switch has been pressed again, or the starter switch has been turned off and on again.

**Note:** The confirmation tone only sounds the first time that PDC is selected (either by selecting reverse, or by pressing the switch), unless the starter switch has been turned off between uses.

If a long, high pitched tone sounds and the switch indicator light flashes when PDC is activated, then a fault in the system has been detected - contact your dealer for assistance.

## PDC in operation

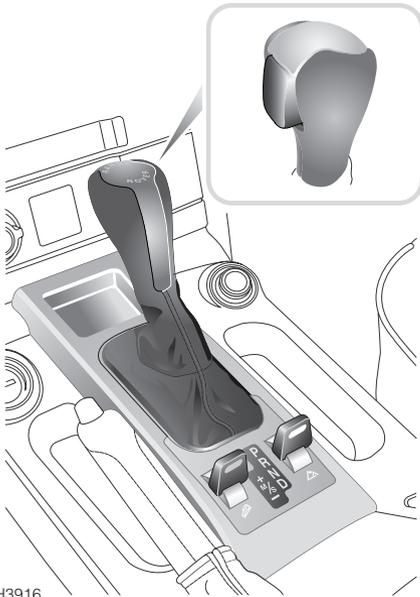
The distance from an obstruction is identified by an intermittent tone sounding (higher pitch for the front sensors and a lower pitch for the rear). As the vehicle moves closer to an obstruction, the frequency of the tone increases proportionally.

When the distance between the sensor and the obstruction is less than approximately 0.30 metres (1 foot), the tone becomes continuous.

PDC will remain active until the vehicle speed exceeds approximately 32 km/h (20 mph) or until the vehicle has travelled approximately 50 metres (165 feet), when it will automatically deactivate.

# Automatic Transmission

## GEAR SELECTOR



H3916

The CommandShift™ transmission provides both automatic and manual operation of the gears.

### Automatic operation

The transmission is naturally in automatic mode. With the engine started, gear selection can be made by moving the selector backward or forward to the appropriate position in a similar manner to other automatic gearboxes.

## GEAR SELECTOR LEVER

### Selector release button

The gearbox is fitted with a locking mechanism, designed to minimise the risk of accidental selection of the 'P' (Park) and 'R' (Reverse) positions.

The selector release button (see inset) must be pressed while selecting 'P' and 'R', and also to enable the lever to be moved between the 'P' and 'R' positions.

**Note:** With the engine running, or the starter switch in position 'II', the selector lever cannot be moved into a drive position unless the foot brake is applied.

**Caution:** DO NOT select 'P' or 'R' if the vehicle is moving.

**DO NOT** select a forward drive gear when the vehicle is moving backwards.

**Keep engine speed as low as possible when moving the selector between 'R' and a forward gear.**

**Note:** The gear selector lever **MUST** be in the 'P' position before the starter key can be removed.

# Automatic Transmission

---

## Selector lever positions

An indicator light on the selector panel and a number or letter on the gear selector display in the instrument panel, identify the selected gear position.

**'P' - Park:** This position mechanically locks the transmission and should be selected before switching the engine off. To avoid transmission damage, ensure the vehicle is completely stationary, with the parking brake applied, before selecting 'P'.

The selector release button **MUST** be pressed, in order to move the selector lever into, or out of, the Park position.

**'R' - Reverse:** Before selecting reverse, ensure the vehicle is stationary, with the brakes applied. Press the selector release button in order to move the selector lever into Reverse.

With the selector lever in the 'R' position, Hill Descent Control can be selected, see **HILL DESCENT CONTROL, 160**.

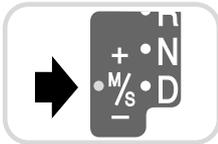
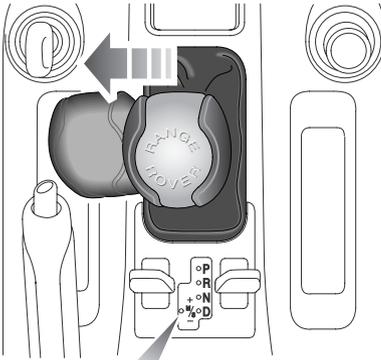
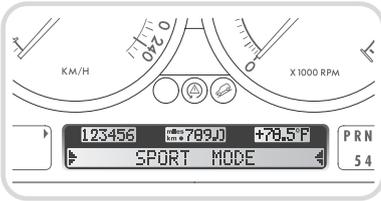
**'N' - Neutral:** Select neutral when the vehicle is stationary and the engine is required to idle for a brief period (at traffic lights, for example). In neutral, the transmission is not locked, so the parking brake must be applied whenever 'N' is selected.

Press the selector release button to move from neutral to reverse.

**'D' - Drive:** Select for all normal driving; full automatic gear changing occurs on all five forward gears, according to road speed and accelerator position.

# Automatic Transmission

## Sport mode



H4894

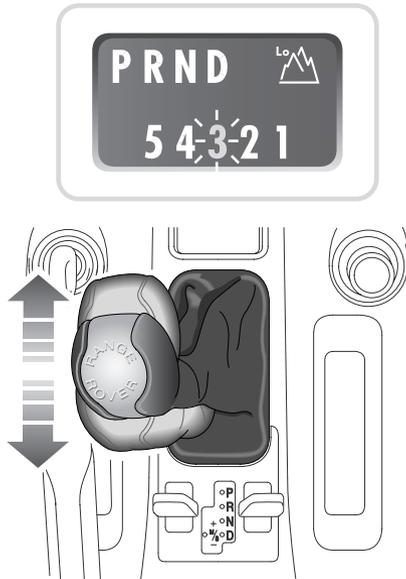
In Sport mode, full automatic progression through the gear ratios is retained. By selecting Sport mode, however, the power transmitted to the road wheels is increased by making lower gears more available. This results in improved mid-range performance, as the vehicle stays in the lower gears for longer. Sport mode also makes the lower gears more available for 'kick-down' operation.

To select Sport mode, move the gear lever sideways across the gate from the 'D' - Drive position towards the left hand side of the vehicle (see illustration). The word **SPORT** will appear in the transmission message centre (for approximately 6 seconds), the LED in the selector display to the rear of the selector lever (arrowed in inset) illuminates and 'SPORT MODE' is displayed in the main message centre for 6 seconds.

Sport mode can be deselected at any time, by returning the lever to the 'D' position.

# Automatic Transmission

## MANUAL CommandShift™ GEAR SELECTION



CommandShift gear selection can be used as an alternative to fully automatic transmission and is particularly effective when rapid acceleration or engine braking into corner and descents are required.

There are five 'gears', all of which are selected sequentially by a single forward or rearward movement of the gear selector lever, as follows:

1. With 'D' (Drive) selected, move the gear selector lever sideways from the 'D' position towards the left hand side of the vehicle (this is exactly the same as selecting Sport mode).
2. The transmission then automatically selects the ratio most appropriate to the vehicle's road speed and accelerator depression.

3. A single forward ('+') movement of the selector lever will change the transmission to a higher gear, while rearward ('-') movement of the lever will change down to a lower gear. Repeated forward or rearward movements of the lever can be made until the desired gear ratio has been selected. The selected gear will be indicated in the digital display in the instrument panel (see inset).
4. To deselect manual mode, simply move the selector lever sideways, back to the 'D' position. Automatic gear changing will then resume.

**Note:** In manual mode, 'kick-down' is still available for increased acceleration. See '**Kick-down**', 148, for more information.

### Using CommandShift in HIGH range

If manual mode is selected in HIGH range, 1st gear must be selected to move off from stationary, normal sequential gear changing can be utilised once the vehicle is moving.

### Using CommandShift in LOW range

If manual mode is selected in LOW range, the vehicle can move off from stationary in 1st, 2nd or 3rd gear - this is particularly useful to improve traction when driving off-road. See **Off-road Driving**, 179, for further details.

# Automatic Transmission

---

## USING AN AUTOMATIC GEARBOX

The following information is particularly important for drivers who are unfamiliar with the techniques required to drive vehicles with automatic transmission.

### Starting

The engine can only be started with the selector lever in the 'P' (Park) or 'N' (Neutral) positions.

- ALWAYS apply the parking brake and foot brake before starting the engine.
- KEEP THE BRAKES APPLIED while moving the selector lever into a drive position (the selector lever cannot be moved from the 'P' position unless the foot brake is applied).
- DO NOT 'rev' the engine or allow it to run above normal idle speed while selecting 'D' or 'R', or while the vehicle is stationary with any gear selected.
- ALWAYS keep the brakes applied until you are ready to move off - remember, once a drive gear has been selected, an automatic will tend to creep forward (or backward if reverse is selected).
- DO NOT allow the vehicle to remain stationary for any length of time with a drive gear selected and the engine running (always select 'N' if the engine is to idle for a prolonged period).

| IMPORTANT INFORMATION                            |
|--|
| This vehicle can NOT be 'push' or 'tow' started. |

### Driving in 'D' or Sport mode

When driving, the transmission will automatically adjust to the most appropriate gear ratio, according to accelerator position, vehicle speed and terrain (whether the vehicle is driving uphill, downhill or on the flat).

### Gear change speeds

With 'D' selected, the road speeds at which gear changes take place will vary according to the position of the accelerator pedal: minimum acceleration will result in gear changes at low road speeds, while larger throttle openings will cause the gearbox to delay gear changes until faster road speeds have been reached (thereby increasing the rate of acceleration). Depending on vehicle speed, moderate pressure of the accelerator pedal may result in a downshift in gear, further increasing the rate of acceleration.

With practice, gear changes can be made to occur at a wide range of road speeds depending on the accelerator position.

### 'Kick-down'

To provide rapid acceleration for overtaking, push the accelerator pedal to the full extent of its travel (this is known as 'kick-down'), a 'click' will be felt through the accelerator pedal. Up to a certain speed, this will cause an immediate downshift to the lowest appropriate gear, followed by rapid acceleration. Once the pedal is relaxed, normal gear change speeds will resume (dependent upon road speed and accelerator pedal position).

**Note:** *Moderate accelerator pressure may also result in a downshift in the transmission, depending on vehicle speed.*

# Automatic Transmission

---

## **'Kick-down' in manual 'CommandShift' mode:**

When in manual CommandShift mode, kick-down overrides the manual gear selection, to provide increased acceleration. The characteristics of kick-down operation differs according to the gear range selected (HIGH or LOW).

In HIGH range, with manual mode selected, kick-down will cause a downshift of at least two gears ('5' to '3', for example). When in LOW range, the downshift will only be one gear ('5' to '4', for example).

## **Parking**

After bringing the vehicle to a stop, ALWAYS apply the parking brake and select 'P', before releasing the foot brake and switching off the engine. The starter key can only be removed if 'P' is selected.

## **ELECTRONICALLY SELECTED AUTOMATIC MODES**

The transmission control system electronically selects different gear change modes, listed below, designed to suit a variety of driving conditions.

***Note:** The electronic modes described below cannot be selected by the driver and will not operate if 'Sport' mode is selected.*

### **Hill ascent, trailer and high altitude mode**

A suitable gear change pattern is selected which retains lower gears for longer, to counter momentum loss caused by more frequent gear changing, which can occur when climbing hills or when towing a trailer or caravan. This gear change pattern is also selected at high altitudes to combat reduced engine torque.

### **Hill descent mode**

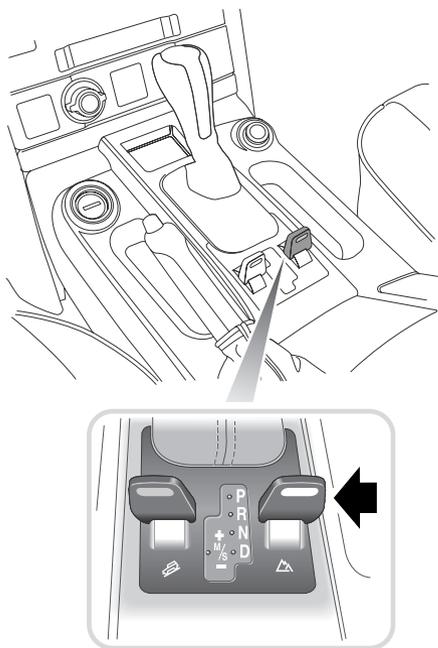
When in manual CommandShift mode, with the optimum gear for engine braking selected, the selector lever can then be moved across to the 'D' position. The transmission will retain the previously selected 'manual' gear until the descent is completed, then the transmission will automatically change to 'D'.

### **High coolant temperature mode**

In high ambient temperatures, during extreme load conditions, the transmission will select a gear change pattern designed to aid the cooling process, whilst enabling the gearbox to continue performing normally.

# Transfer Gearbox

## TRANSFER GEAR SWITCH



H4951

The second gearbox (known as the transfer box) is used to select either the high or low range of gears.

### High range ('H')

The high range ratio should be used for all normal road driving and also for off-road driving across dry, level terrain.

### Low range ('L')

Use the low range ratio **ONLY** in situations where low speed manoeuvring is necessary, such as reversing a trailer or negotiating a boulder strewn river bed; also use low range for more extreme off-road conditions where progress in high range cannot be maintained. **DO NOT** attempt to use the LOW range ratio for normal road driving.

## USING THE TRANSFER GEARBOX

Your vehicle is equipped with an electronically controlled transfer gearbox. There are two ways of operating the transfer gear switch; the stationary method - recommended for inexperienced drivers - and the 'on the move' method for experienced drivers.

**Caution: DO NOT attempt to use LOW range gears for normal road driving. Doing so will limit the vehicle's top speed and may damage drivetrain components.**

### Stationary method

With the vehicle stationary and the engine running, apply the foot brake and then move the automatic gearbox selector to the 'N' (neutral) position before moving the transfer gear switch (arrowed) fully rearwards. When the switch is released, it returns to the default position.

# Transfer Gearbox

---

## Changing from high to low on the move

With the vehicle slowing down and travelling NO FASTER THAN 32 km/h (10 mph), select 'N' (neutral) in the main gearbox, then move the transfer gear switch fully rearwards (the switch returns to the 'forward' position when released). The low range indicator light in the gear selector display flashes while the range change is occurring. When the range change is complete, the light illuminates constantly, a warning chime will sound and 'LOW RANGE' is displayed in the message centre for a few seconds. Now select 'D' (drive) or manual CommandShift mode. The transmission interlock prevents the engagement of a drive gear until the range change is complete.

**Note:** *If the vehicle speed is too great when a range change is requested, a warning chime sounds and 'SLOW DOWN' appears in the message centre.*

## Changing from low to high on the move

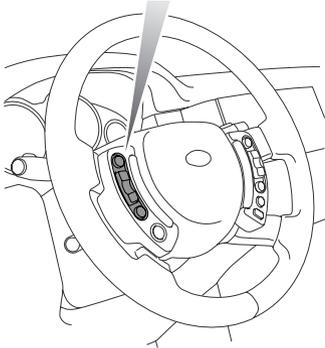
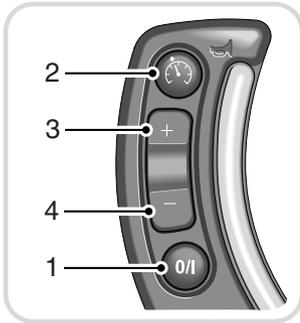
With the vehicle travelling NO FASTER THAN 48 km/h (30 mph), select 'N' (neutral) in the main gearbox, then move the transfer gear switch fully rearwards (the switch returns to the 'forward' position when released). The low range indicator light in the gear selector display flashes while the range change is occurring. When the range change is complete, the light extinguishes, a warning chime will sound, and 'HIGH RANGE' is displayed in the message centre for a few seconds. Now select 'D' (drive). The transmission interlock prevents the engagement of a drive gear until the range change is complete.

**Note:** *If the vehicle speed is too great when a range change is requested, a warning chime sounds and 'SLOW DOWN' appears in the message centre.*

**Note:** *If the vehicle is travelling at 3.2 km/h (2 mph) or less, then any change of ratio is to be carried out as if the vehicle is stationary (i.e. apply the foot brake and select 'N', before moving the transfer gear switch). This is necessary to prevent the interlock feature locking the selector lever in 'N'.*

# Cruise Control

## CRUISE CONTROL



H4084

Cruise control enables the driver to maintain a constant road speed without using the accelerator pedal. This is particularly useful for motorway cruising or for any journey where a constant speed can be maintained for a lengthy period.

The cruise control system has four switches:

1. Master switch (On/Suspend/Off).
2. Resume switch.
3. Accelerate set switch.
4. Decelerate switch.

## WARNING

**DO NOT** use cruise control on winding or slippery road surfaces, or in traffic conditions where a constant speed cannot be easily maintained

### Caution:

Always observe the following precautions:

**DO NOT** use cruise control when using reverse gear.

**DO NOT** use cruise control in off-road conditions such as rough tracks or on sand.

Use of Sport mode is not recommended when cruise control is selected.

**ALWAYS** switch off the master switch when you no longer intend to use cruise control.

**Note:** Cruise control is **NOT** available when the vehicle is being driven in LOW range gears.

### To operate

1. Press the master switch (warning light in the instrument panel illuminates).
2. Accelerate until the desired cruising speed is reached. This must be above the system's operational minimum speed of 32 km/h (20 mph).
3. Press the '+' switch (3) to set the vehicle speed in the system's memory. Cruise control will now maintain that road speed without the need for operation of the accelerator pedal.

With cruise control operating, speed can be increased by normal use of the accelerator e.g. for overtaking. When the accelerator is released, road speed will return to the selected cruising speed.

# Cruise Control

---

**To reduce the cruising speed:** Press and hold the '-' switch (4); the vehicle will decelerate. Release the switch as soon as the desired speed is reached. The vehicle speed at the point of switch release becomes the new set speed.

Alternatively, the set speed can be decreased incrementally by 'tapping' the '-' switch. Each press of the switch will decrease the speed by 1 km/h (0.6 mph).

**Note:** *Cruise control will not operate at speeds below 32 km/h (20 mph).*

**To increase the set cruising speed:** Press and hold the '+' switch (3); the vehicle will accelerate. Release the switch as soon as the desired speed is reached.

The vehicle speed at the point of switch release becomes the new set speed.

Alternatively, the set speed can be increased incrementally by 'tapping' the '+' switch. Each press of the switch will increase the speed by 1 km/h (0.62mph).

A further alternative is to increase speed by normal use of the accelerator. When the desired speed is reached, press the '+' switch (3) to set the cruise control.

## Suspending cruise control

Cruise control will suspend when the gear selector is moved into neutral, or when the brake pedal is pressed or if HDC or DSC becomes active. Cruise control can also be suspended by a single press of the master switch (1).

To resume cruise control at the previously set speed, press the resume switch (2).

## Switching off cruise control

To switch off cruise control, press the master switch (1) once to suspend cruise control and then press and hold the switch again until the warning light in the instrument panel extinguishes.

**Note:** *The set speed held in the cruise control memory will be erased when either the master switch (1) or the starter switch is turned off.*

# Brakes

---

## FOOT BRAKE

For your safety, the hydraulic braking system operates through dual circuits. If one circuit should fail, the other will continue to function. However, in the event of brake failure where only one circuit is operational, the vehicle should only be driven at slow speed to the nearest qualified dealer. In these circumstances, exercise extreme caution and be aware that increased brake pedal travel, greater pedal pressure, and longer stopping distances will be experienced.

## Power assistance

The braking system is power assisted, but ONLY when the engine is running. Without this assistance greater braking effort is necessary to safely control the vehicle, resulting in longer stopping distances. Always observe the following precautions:

- NEVER allow the vehicle to freewheel with the engine turned off.
- ALWAYS take particular care when being towed with the engine turned off.
- If the engine should stop for any reason while the vehicle is in motion, bring the vehicle to a halt as quickly as traffic conditions safely allow, and DO NOT pump the brake pedal as the braking system may lose any remaining assistance available.

## Wet conditions

Driving through water or even very heavy rain may adversely affect braking efficiency. Always dry the braking surfaces by intermittent light application of the brakes, first ensuring that you are at a safe distance from other road users.

## Brake pads

Brake pads require a period of bedding in. For the first 500 miles, you should avoid situations where heavy braking is required.

Remember! Regular servicing is vital to ensure that the brake pads are examined for wear and changed periodically to ensure long term safety and optimum performance.

**Caution: DO NOT rest your foot on the brake pedal while travelling as this may overheat the brakes, reduce their efficiency and cause excessive wear.**

## WARNING

**Never place a none-approved floor matting or any other obstructions under the brake pedal. This restricts pedal travel and braking efficiency.**

**NEVER move a vehicle without the engine running because braking assistance will not be available. The pedal brakes will still function, but more pressure will be required to operate them.**

**If the brake warning light should illuminate while the vehicle is in motion, bring the vehicle to a halt as quickly as traffic conditions and safety permit and seek qualified assistance before continuing. DO NOT pump the brake pedal - the braking system may lose any remaining power assistance available.**

---

# Brakes

---

## ANTI-LOCK BRAKES

### WARNING

**ABS cannot overcome the physical limitations of stopping the vehicle in too short a distance, cornering at too high a speed, or the danger of aquaplaning, i.e. where a layer of water prevents adequate contact between the tires and the road surface.**

**The fact that a vehicle is fitted with ABS must never tempt the driver into taking risks that could affect his/her safety or that of other road users. In all cases, it remains the driver's responsibility to drive within normal safety margins, having due consideration for prevailing weather and traffic conditions.**

**The driver should always take account of the surface to be travelled over and the fact that brake pedal reactions will be different to those experienced on a non-ABS vehicle.**

---

The purpose of the anti-lock braking system (ABS) is to allow efficient braking without wheel locking - thereby allowing the driver to retain steering control of the vehicle.

Under normal braking conditions, (where sufficient road surface friction exists to slow the vehicle without the wheels locking), ABS will not be activated. However, should the braking force exceed the available adhesion between the tires and the road surface, then ABS will automatically come into operation. This will be recognisable by a rapid pulsation felt through the brake pedal.

In normal road use, in an emergency situation, ABS functions most effectively when full braking effort is applied even when the road surface is slippery. The ABS system constantly monitors the speed of each wheel and varies the brake pressure to each, according to the grip.

No matter how hard you brake, you should be able to continue steering the vehicle as normal.

### WARNING

**DO NOT pump the brake pedal at any time; this will interrupt operation of the system and may increase the stopping distance.**

**NEVER place additional floor matting or any other obstruction under the brake pedal. This restricts pedal travel and may impair brake efficiency.**

---

***Note:** If the vehicle power supply has been interrupted, ABS will be de-activated. ABS can be reactivated by driving a short distance, or by turning the steering wheel from one limit position to the other while the vehicle is stationary and with the engine running. The ABS warning light will extinguish when the system is reactivated.*

### Warning light



A fault with the ABS system is indicated by illumination of the amber ABS warning light. If the light illuminates, drive with care, avoiding heavy brake applications and seek qualified assistance urgently. For further information on the functionality of the ABS warning light, see **Anti-lock braking system - AMBER, 83.**

# Brakes

---

## Off-road driving

While anti-lock braking is designed to operate equally effectively in 'off-road' driving conditions, on certain surfaces total reliance on the system may be unwise - remember, in normal circumstances, anti-lock braking operates only AFTER the wheels have started to slip. It cannot reliably compensate for driver error or inexperience on difficult off-road surfaces.

Note the following:

- On soft or deep surfaces such as powdery snow, sand or gravel, and on extremely rough ground, the braking distance required by the anti-lock braking system may be greater than for normal braking, even though improved steering would be experienced. This is because the natural action of locked wheels on soft surfaces is to build up a wedge of surface material in front which assists the wheels to stop.
- If the vehicle is stopped on a very steep slope where little traction is available, it may slide with the wheels locked because there is no wheel rotation to signal movement to the ABS. To counteract this, briefly release the brakes to permit some wheel movement, then re-apply the brakes to allow ABS to gain control.
- Before driving off-road read and thoroughly understand the '**Off-road driving**' section of this handbook. See **BEFORE YOU DRIVE, 179**.

## Cornering brake control (CBC)

Cornering brake control (CBC) is an advanced form of ABS, which maintains vehicle stability and steerability when braking whilst cornering or changing lanes at speed.

## Emergency brake assist (EBA)

If the brake pedal is depressed rapidly, EBA automatically boosts the braking force to a maximum and thus helps to stop the vehicle in the shortest possible distance, when a full brake application is made. Also, if the driver brakes more slowly, but with sufficient brake pressure to activate ABS on both front wheels, the system automatically increases the braking force so that all four wheels are in ABS control, optimising the performance of the ABS system.

Pressure should be maintained on the brake pedal during the entire brake application. If the brake pedal is released, EBA will cease operation.

A fault with the EBA system is indicated by illumination of the amber brake warning light. In the event of a fault, the system should be checked by a Land Rover Retailer at the earliest opportunity.

# Brakes

---

## Electronic brake force distribution (EBD)

Your vehicle is equipped with Electronic Brake Force Distribution (EBD), which balances the distribution of braking forces between front and rear axles, in order to maintain maximum braking efficiency under all vehicle loading conditions.

For example; under light loads EBD applies less effort to the rear brakes to maintain vehicle stability, conversely allowing full braking effort to the rear wheels when the vehicle is towing or is heavily laden.

A fault with the EBD system is indicated by illumination of the red brake warning light. If this illuminates while the vehicle is being driven, gently stop the vehicle as soon as safety permit and seek qualified assistance.

## PARKING BRAKE

To engage the parking brake, pull the lever up (the parking brake warning light illuminates).

To release, pull the lever up slightly, depress the button and lower the lever (the parking brake warning light extinguishes).

### **Always apply the parking brake fully whenever you park.**

When parking on a slope, do not rely on the parking brake alone to hold the vehicle, always select 'P' (park) for extra security.

Ensure the parking pawl of the gearbox has fully engaged by carefully releasing the foot brake and allowing the vehicle to 'rock' into 'P' (park). This is particularly important when LOW range is selected.

## WARNING

**In exceptional cases, if the parking brake has to be used to slow or stop the vehicle, do not pull the lever up too hard. Keep the button on the lever depressed the whole time.**

**Too violent an application of the parking brake could over-brake the rear wheels and cause the rear of the vehicle to skid.**

**DO NOT rely on the parking brake to operate effectively if the vehicle has been subjected to immersion in mud and water, see WADING, 189.**

---

*Note: The brake lamps do not illuminate when the parking brake is applied.*

## WARNING

**DO NOT apply the parking brake whilst the vehicle is in motion (except in an emergency), as this could result in a loss of control and damage to the transmission.**

---

# Dynamic Stability & Traction Control

## DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC)

### WARNING

**Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) is unable to compensate for driver misjudgement. It remains the driver's responsibility to adopt a suitable driving style in every driving situation. Risks should never be taken on account of the additional security afforded by the DSC system.**

DSC optimises dynamic stability, even in critical driving situations. The system controls dynamic stability when accelerating and when starting from a standstill. Additionally, it identifies unstable driving behaviour, such as understeer and oversteer and helps to keep the vehicle under control by manipulating the engine output and applying the brakes at individual wheels. Some noise may be generated when the brakes are applied. The system is ready to operate each time the engine is started.

### Warning light



The warning light illuminates as a bulb and system check when the starter switch is turned to position 'II' and should extinguish when the engine is running.

If the warning light flashes, the system is active, regulating engine output and brake forces.

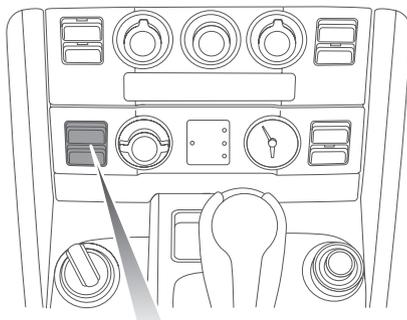
If the light fails to extinguish when the engine is started, or illuminates when driving, a fault in the system has been detected or DSC has been manually deselected. The vehicle can still be driven with care, but be aware that driving characteristics of the vehicle may change in adverse conditions.

### Suspending DSC operation

Land Rover recommend that DSC is operational in all normal driving conditions.

In some driving conditions, where forward traction should be maximised, it may be beneficial to deactivate DSC. Such conditions include:

- To 'rock' the vehicle out of a hollow or out of a soft surface.
- Starting in deep snow or on a loose surface.
- Driving in deep sand.
- Driving on tracks with deep longitudinal ruts.
- Driving through deep mud.



H5216

To deactivate DSC, press the DSC switch on the fascia (the DSC warning light will illuminate continuously). Deactivating DSC has no effect on traction control operation.

# Dynamic Stability & Traction Control

---

**Note:** *Driving with DSC deactivated, may add additional loads on the brakes - always drive with DSC switched on if possible*

## **Reactivating DSC**

To reactivate DSC, press the DSC switch on the fascia. DSC will automatically reactivate when the engine is started.

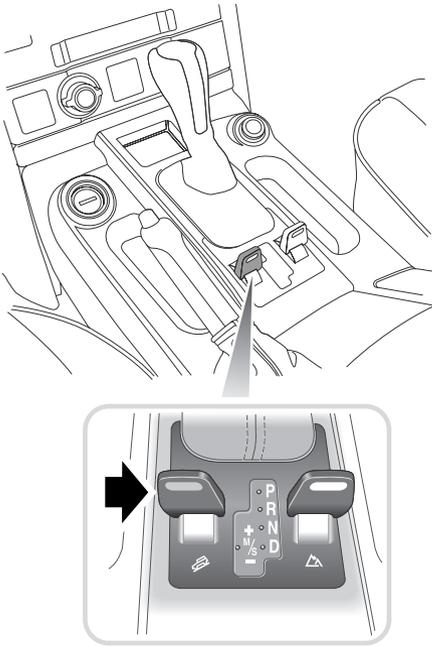
**Note:** *If the battery is discharged or has been disconnected, the DSC and ABS warning lights will illuminate constantly as a reminder that the system is not active. To reactivate the DSC system, either turn the steering wheel from lock to lock (with the engine running and the vehicle stationary), or drive the vehicle for a short distance around a curve. When the system is reactivated, the warning lights will extinguish and the system will be fully active.*

## **ELECTRONIC TRACTION CONTROL (ETC)**

ETC is continuously available to boost vehicle traction when one or more wheels has a tendency to spin, while the others have more grip. It operates in conjunction with the DSC system. If a wheel is spinning, ETC automatically brakes that wheel until it regains grip. This braking activity causes the engine power to be transferred to the remaining wheels. Some noise may be generated when the brakes are applied.

# Hill Descent Control

## HILL DESCENT CONTROL



H4949

Hill Descent Control (HDC) operates in conjunction with the anti-lock braking system to provide greater control in off-road situations particularly when descending severe gradients.

### To select HDC

HDC can be selected at any speed if LOW range is selected in the transfer gearbox, and can be selected at up to 33 km/h (21 mph) if the vehicle is in HIGH range. The HDC 'Information' warning light in the instrument pack will illuminate when HDC has been successfully selected.

Move the switch (arrowed) fully rearwards to select HDC.

If the vehicle speed is too high when an attempt to select HDC is made, 'NO HDC - SLOWDOWN' appears in the message centre and the HDC warning light will extinguish when the switch is released.

To deselect HDC, move the switch rearwards (the warning light will extinguish). If HDC is deselected when HDC is operating, the warning light will flash as the system 'fades out' - allowing the vehicle to gradually increase in speed.

When used in LOW range, HDC controls the vehicle speed more aggressively. Use LOW range gears when steep descents are to be attempted.

**Note:** If the vehicle speed exceeds 60 km/h (37 mph) when in HIGH range, HDC will be automatically deselected (warning light extinguishes). HDC is also automatically deselected if the vehicle ignition is switched off for more than 6 hours.

### Hill Descent Control in action

HDC can be used with the transmission in CommandShift mode, in 'R' (reverse) and 'D' (drive). When in 'D', the vehicle will automatically select the most appropriate gear.

During a descent, if engine braking is insufficient to control the vehicle speed, HDC (if selected) automatically operates the brakes to slow the vehicle and maintain a speed relative to the selected gear range and the accelerator pedal position.

When driving off-road, HDC can be permanently selected, to ensure that control is maintained. ABS and traction control are still fully operational and will assist if the need arises.

**Note:** With HDC selected, gear changes can be carried out in the normal way.

# Hill Descent Control

---

If the brake pedal is depressed when HDC is active, HDC is overridden and the brakes will perform as normal (a pulsation might be felt through the brake pedal). If the brake pedal is then released, HDC will recommence operating at a reduced speed.

In extreme circumstances, the HDC system may cause brake temperatures to exceed their pre-set limits. If this occurs, 'HDC TEMP. NOT AVAIL.' will be displayed in the message centre. HDC will then fade out (warning light flashes) and then become temporarily inactive. HDC will not be available until the brakes reach an acceptable temperature, at which time the warning message will disappear from the message centre and HDC will, if required, resume operating.

If a fault is detected in the HDC system, 'HDC INACTIVE' will appear in the display. Do not attempt a steep descent when HDC is unavailable. If a fault has been detected, consult your Retailer at the earliest opportunity.

## HDC fade-out

HDC fade-out gradually decreases the HDC brake intervention with the effect that the rate of hill descent will increase. If this occurs the HDC information light will flash for the period that HDC takes to fade. HDC will be disabled completely once the descent is complete.

If required (e.g. the angle of the descent levels out significantly), fade-out may be achieved deliberately by deselecting HDC while the system is operating.

If a fault with the HDC system is detected, or if the braking system exceeds a pre-set temperature due to extreme conditions, HDC will automatically fade out.

## Warning light



### HDC information light - GREEN

The light illuminates briefly as a bulb and system check when the starter switch is turned to position 'II' and also when HDC is selected.

If HDC is selected and the operating conditions are met, the light will illuminate continuously.

If the light flashes while HDC is active, normal functionality may cease and HDC 'fade out' may be induced.

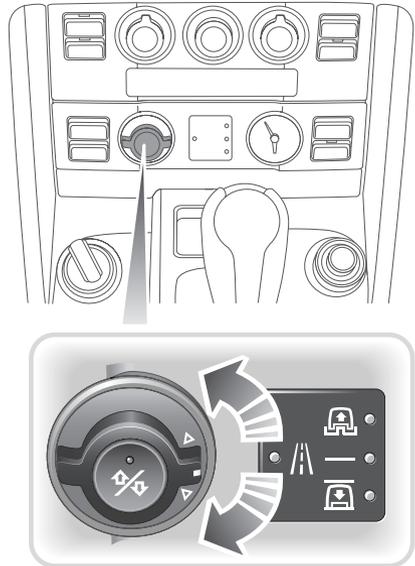
# Electronic Air Suspension

## ELECTRONIC AIR SUSPENSION (EAS)

When the engine is running, the EAS operates automatically on the vehicle to maintain a level or efficient vehicle height regardless of vehicle load.

If the height of the vehicle is reduced by additional loading (attachment of a trailer, for example), the system automatically increases air pressure to the springs to compensate for the additional weight or changed attitude of the vehicle. Similarly, if loads are removed and the vehicle height increases in consequence, the system will reduce air pressure to bring the vehicle back to a level position.

## MANUAL OPERATION



H3942

Your vehicle is fitted with an electronically controlled air suspension system (EAS) which provides four different ride height settings including an 'Access' mode. These settings increase or decrease the height and ground clearance of your vehicle to cope with different driving conditions. The four height settings are as follows:

- Off-road height.
- Standard height.
- Motorway height (not user selectable).
- Access height.

For a more detailed description of the different height settings, please refer to the relevant passages later in this section.

# Electronic Air Suspension

---

## Before operating EAS

Remember, even if a change of ride height is selected, it will NOT take place if any door is open.

**Note:** *Frequent changes between ride heights could cause the compressor to overheat. If this occurs, EAS will be fully operational again after a few minutes when the compressor has cooled.*

### 1. Ride height selector

Push the switch up or down to raise or lower the vehicle to the next ride height setting.

### 2. Ride height indicator panel

When the vehicle is at a particular ride height, the corresponding indicator light illuminates. If a new ride height is selected, the current indicator light remains illuminated and the indicator light for the new setting flashes, until the new height is reached (the original indicator light extinguishes). If the current ride height indicator light flashes when a new height is selected, the new ride height is invalid and the height change will not be performed.

### 3. Suspension inhibit switch

Press to select inhibit mode (not operational at Off-road height), the indicator light in the switch illuminates. This prevents automatic or manual changes between ride heights. Press again to cancel inhibit mode.

### Access height switch

Press to lower the vehicle to access height, for easier loading/unloading. See **ACCESS HEIGHT, 164**, for further information.

## MOTORWAY HEIGHT



At high speeds, the suspension is automatically lowered to motorway height to improve ride quality and vehicle handling at motorway speeds. The motorway height setting is approximately 20 mm (0.79 in) below the standard ride height setting.

The motorway height setting is activated automatically when the electronic air suspension system detects the vehicle being driven at more than 96.5 km/h (60 mph), for more than 30 seconds.

When the system detects that the vehicle speed has fallen below 65 km/h (40 mph) for more than one minute, the vehicle automatically rises to the standard height setting. If the vehicle comes to rest while still at motorway height, the vehicle will not rise unnecessarily.

If the inhibit button is pressed while in motorway height, the vehicle will not automatically rise to standard height when the vehicle speed falls. Motorway height will be maintained until the inhibit switch is pressed for a second time, when normal automatic height adjustment is resumed.

Motorway height selection is fully automatic and cannot be selected manually by the driver.

From motorway height, the driver can manually select standard height, by rotating the ride height selector up. If the vehicle is travelling at less than 24 km/h (15 mph) the vehicle can be lowered to access height by rotating the ride height selector down.

# Electronic Air Suspension

## OFF-ROAD HEIGHT



At low speeds, the vehicle height can be raised to increase ground clearance for when driving

off-road.

### WARNING

**DO NOT select off-road height while driving on the road, or when the suspension has been lowered below standard ride height - any sudden or unexpected change to the vehicle's height or attitude could cause an inexperienced driver to lose control, or disturb the load/weight distribution within the vehicle.**

**DO NOT attempt to select off-road height while towing.**

To select off-road height, ensure the vehicle is travelling at less than 48 km/h (30 mph) and then rotate the ride height selector clockwise. The vehicle will be raised to 50 mm (1.97 in) above the standard ride height and the appropriate light on the ride height indicator panel will illuminate.

**Note:** The front axle will be raised 10 mm (0.39 in) higher than the rear axle.

The vehicle will stay at off-road height until either standard ride height is selected using the ride height selector, or the vehicle speed exceeds 48 km/h (30 mph).

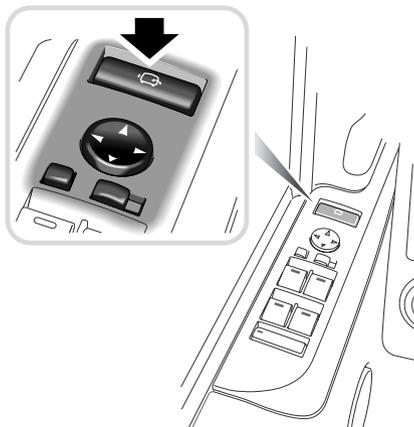
If the vehicle speed is too high when off-road height is selected, the standard ride height indicator will flash to indicate that the request has not been performed. Reduce the vehicle speed to below 48 km/h (30 mph) and then select off-road height.

**Note:** Off-road height can NOT be selected if the inhibit switch is on and the inhibit function can not be selected while at off-road height.

## ACCESS HEIGHT



Access height lowers the vehicle to 40 mm (1.57 in) below standard ride height and improves accessibility (for passengers and luggage).



H4000

Access height can be selected when in any ride height, by either pushing the ride height selector down when in standard or motorway ride height, or by pressing the access height switch on the driver's door switch panel (arrowed above).

Access height can be selected when the vehicle is travelling at less than 80 km/h (50 mph). The access height indicator light will start flashing, but EAS will not start to lower the vehicle to access height until the vehicle speed drops to below 24 km/h (15 mph). If the vehicle does not come to a rest within 65 seconds after the access height preselect was requested, or the vehicle speed rises above 80 km/h (50 mph), the access request is cancelled and the indicator light stops flashing. Access will need to be reselected if required.

# Electronic Air Suspension

---

**Note:** *If the vehicle speed increases to more than 32 km/h (20 mph), when the vehicle is at access height, the EAS will automatically reselect standard ride height.*

If the vehicle is travelling at above 80 km/h (50 mph) when access preselect is requested, the standard ride height indicator light flashes to indicate that the request has not been performed.

Access mode should only be selected whilst the vehicle is moving. In extreme circumstances, if it is necessary to select access height whilst the vehicle is stationary, 'N' (neutral) should be selected and the parking brake applied. Note that some noise from the suspension may be heard, accompanied by vibrations.

## **Crawl mode**

If it is necessary to manoeuvre the vehicle in an area where height is restricted, Crawl mode should be selected as follows:

- Select access height and if the vehicle is still moving, stop so that access height is achieved.
- Press the inhibit switch.

**Note:** *If the inhibit switch is pressed before the vehicle starts lowering to access height (i.e. before the vehicle speed drops below 24 km/h or 15 mph), the access request is cancelled and the vehicle will return to standard height.*

The vehicle is now in crawl mode and all manual and automatic height changes are inhibited, provided the vehicle does not exceed 40 km/h (25 mph).

If the vehicle speed exceeds 32 km/h (20 mph), a message appears in the message centre (accompanied by a warning chime) warning the driver to keep the vehicle speed low.

---

## **WARNING**

**If vehicle speed exceeds 40 km/h (25 mph) when in crawl mode, the mode is cancelled and the vehicle will raise to standard ride height. If the vehicle is still in an area of restricted height, this could seriously damage and trap the vehicle.**

---

## **TOWING A TRAILER**

When the electrical plug for a trailer attachment is connected to the vehicle socket, the EAS controller acts as though the inhibit button is activated. The only height change which is accepted is a return to standard height, if the vehicle is not already at standard height. The standard height indicator light and the inhibit light are illuminated. Once standard height is reached, no other ride height change will be available.

---

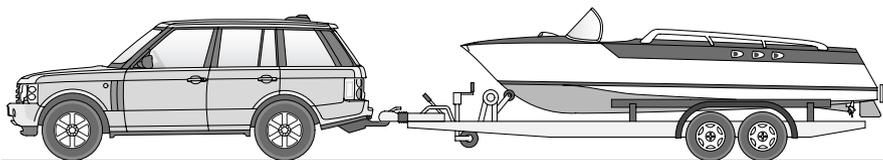
## **WARNING**

**If the vehicle is at any ride height other than standard height, when a trailer is fitted, trailer weight distribution and balance may be affected when the vehicle returns to standard height.**

---

# Towing

---



H5271

## TOWING

The torque ranges of Land Rover engines allow maximum-weight loads to be pulled smoothly from standstill, and reduce gear changing on hills or rough terrain. A smoother start can be achieved with trailers over 2000 kg (4400 lb) by moving off in low range then changing to high range while on the move.

It is the driver's responsibility to ensure that the towing vehicle and trailer/caravan are loaded and balanced so that the combination is stable when in motion. When preparing your vehicle for towing, pay attention to any instructions provided by the trailer/caravan manufacturer as well as to the information that follows.

## WARNING

**To preserve the vehicle's handling and stability, only fit towing accessories designed and approved by Land Rover.**

**The trailer tongue weight, plus the combined weight of the vehicle's load-carrying area and passengers, must never exceed the specified maximum rear axle load or the gross vehicle weight rating.**

**DO NOT exceed the gross vehicle weight, or axle loads stated on the certification label attached to the vehicle. See TOWING WEIGHTS, 282. Exceeding allowable vehicle and axle loads will increase the risk of tire or suspension failure, increase vehicle brake stopping distance, and adversely affect vehicle handling and stability which may result in a crash or rollover.**

**DO NOT exceed manufacturers specifications for the towing equipment or the trailer/caravan.**

**DO NOT use lashing eyes or vehicle recovery towing eyes to tow a trailer or caravan serious damage to the vehicle may result.**

---

# Towing

## Balancing the combination

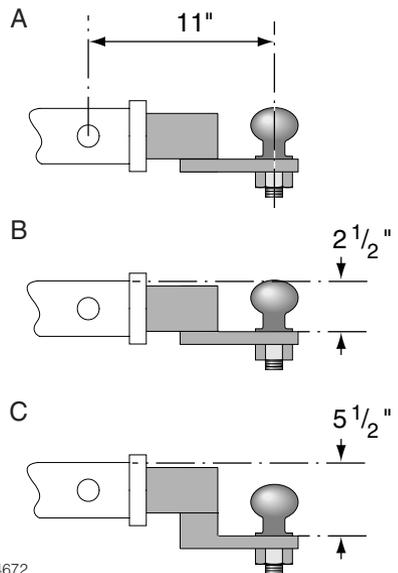
To ensure optimum stability, it is essential that the trailer adopts a level aspect. In other words, the trailer must be level with the ground, with the towing hitch and trailer drawbar set at the same height (note the illustration at the top of the page). This is particularly important when towing twin axle trailers! Adjust the height of the hitch point if necessary.

- The trailer should be level with the ground when loaded
- The height of the draw bar hitch point should be set so that the trailer is level when connected to the loaded vehicle.

## Trailer hitch

**Note:** *The trailer hitch receiver is rated as a Class III. When selecting a drawbar for the receiver, the following dimensions must be adhered to:*

- A. The hitch length must not exceed 11 in. (280 mm) measured from the connecting pin of the receiver.
- B. The drop height must not be less than 2.5 in. (63 mm), measured from the top of the receiver.
- C. The drop height must not be more than 5.5 in. (140 mm), measured from the top of the receiver.



H4672

# Towing

---

## Towing guidelines

When preparing your vehicle for towing, pay careful attention to the trailer manufacturer's recommendations and observe the following guidelines:

- Ensure that the towing vehicle tire pressures are correct and that the trailer tire pressures are as recommended by the trailer manufacturer.
- Within the limits quoted, choose a draw bar that allows for a level attitude of the trailer and vehicle.
- Check the operation of trailer brakes and lamps.
- For maximum stability, ensure that loads are properly secured and unable to shift position during transit. Also, position loads so that most of the weight is placed close to the floor and, where possible, immediately above or close to the trailer axle(s).
- After loading the trailer, check that the weight on the hitch point (this is called the tongue weight, or nose weight), is in accordance with both the trailer manufacturer's recommendations, and the requirements in this Handbook.
- When calculating the laden weight of the trailer, remember to include the weight of the trailer PLUS THE LOAD.
- Where the load weight can be divided between trailer and tow vehicle, loading more weight into the vehicle will generally improve the stability of the combination.

**Note:** *It is the driver's responsibility to ensure that all regulations with regard to towing are complied with according to the state in which the vehicle is being operated. All relevant information should be obtained from an appropriate motoring organization or towing equipment Retailer.*

**Note:** *When towing trailers, always consult and obey local speed regulations. Speed should be reduced to compensate for increased stopping distances.*

## Gear range selection

To avoid overheating the gearbox, it is not advisable to tow heavy trailer loads at speeds of less than 20 mph (32 km/h) using the main gearbox in high range. Select low range instead.

## Trailer socket

When the engine is running, power output from the trailer socket must NOT exceed 5 amps. If it is required to exceed 5 amps, consult your Land Rover Retailer.

## Vehicle weights

When loading a vehicle to its maximum (gross vehicle weight), take account of the unladen vehicle weight and load distribution to ensure that axle loadings do not exceed the permitted maximum values.

It is your responsibility to limit the vehicle load in such a way that neither the maximum axle loads nor the gross vehicle weight are exceeded.

## WARNING

**In the interest of safety, maximum trailer weight and tongue weights must not be exceeded, see TOWING WEIGHTS, 282.**

---

# Towing

## ESSENTIAL TOWING CHECKS

|                 |   |
|-----------------|---|
| Tire pressures: | Increase rear pressures of towing vehicle by at least 3 lbf/in <sup>2</sup> (21 kPa) up to maximum of 44 lbf/in <sup>2</sup> (302 kPa). Ensure trailer/caravan tires are at recommended pressures.  |
| Loading:        | Keep trailer loads securely anchored, evenly distributed and as low as possible with heavy loads over the axle. Towing vehicle maximum axle weights and gross vehicle weight must not be exceeded.  |
| Tongue weight:  | If the vehicle is loaded to the Gross Vehicle Weight (GVW), the tongue weight is limited to 330 lb (150 kg). If a greater tongue weight is necessary (up to 550 lb (250 kg) maximum), vehicle loading should be adjusted to ensure the GVW and rear axle weights are not exceeded - see <b>TOWING WEIGHTS, 282</b> for further information. |
| Hitch height:   | Must be set so that caravan/trailer is level when connected to the tow vehicle with engine running.   |

### WARNING

**The tongue weight plus the combined weight of the vehicle's load-carrying area and rear seat passengers must never exceed the specified maximum rear axle load, see TOWING WEIGHTS, 282.**

### WARNING

**DO NOT exceed the gross weight or axle loads stated on the certification label attached to the vehicle. Exceeding allowable vehicle and axle loads will increase the risk of tire or suspension failure, increase vehicle brake stopping distance, and adversely affect vehicle handling and stability which may result in a crash or rollover.**

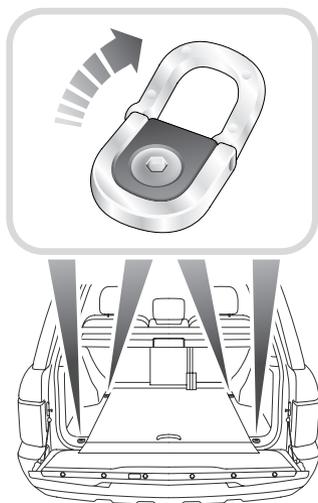
### IMPORTANT INFORMATION

For all of the towing conditions described, it is important that the following points are observed:

- All loads in the vehicle should be distributed as far forward as possible.
- The maximum Gross Vehicle Weight must not be exceeded, see **TOWING WEIGHTS, 282**.
- The maximum individual axle weights must not be exceeded, see **TOWING WEIGHTS, 282**.
- Changes between high and low range should not be made while the vehicle is on the move.
- Total trailer weight and tongue load can be measured with platform scales found at highway weighing stations, building supply companies, etc.

# Load Carrying

## LUGGAGE ANCHOR POINTS



H4185

Four fixing points are provided in the rear luggage compartment floor, to assist in safely securing large items of luggage. Land Rover provide a range of approved luggage retention accessories.

### WARNING

**DO NOT** carry unsecured equipment, tools or luggage which could move and cause personal injury in the event of an accident or emergency manoeuvre either on or off-road.

## ROOF RACKS

A range of roof rack systems is available as Land Rover approved accessories. For further information about roof rack systems approved for use with your vehicle and advice as to which system would suit your requirements best, please consult your Land Rover Retailer.

### WARNING

The **MAXIMUM** load for approved roof rack systems is **100 kg (220 lb)** for normal road use and **50 kg (110 lb)** off-road. The above weights include the mass of the roof rack system.

Only fit roof racks that have been designed for your vehicle. If in doubt, consult your dealer.

A loaded roof rack can reduce the stability of the vehicle, particularly when cornering and encountering cross winds.

All loads should be evenly distributed, side to side, with any weight bias towards the front of the roof rack system.

Ensure all loads are secured within the periphery of the roof rack system.

Check to ensure the roof rack and load are secure after 30 miles of any journey.

Driving off-road with a loaded roof rack is not recommended. If it is necessary to stow luggage on the roof rack while driving off-road, all loads must be removed before traversing side slopes.

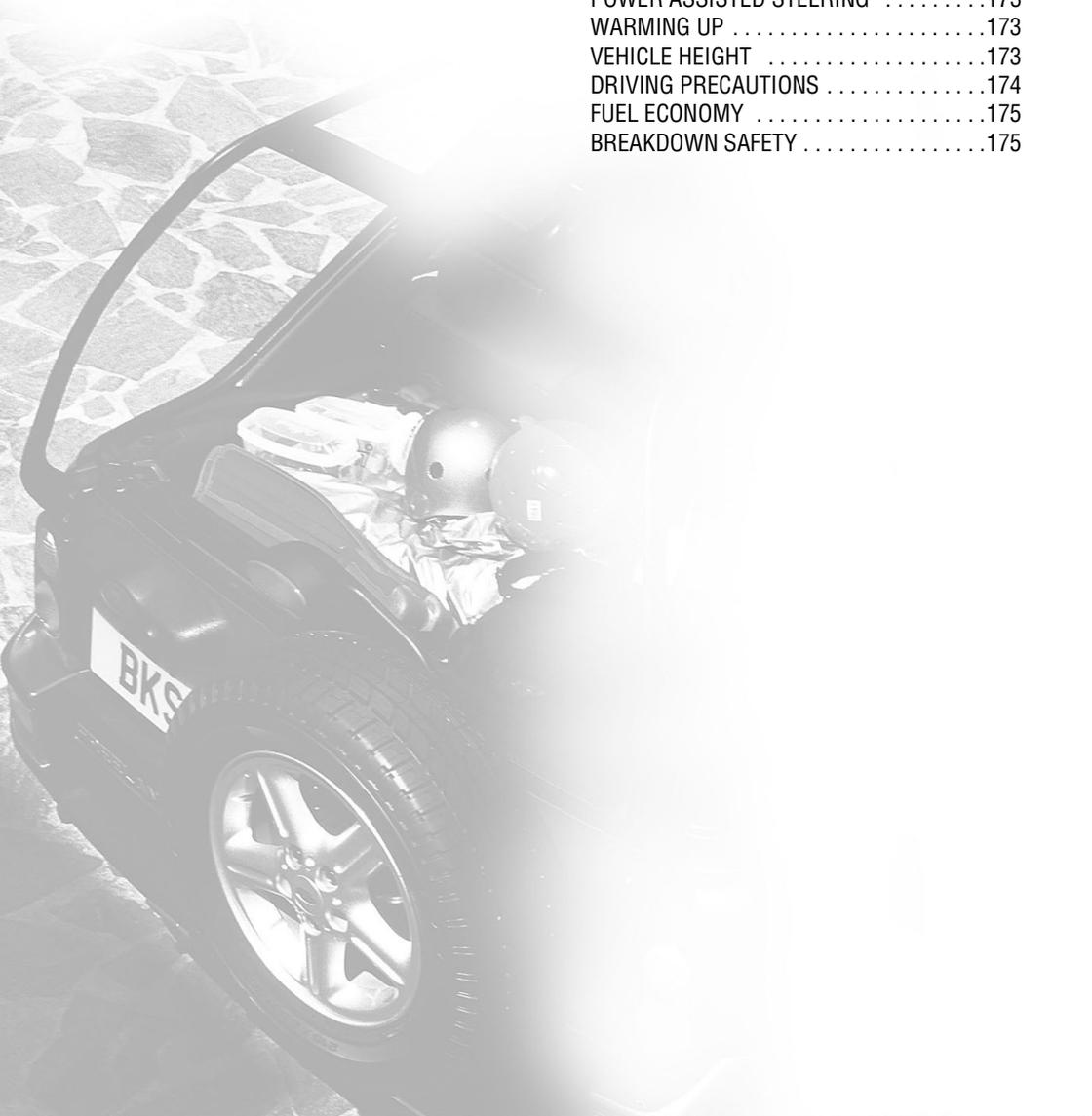
To avoid the risk of personal injury or death, **DO NOT** permit children or any other person to travel on the roof rack (or access ladder whilst the vehicle is in motion).

# On-road Driving

---

## On-Road Driving

|                                   |     |
|-----------------------------------|-----|
| INSTRUMENTS AND WARNING LIGHTS .. | 173 |
| POWER ASSISTED STEERING .....     | 173 |
| WARMING UP .....                  | 173 |
| VEHICLE HEIGHT .....              | 173 |
| DRIVING PRECAUTIONS .....         | 174 |
| FUEL ECONOMY .....                | 175 |
| BREAKDOWN SAFETY .....            | 175 |





# On-Road Driving

---

## INSTRUMENTS AND WARNING LIGHTS

Before driving it is important to fully understand the function of the instruments and warning lights, see **INSTRUMENT PANEL, 71**.

**Note:** *Red warning lights are of particular importance, illumination indicating that a fault exists. If a red light illuminates, always stop the vehicle and seek qualified assistance before continuing.*

## POWER ASSISTED STEERING

**Note:** *Power assistance is dependent on the engine running. If the engine is not running, a much greater effort will be required to steer the vehicle.*

## WARMING UP

In the interests of fuel economy, it is advisable to drive the vehicle straight away, remembering that harsh acceleration or labouring the engine before the normal operating temperature has been reached can damage the engine.

When the engine is cold, engine idle speeds will be faster than normal. Under these circumstances, use the foot brake to control the vehicle until the engine is warm and running at normal speed, and be aware of the need to take additional care when manoeuvring the vehicle.

## VEHICLE HEIGHT

**Caution:** **The overall height of your vehicle exceeds that of ordinary passenger cars. Always be aware of the height of your vehicle and check the available headroom before driving through low entrances. This is particularly important if the vehicle is fitted with a roof rack or if a sunroof is open.**

# On-Road Driving

---

## DRIVING PRECAUTIONS

### WARNING

Utility vehicles have a significantly higher roll-over rate than other types of vehicles. Since these vehicles are designed to be operated off-road, these vehicles have a higher ground clearance and hence a higher center of gravity. Such a feature has been associated with an increased risk of vehicle roll-over. An advantage associated with higher ground clearance vehicles is a better view of the road, allowing the driver to anticipate problems. Another factor shown to significantly increase roll-over risk is unauthorized vehicle modifications such as fitting incorrect specification tires (see **WHEELS AND TIRES, 278**), oversize tires, body lifting, incorrect springs/dampers, incorrect vehicle loading/trailer towing.

However, on-road crash data also indicates that driver behaviour is a greater factor than a high center of gravity in determining a vehicle's overall roll-over rate. The single most effective driver behaviour that can reduce the risk of injury or death in all crashes including roll-over, is to **ALWAYS WEAR YOUR SEAT BELT** and to properly restrain all child passengers in the rear seat in an appropriate child safety seat. In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a seat belt.

---

Other measures that can reduce the risk of injury and death from vehicle crashes and roll-over are:

- Limit speed. Posted speed limits should never be exceeded, and you should always drive below these limits whenever traffic, weather, road or other conditions dictate. Always use your common sense and good judgement.
- Take curves at reasonable speeds, avoiding unnecessary braking.
- Drive defensively. Be aware of traffic, road and weather conditions. Avoid risk taking behaviour such as following too close, rapid lane changing or abrupt manoeuvres.
- Assume that pedestrians or other drivers are going to make mistakes. Anticipate what they might do. Be ready for their mistakes.
- Avoid distractions such as cellular phone calling, reading, eating, drinking or reaching for items on the floor.
- Before changing lanes, check your mirrors and flash your turn signal lamps.
- Always leave room for unexpected events such as sudden braking.
- Never operate your vehicle when you have consumed alcohol, are sleepy or fatigued or have taken any medications that affect judgement, reflexes or alertness.
- Many vehicle rollovers occur when a driver attempts to bring a vehicle back onto the road after some or all of the wheels drift onto the shoulder of the road, especially when the shoulder is unpaved. If you find yourself in such a situation, do not initiate any sharp or abrupt steering and/or braking manoeuvres to re-enter the roadway. Instead, let the vehicle slow down as much as safely possible before attempting to re-enter the roadway and keep your wheels as straight as possible while re-entering the roadway.

# On-Road Driving

## FUEL ECONOMY

Fuel consumption is influenced by two major factors:

- How your vehicle is maintained.
- How you drive your vehicle.

To obtain optimum fuel economy, it is essential that your vehicle is maintained in accordance with the manufacturer's service schedule.

Items such as the condition of the air cleaner element, tire pressures and wheel alignment will have a significant effect on fuel consumption. But, above all, the way in which you drive is most important. The following hints may help you to obtain better value from your motoring:

- Avoid unnecessary, short, start-stop journeys.
- Avoid fast starts by accelerating gently and smoothly from rest.
- Do not drive in the lower gears for longer than necessary.
- Decelerate gently and avoid sudden and heavy braking.
- Anticipate obstructions and adjust your speed accordingly well in advance.
- When stationary in traffic, select neutral to improve fuel economy and air conditioning performance.

## BREAKDOWN SAFETY

### IMPORTANT INFORMATION

#### **Remember the breakdown safety code**

If a breakdown occurs while travelling:

- Wherever possible, consistent with road safety and traffic conditions, the vehicle should be moved off the main thoroughfare, preferably onto the shoulder as far as possible. If a breakdown occurs on a motorway, pull well over to the inside of the hard shoulder.
- Switch on hazard lamps.
- If possible, position a warning triangle or a flashing amber lamp at an appropriate distance from the vehicle to warn other traffic of the breakdown, (note the legal requirements of some countries).
- Consider evacuating passengers through the doors facing away from traffic, to a safe area away from the vehicle, as a precaution in case your Range Rover is accidentally struck by another vehicle.



# Off-road Driving

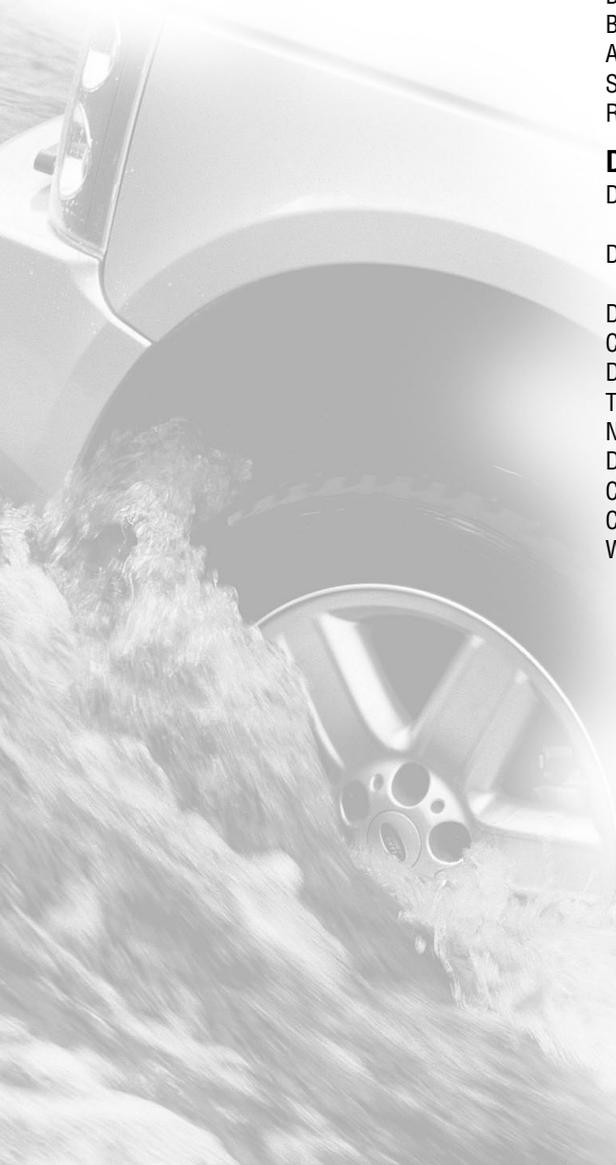
---

## Off-road Driving

|                                    |     |
|------------------------------------|-----|
| BEFORE YOU DRIVE .....             | 179 |
| BASIC OFF-ROAD TECHNIQUES .....    | 180 |
| AFTER DRIVING OFF-ROAD .....       | 182 |
| SERVICING REQUIREMENTS .....       | 182 |
| REMOVING THE FRONT BIB SPOILER ... | 183 |

## Driving Techniques

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| DRIVING ON SOFT SURFACES<br>& DRY SAND .....                      | 184 |
| DRIVING ON SLIPPERY SURFACES<br>(ice, snow, mud, wet grass) ..... | 184 |
| DRIVING ON ROUGH TRACKS .....                                     | 184 |
| CLIMBING STEEP SLOPES .....                                       | 185 |
| DESCENDING STEEP SLOPES .....                                     | 186 |
| TRAVERSING A SLOPE .....  | 187 |
| NEGOTIATING A 'V' SHAPED GULLY ...                                | 187 |
| DRIVING IN EXISTING WHEEL TRACKS ..                               | 187 |
| CROSSING A RIDGE .....  | 188 |
| CROSSING A DITCH .....  | 188 |
| WADING .....  | 189 |





# Off-road Driving

---

## BEFORE YOU DRIVE

Before venturing off-road, it is **absolutely essential** that inexperienced drivers become fully familiar with the vehicle's controls, in particular the transfer gear switch and Hill Descent Control (HDC), and also study the off-road driving techniques described on this and the following pages.

### WARNING

**Off-road driving can be hazardous!**

- **DO NOT take unnecessary risks and be prepared for emergencies at all times.**
  - **Your Range Rover has a higher ground clearance and hence a higher center of gravity than an ordinary passenger car. An abrupt maneuver at an inappropriate speed or on an unstable surface could cause the vehicle to go out of control or rollover.**
  - **Familiarize yourself with the recommended driving techniques in order to reduce risks to yourself, your vehicle AND your passengers.**
  - **Always ensure that seat belts are worn for personal protection while driving on-road or off-road.**
  - **DO NOT drive off-road alone or without letting someone know where you are going and when you plan to return.**
- 

### IMPORTANT INFORMATION

- **DO NOT drive if the fuel level is low - undulating ground and steep inclines could cause fuel starvation to the engine and consequent damage to the catalytic converter.**
- **DO NOT stop the engine while driving through water (wading) - water ingress to the exhaust tailpipe could result in severe damage to the catalytic converter.**
- **As a precaution against accidental loss, remove the towing eye cover and the front spoiler before driving off-road (see **TOWING EYES, 248**).**
- **To prevent damage, and improve departure angles, remove and stow any towing equipment fitted to the vehicle.**

# Off-road Driving

---

## **BASIC OFF-ROAD TECHNIQUES**

These basic driving techniques are an introduction to the art of off-road driving and do not necessarily provide the information needed to successfully cope with every single off-road situation, including off-road recovery techniques.

We strongly recommend that owners who intend to drive off-road frequently, should seek as much additional information and practical experience as possible.

Before driving off-road it is important that you check the condition of the wheels and tires and that the tire pressures are correct. Worn or incorrectly inflated tires will adversely affect the performance, stability and safety of the vehicle.

### **Survey the ground before driving**

Before negotiating difficult terrain, it is wise to carry out a preliminary survey on foot. This will minimise the risk of your vehicle getting into difficulty through a previously unnoticed hazard.

### **Gear selection**

With the main selector lever set at 'D', the gearbox automatically provides the correct gear for the appropriate gear range selected (HIGH or LOW). For greater vehicle control through gear selection, manual CommandShift mode is recommended.

HIGH range gears should be used whenever possible - only change to LOW range when ground conditions become very difficult.

### **Accelerating**

Use the accelerator with care - any sudden surge of power may induce wheel spin and, therefore, invoke unnecessary operation of traction control, or in extreme conditions could lead to loss of control of the vehicle.

### **Braking**

As far as possible, vehicle speed should be controlled through correct gear selection and the use of Hill Descent Control (HDC). Application of the brake pedal should be kept to a minimum. In fact, if the correct gear and HDC have been selected, braking will be largely unnecessary.

If the brake pedal is depressed when HDC is active, HDC is overridden and the brakes will perform as normal. If the brake pedal is then released, HDC will recommence operating, at reduced speed.

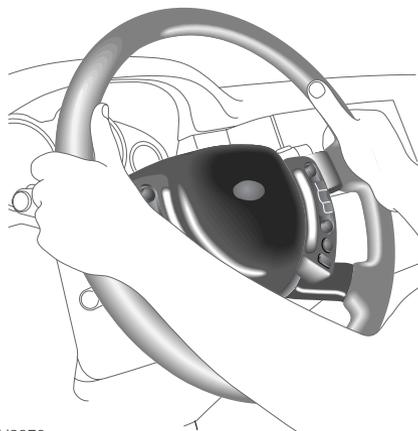
### **Use of engine for braking**

Before descending steep slopes, stop the vehicle at least its length before the descent, engage LOW range and then select HDC. Use of manual CommandShift™ gear selection to limit the transmission to lower gears will also increase engine braking. Select '1' or '2' LOW range, depending on the severity of the descent.

While descending a slope (either forwards or in 'R' - reverse) it should be remembered that HDC and the engine will provide sufficient braking effort to control the rate of descent, and that the brakes should not be applied.

# Off-road Driving

## Steering



H3876

### WARNING

**DO NOT hold the steering wheel with your thumbs inside the rim - a sudden 'Kick' of the wheel as the vehicle negotiates a rut or boulder could seriously injure them. ALWAYS grip the wheel on the outside of the rim (as shown) when traversing uneven ground.**

## Ground clearance

Don't forget to allow for ground clearance beneath the vehicle suspension components and under the front and rear bumpers. Note also that there are other parts of the vehicle which may come into contact with the ground - take care not to ground the vehicle.

Ground clearance is particularly important at the bottom of steep slopes, or where wheel ruts are unusually deep and where sudden changes in the slope of the ground are experienced.

ALWAYS attempt to avoid obstacles that may foul the vehicle.

## Electronic air suspension

Select 'Off-road height' to increase approach/ departure angles and ground clearance, see **ELECTRONIC AIR SUSPENSION (EAS), 162.**

## Loss of traction

If the vehicle is immobilised due to loss of wheel grip, the following hints could be of value:

- Remove obstacles rather than forcing the vehicle to cross them.
- Clear clogged tire treads.
- Reverse as far as possible, then attempt an increased speed approach - additional momentum may overcome the obstacle.
- Brushwood, sacking or any similar material placed in front of the tires may improve tire grip.

## CD Autochanger

Playing CDs while negotiating arduous off-road terrain is not recommended. Severe jolting of the vehicle may disturb the operation of the autochanger, causing the disc to 'jump' or 'skip'.

# Off-road Driving

---

## AFTER DRIVING OFF-ROAD

### WARNING

Before rejoining the public highway, or driving at speeds above 40 km/h (25 mph), consideration should be given to the following:

- **Wheels and tires must be cleaned of mud and inspected for damage - ensure that there are no lumps or bulges in the tires or exposure of the ply or cord structure.**
- **If wheels and tires are not cleaned properly, damage to the wheels, tires, braking system and suspension components could occur.**
- **Brake discs and callipers should be examined and any stones or grit that may affect braking efficiency removed.**
- **The underside of the vehicle should be checked for damage, especially the suspension air springs and dampers.**
- **Any damage to paint or protective coatings, should be rectified by a Land Rover Retailer as soon as possible.**

If you have any doubt whether the vehicle has been damaged, have the vehicle inspected by a Land Rover Retailer.

---

## SERVICING REQUIREMENTS

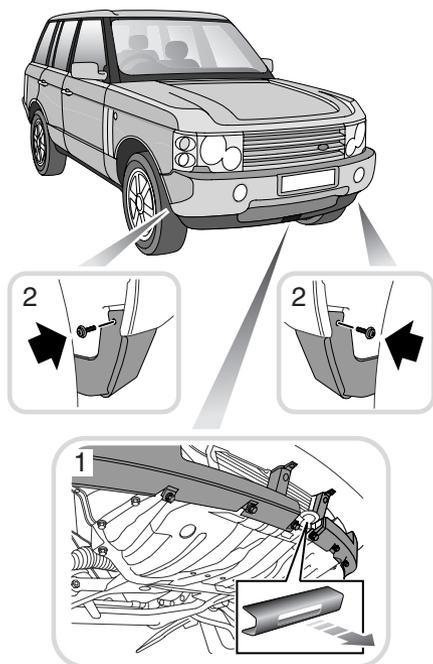
Vehicles operated in arduous conditions, particularly on dusty, muddy or wet terrain, and vehicles undergoing frequent or deep wading conditions will require more frequent servicing. See **OWNER MAINTENANCE, 193** and contact a Land Rover Retailer for advice.

After wading in salt water or driving on sandy beaches, use a hose to wash the underbody components and any exposed body panels with fresh water. This will help to protect the vehicle's cosmetic appearance.

# Off-road Driving

## REMOVING THE FRONT BIB SPOILER

To prevent the spoiler from being damaged it is possible to remove the front bib spoiler from the vehicle.

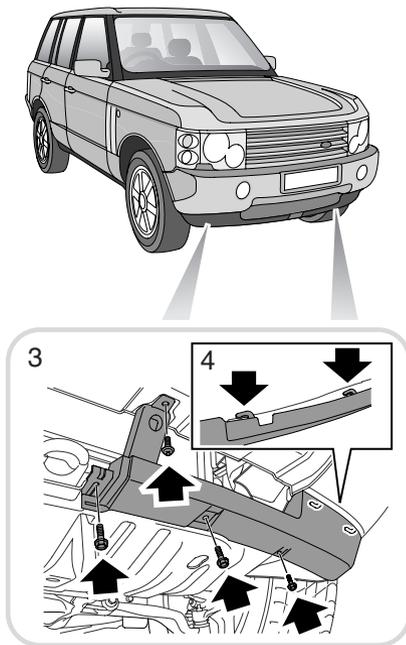


H4218

1. Remove the towing eye cover - see **TOWING EYES, 248**.
2. From inside the wheel arch, remove the bolt/washer securing the spoiler to the wheel arch liner. Repeat for the other side of the vehicle. Keep the bolts and washers in a safe place.
3. On one half of the spoiler, remove the three bolt/washers and one screw/washer securing the spoiler to the bumper. Keep the bolts, screw and washers in a safe place.

4. Slide the half-spoiler outwards towards the side of the vehicle and remove.

Repeat items 3 and 4 for the other half of the spoiler.



H4219

Refitting the spoiler is the reverse of the removal procedure.

### WARNING

**Ensure that the spoiler halves and the towing eye cover are securely stowed in the vehicle, so they do not become projectiles in the event of an accident or emergency maneuver.**

# Driving Techniques

---

## **DRIVING ON SOFT SURFACES & DRY SAND**

The ideal technique for driving on soft surfaces (dry sand for example) requires the vehicle to be kept moving at all times - soft sand causes excessive drag on the wheels resulting in a rapid loss of motion once driving momentum is lost.

Deactivate DSC (see **DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC), 158**), then select 'D' (drive) and REMAIN in that gear until a firm surface is reached. It is generally advisable to use LOW range, as this will enable you to accelerate through worsening conditions without the risk of being unable to restart.

### **Stopping the vehicle on soft ground, in sand or on an incline**

If you do stop the vehicle, remember:

- Starting on an incline or in soft ground or sand may be difficult. Always park on a firm level area, or with the vehicle facing downhill.
- To avoid wheel spin, select 'D' (drive) and use the MINIMUM throttle necessary to get the vehicle moving.
- If forward motion is lost, avoid excessive use of the throttle - this may dig the vehicle into the sand. Clear sand from around the tires and ensure that the vehicle underside is not bearing on the sand before again attempting to move.
- If the wheels have sunk, use an air bag lifting device or high lift jack to raise the vehicle, and then build up sand under the tires so that the vehicle is again on level ground. If a restart is still not possible, place sand mats or ladders beneath the tires.

## **DRIVING ON SLIPPERY SURFACES (ice, snow, mud, wet grass)**

- Select 'D' (drive) in LOW range.
- Drive away using the MINIMUM throttle possible.
- Drive slowly at all times, keeping braking to a minimum and avoiding violent movements of the steering wheel.

## **DRIVING ON ROUGH TRACKS**

Although rough tracks can sometimes be negotiated in normal drive, on very rough tracks, engage LOW range to enable a steady, low speed to be maintained without constant use of the brake pedal.

# Driving Techniques

---

## CLIMBING STEEP SLOPES

ALWAYS follow the fall line of the slope - travelling diagonally could encourage the vehicle to slide broadside down the slope.

Steep climbs will usually require the LOW gear range and selecting '3' or '4' using CommandShift™ selection is recommended.

It is advisable to engage HDC, in case there is a need to reverse down the slope to avoid an obstacle. If the surface is loose or slippery, use sufficient speed in the highest practical gear to take advantage of your vehicle's momentum and disable DSC. However, too high a speed over a bumpy surface may result in a wheel lifting, causing the vehicle to lose stability. In this case try a slower approach. Traction can also be improved by easing off the accelerator just before loss of forward motion.

If the vehicle is unable to complete a climb, do not attempt to turn it around while on the slope. Instead, adopt the following procedure to reverse downhill to the foot of the slope.

1. Hold the vehicle stationary using both foot and parking brakes.
2. Restart the engine if necessary.
3. Engage 'N' (neutral) and engage LOW range, then select 'R' (reverse).
4. Select Hill Descent Control (HDC).
5. Release the parking brake. Then fully release the foot brake and allow the vehicle to reverse down the slope using engine braking and HDC to control the rate of descent.
6. Unless it is necessary to stop the vehicle to negotiate obstructions, DO NOT apply the brake during the descent - even a light application may cause the front wheels to lock, rendering the steering ineffective.

7. If the vehicle begins to slide, accelerate slightly to allow the tires to regain grip.

When the vehicle is back on level ground and safety permits, a faster approach will probably enable the hill to be climbed. However, DO NOT take unnecessary risks, if the hill is too difficult to climb, find an alternative route.

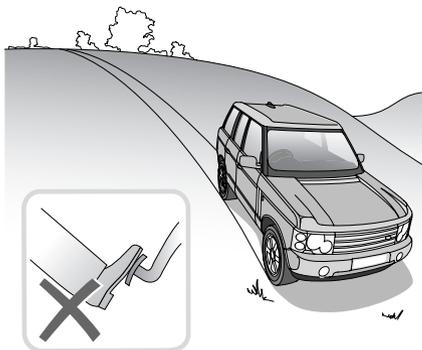
### WARNING

**DO NOT attempt to reverse down a slope without the engine running and ensure that 'R' (reverse) is selected. Otherwise, HDC and the braking effect of the gearbox will be lost.**

---

# Driving Techniques

## DESCENDING STEEP SLOPES



H5278

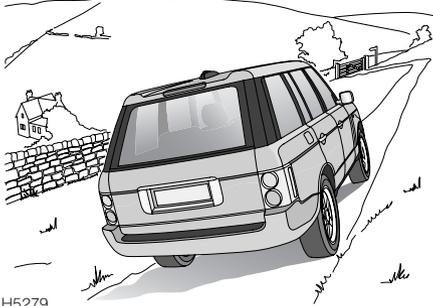
### WARNING

**Failure to follow these instructions may cause the vehicle to roll over.**

- Select Hill Descent Control (HDC).
  - Unless it is necessary to stop the vehicle in order to negotiate obstructions, **DO NOT** touch the brake pedal during the descent - the engine and HDC will limit the speed, keeping the vehicle under perfect control provided the front wheels are rotating.
  - If the vehicle begins to slide, the limits of adhesion have been reached, and it may be impossible to maintain the minimum speed relative to the gear selected. In this case, HDC may automatically accelerate the vehicle sufficiently to maintain directional stability. **DO NOT** use the accelerator or the brakes or attempt to change gear. HDC will automatically slow the vehicle down again as soon as possible.
  - Once the descent has been started, 'D' can be selected in the main gearbox. HDC will continue to operate and the previously selected manual 'gear' will be retained until the descent is complete.
  - Once level ground is reached, the transmission will automatically select 'D' for the next stage of your journey.
- Slow the vehicle and select LOW range.
  - With the transmission in manual CommandShift™ mode, change down the gears to select either '1' or '2', depending on the severity of the slope, before bringing the vehicle to a stop at least vehicle length before the start of the slope.

# Driving Techniques

## TRAVERSING A SLOPE



H5279

### WARNING

**Failure to follow these instructions may cause the vehicle to roll over.**

Before crossing a slope ALWAYS observe the following precautions:

- Check that the ground is firm and not slippery.
- Check that the wheels on the downhill side of the vehicle are not likely to drop into depressions in the ground and that the 'uphill' wheels will not run over rocks, tree roots, or similar obstacles that could suddenly increase the angle of tilt.
- Ensure that passenger weight is evenly distributed, that all roof rack luggage is removed and that all other luggage is properly secured and stowed as low as possible. Always remember; any sudden movement of the load could cause the vehicle to overturn.
- Rear seat passengers should sit on the uphill side of the vehicle or, in extreme conditions, should vacate the vehicle until the sloping ground has been safely negotiated.

## NEGOTIATING A 'V' SHAPED GULLY

Observe extreme caution! Steering up either of the gully walls could cause the side of the vehicle to be trapped against the opposite gully wall.

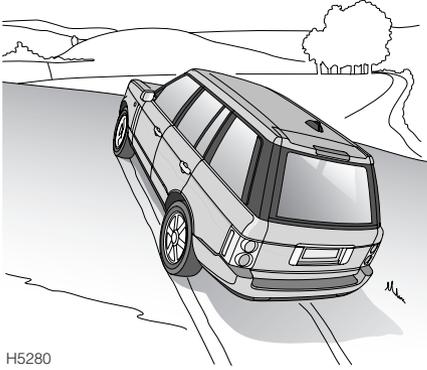
## DRIVING IN EXISTING WHEEL TRACKS

As far as possible allow the vehicle to steer itself along the bottom of the ruts and always keep a light hold of the steering wheel to prevent it from spinning free. Deactivation of DSC may help in deep ruts.

Particularly in wet conditions, if the steering wheel is allowed to spin free, the vehicle may appear to be driving straight ahead in the ruts, but in actual fact (due to the lack of traction caused by the wet ground) is unknowingly on full right or left lock. Then, when level ground is reached, or if a dry patch of ground is encountered, the wheels will find traction and cause the vehicle to suddenly veer to left or right.

# Driving Techniques

## CROSSING A RIDGE



H5280

Approach at right angles so that both front wheels cross the ridge together - an angled approach could cause stability to be lost through diagonally opposite wheels lifting from the ground at the same time.

## CROSSING A DITCH



H3858

Cross ditches at an angle so that three wheels always maintain contact with the ground. If a ditch is approached head on, both front wheels will drop into the ditch together, possibly resulting in the chassis and front bumper being trapped on opposite sides of the ditch. If the severity of terrain makes this inevitable, selecting 'Off-road' height with the EAS to increase clearance between the ground and the bottom of the vehicle may help.

# Driving Techniques

## WADING



H3859

**Caution: The maximum advisable wading depth is 0.5 m (20 in). Wading at a depth greater than the maximum advisable wading depth regularly, is not recommended.**

**Severe electrical damage may occur if the vehicle remains stationary for any length of time when the water level is above the door sills.**

**Severe damage to the catalytic converter could occur if the engine is stopped for any length of time when the water level is above the exhaust tail pipe.**

Before wading, ensure the electronic air suspension is set to off-road height.

If the water is likely to exceed 0.5 m (20 in), the following precautions should be observed:

- Fix a plastic sheet in front of the radiator grille to prevent water from soaking the engine and mud from blocking the radiator.
- Remove the CD autochanger.
- Ensure that the silt bed beneath the water is free of obstacles and firm enough to support the vehicle's weight and provide sufficient traction.
- Ensure that the engine air intake (located on the front fenders) is clear of the water level.

- Drive slowly into the water and accelerate to a speed which causes a bow wave to form; then maintain that speed.

At all times, keep all the doors fully closed.

**Note:** *If deep wading is to be carried out regularly, contact your Land Rover Retailer for advice.*

### After wading

- Drive the vehicle a short distance and apply the foot brake to check that the brakes are fully effective.
- DO NOT rely on the parking brake to hold the vehicle stationary until the brakes have thoroughly dried out; in the meantime, leave the vehicle parked in 'P'.
- Remove any protective covering from in front of the radiator grille.
- If the water was particularly muddy, remove any blockages (mud and leaves) from the condenser and radiator to reduce the risk of overheating.
- If deep water is regularly negotiated, check all oils for signs of water contamination - contaminated oil can be identified through its 'milky' appearance. In addition, check the air filter element for water ingress and replace if wet - consult a Land Rover Retailer if necessary.
- If salt water is frequently negotiated, thoroughly wash the underbody components and exposed body panels with fresh water.

**Note:** *Vehicles required to undergo frequent or deep wading conditions will require more frequent servicing. Contact a Land Rover Retailer for advice.*



# Maintenance

---

## Maintenance

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| ROUTINE MAINTENANCE .....                            | 193 |
| OWNER MAINTENANCE .....                              | 193 |
| SAFETY IN THE GARAGE .....                           | 194 |
| EMISSION CONTROL .....                               | 195 |
| ROAD TESTING DYNAMOMETERS<br>(‘rolling roads’) ..... | 195 |
| PREPARATION FOR WINTER .....                         | 195 |

## Hood Opening

|                    |     |
|--------------------|-----|
| HOOD OPENING ..... | 196 |
|--------------------|-----|

## Engine Compartment

|                                 |     |
|---------------------------------|-----|
| FLUID RESERVOIR LOCATIONS ..... | 197 |
|---------------------------------|-----|

## Engine Oil

|                      |     |
|----------------------|-----|
| CHECK TOP-UP .....   | 198 |
| DRAIN & REFILL ..... | 200 |

## Air Cleaner

|                       |     |
|-----------------------|-----|
| ELEMENT RENEWAL ..... | 203 |
|-----------------------|-----|

## Spark Plugs

|                                 |     |
|---------------------------------|-----|
| SPARK PLUG REMOVE & REFIT ..... | 204 |
|---------------------------------|-----|

## Cooling System

|                                |     |
|--------------------------------|-----|
| COOLANT CHECK AND TOP-UP ..... | 207 |
| ANTI-FREEZE .....              | 208 |

## Brakes

|                   |     |
|-------------------|-----|
| BRAKE FLUID ..... | 209 |
|-------------------|-----|

## Power Steering

|                            |     |
|----------------------------|-----|
| POWER STEERING FLUID ..... | 210 |
|----------------------------|-----|

## Washers

|                                |     |
|--------------------------------|-----|
| WINDSHIELD WASHER TOP-UP ..... | 211 |
| WASHER JETS .....              | 212 |
| HEADLAMP WASHERS .....         | 212 |



# Maintenance

---

## Wiper Blades

WIPER BLADE REPLACEMENT ..... 213

## Battery

BATTERY SAFETY ..... 214

BATTERY MAINTENANCE ..... 214

## Tires

CARING FOR YOUR TIRES ..... 216

UNIFORM TIRE QUALITY GRADING .... 218

SNOW CHAINS ..... 220

TIRE MARKINGS ..... 221

TIRE INFORMATION LABELS ..... 223

TIRE GLOSSARY ..... 226

## Cleaning & Vehicle Care

WASHING YOUR VEHICLE ..... 227

CLEANING THE INTERIOR ..... 229

## Identification Numbers

VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION

NUMBER (VIN) ..... 230

## Parts & Accessories

PARTS AND ACCESSORIES ..... 231

# Maintenance

---

## ROUTINE MAINTENANCE

Regular systematic maintenance is the key to ensuring the continued reliability and efficiency of your vehicle.

Maintenance is the owner's responsibility and you must ensure that owner maintenance operations, oil services, inspections and brake fluid and coolant changes are carried out when required and according to the manufacturer's recommendations.

The routine maintenance requirements for your vehicle are shown in the Passport to Service book. Most of this necessary workshop maintenance requires specialised knowledge and equipment, and should preferably be entrusted to a Land Rover Retailer.

### Passport to Service

The Passport to Service book includes a Service Record section, which enables a record to be kept of all the oil services and inspections that are carried out on the vehicle. This section of the book also provides a facility for the Land Rover Retailer to record brake fluid changes.

Ensure your Land Rover Retailer signs and stamps the book after each oil service and inspection.

### Brake fluid/component replacement

Brake fluid must be completely renewed every 3 years, regardless of distance travelled.

### Coolant replacement

The engine coolant (anti-freeze and water solution) needs to be replaced every 4 years, regardless of distance travelled. Your Land Rover Retailer will replace the coolant at the scheduled oil service.

## OWNER MAINTENANCE

In addition to the routine services and inspections referred to previously, a number of simple checks must be carried out more frequently. You can carry out these checks yourself and advice is given on the pages that follow.

**Any significant or sudden drop in fluid levels, or uneven tire wear, should be reported to a Land Rover Retailer without delay.**

### Daily checks

- Operation of lamps, horn, direction indicators, wipers, washers and warning lights.
- Operation of seat belts and brakes.
- Look for fluid deposits underneath the vehicle that might indicate a leak. Condensation drips from Air Conditioning is normal.

### Weekly checks

- Engine oil level.

**Note:** *The engine oil level should be checked more frequently if the vehicle is driven for prolonged periods at high speeds.*

- Brake fluid level.
- Power steering fluid level.
- Screen washer fluid level.
- Tire pressures and condition.
- Operate air conditioning.

All fluid specifications and capacities are shown in **LUBRICANTS AND FLUIDS, 273**.

## WARNING

**If the brake pedal is unusually long or if there is any significant loss of brake fluid, contact your Retailer immediately. Driving under such conditions could result in extended stopping distances or complete brake failure.**

---

# Maintenance

## Driving in arduous conditions

### IMPORTANT INFORMATION

#### Special operation conditions

When a vehicle is operated in extremely arduous conditions, more frequent attention must be paid to servicing requirements.

For example: if your vehicle experiences deep wading conditions, even DAILY servicing could be necessary to ensure the continued safe and reliable operation of the vehicle.

Arduous driving conditions include:

- Repeated short distance driving (e.g. up to 10km (6 miles), stop-start driving or idling for long periods.
- Driving in dusty and/or sandy conditions.
- Driving on rough and/or muddy roads and/or wading.
- Driving in extremely hot conditions.
- Towing a trailer or driving in mountainous conditions.

Contact a Land Rover Retailer for advice.

## SAFETY IN THE GARAGE

### WARNING

Under no circumstances should any part of the fuel system be dismantled or replaced by anyone other than a suitably qualified motor vehicle technician. Failure to comply with this instruction may result in fuel spillage with a consequent serious risk of fire.

### WARNING

Cooling fans may continue to operate after the engine is switched off. When the engine is hot, the cooling fans may also COMMENCE operating after the engine is switched off and continue operating for up to 10 minutes. To avoid injury, Keep clear of all fans and remove any loose clothing while working in the engine compartment.

Whenever you need to carry out maintenance, observe the following safety precautions at all times:

- Keep your hands and clothing away from drive belts and pulleys.
- If the vehicle has been driven recently, DO NOT TOUCH exhaust and cooling system components until the engine has cooled.
- DO NOT TOUCH electrical leads or components while the engine is running, or with the starter switch turned on.
- NEVER leave the engine running in an unventilated area - exhaust gases are poisonous and extremely dangerous.
- DO NOT work beneath the vehicle with the wheel changing jack as the only means of support.
- Ensure sparks and naked lights are kept away from the engine compartment.
- Wear protective clothing, including, where practicable, gloves made from an impervious material.
- Remove metal wrist bands and jewellery before working in the engine compartment.
- DO NOT allow tools or metal parts of the vehicle to make contact with the battery leads or terminals.

# Maintenance

---

## Poisonous fluids

Fluids used in motor vehicles are poisonous and should not be consumed or brought into contact with open wounds. These include; battery acid, anti-freeze, brake and power steering fluid, gasoline, diesel, engine oil and windshield washer additives.

For your own safety, ALWAYS read and obey all instructions printed on labels and containers.

## Used engine oil

Prolonged contact with engine oil may cause serious skin disorders, including dermatitis and cancer of the skin. ALWAYS wash thoroughly after contact.



*It is illegal to pollute drains, water courses or soil. Use authorised waste disposal sites to dispose of used oil and toxic chemicals.*

## EMISSION CONTROL

Your vehicle is fitted with various items of emission and evaporative control equipment designed to meet specific territorial requirements. You should be aware that unauthorised replacement, modification or tampering with this equipment by an owner or repair shop may be unlawful and subject to legal penalties.

In addition, engine settings must not be tampered with. These have been established to ensure that your vehicle complies with stringent exhaust emission regulations. Incorrect engine settings may adversely affect exhaust emissions, engine performance and fuel consumption, as well as causing high temperatures, which will result in damage to the catalytic converter and the vehicle.

**Note:** *While Land Rover North America Inc. maintains that an authorised Land Rover Retailer is best equipped to carry out repairs and maintenance on the emission control system, such work may be carried out by any competent automotive repair shop or individual using certified parts.*

## ROAD TESTING DYNAMOMETERS ('rolling roads')

Because your vehicle is equipped with anti-lock brakes and permanent four-wheel drive, it is essential that any dynamometer testing is carried out ONLY by a qualified person familiar with the dynamometer testing and safety procedures and ONLY on a four-wheel drive dynamometer. Contact your Land Rover Retailer for further information.

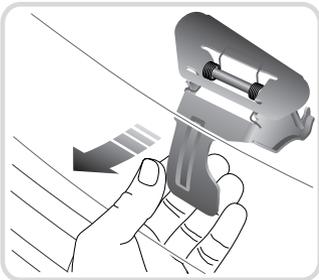
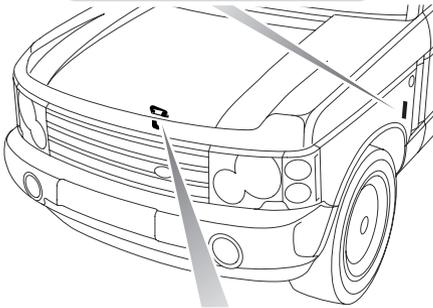
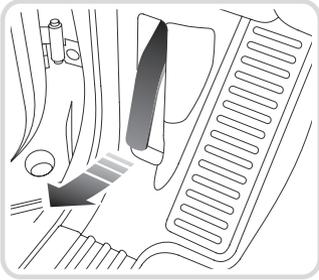
## PREPARATION FOR WINTER

Before the onset of winter, to prevent the door seals from freezing closed, apply Land Rover silicone spray to the flocked seals across the tops of the doors.

This action will need to be repeated at the start of each winter to maintain protection.

# Hood Opening

## HOOD OPENING



H3987

1. From inside the vehicle on the driver's side, pull the hood release handle (see upper inset).
2. Lift the hood safety catch lever (lower inset) and raise the hood.

## Closing the hood

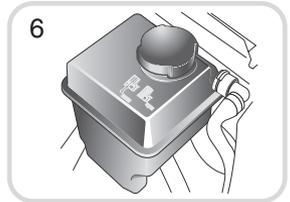
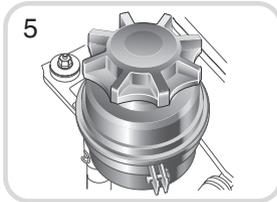
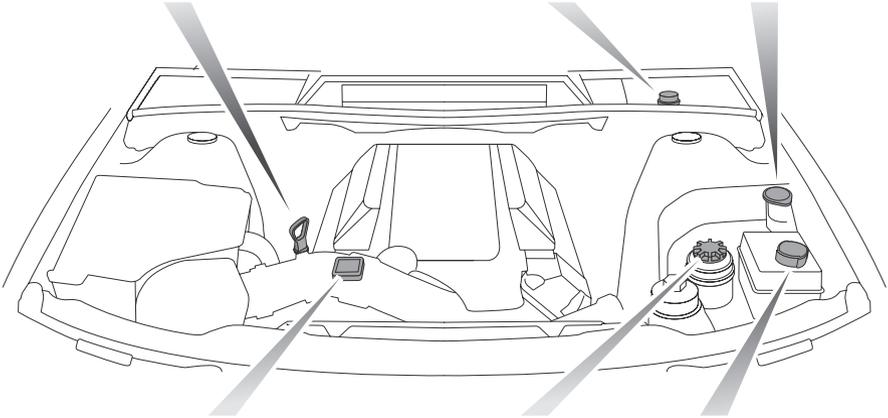
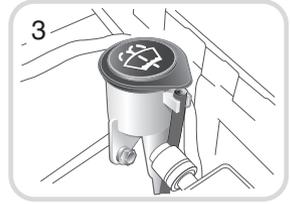
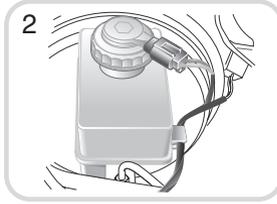
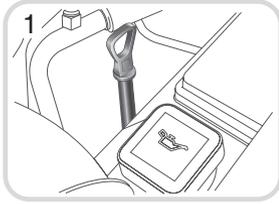
### WARNING

**DO NOT** drive with the hood retained by the safety catch alone.

After closing the hood, check that the lock is fully engaged by attempting to lift the front edge of the hood. This should be free from all movement.

# Engine Compartment

## FLUID RESERVOIR LOCATIONS



H3905

1. Engine oil dipstick.
2. Brake fluid reservoir.
3. Washer reservoir.
4. Engine oil filler cap.
5. Power steering reservoir.
6. Cooling system reservoir.

### WARNING

To avoid serious injury or death while working in the engine compartment, ALWAYS observe the safety precautions listed under SAFETY IN THE GARAGE, 194.

# Engine Oil

---

## CHECK TOP-UP

### WARNING

**Take care to avoid spilling engine oil onto a hot engine - a fire may result!**

---

The oil consumption of your engine is influenced by many factors: new engines reach the normal value only after approximately 5000 km (3000 miles).

Under high loads your engine will also consume more oil.

Check the oil level at least every 400 km (250 miles), when the engine is COLD and with the vehicle resting on level ground.

**Note:** *If it is necessary to check the oil level when the engine is hot, switch off the engine and let the vehicle stand for five minutes to allow the oil to drain back into the sump. DO NOT start the engine.*

As a general guide, if the level on the dipstick:

- is nearer to the upper mark than the lower, add no oil.
- is nearer to the lower mark than the upper, add 0.5 litre (0.132 gallons/1.05 pints) of oil.
- is below the lower mark, add 1 litre (0.264 gallons/2.11 pints) of oil and re-check the level after a further five minutes.

**Caution: Driving the vehicle with the engine oil level above the upper mark, or below the lower mark on the dipstick, can damage the engine.**

## Oil specification

It is essential to use an oil suitable for the climatic conditions in which the vehicle is to be operated. Precise specifications are shown in **LUBRICANTS AND FLUIDS, 273**. If in doubt, contact your Land Rover Retailer.

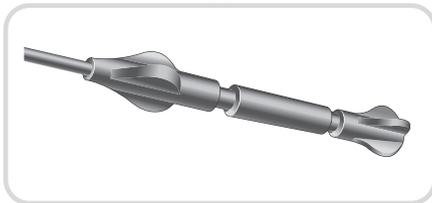
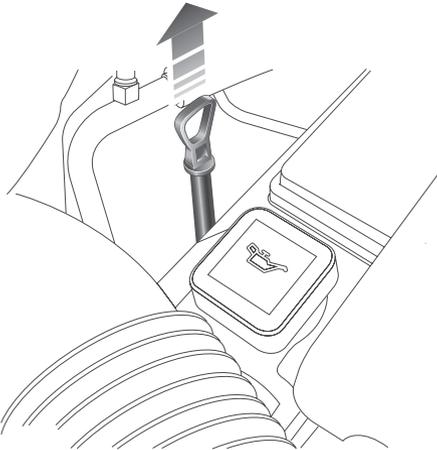
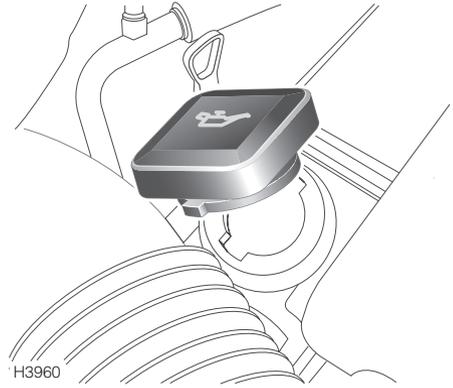
# Engine Oil

## Topping-up

1. Withdraw the dipstick and wipe the blade clean.
2. Fully re-insert the dipstick and withdraw again to check the level, which should NEVER be allowed to fall below the lower mark on the dipstick.
3. To top-up, unscrew the oil filler cap and add oil to maintain the level between the UPPER and LOWER marks on the dipstick.

**DO NOT OVERFILL!** Clean up any oil spillage incurred when topping-up.

4. Check the oil level again.



H3961

# Engine Oil

## DRAIN & REFILL

Ensure that the engine oil is changed at the recommended service intervals as specified in the Passport to Service book.

**Note:** Under severe operating conditions (i.e. regular use in muddy terrain or dusty conditions), the engine oil must be changed more frequently, even to the extent of a daily change. Consult your Land Rover Retailer for guidance.

## Used engine oil

### WARNING

**Prolonged contact with used engine oil can cause serious skin disorders, including dermatitis and cancer of the skin. Wear protective clothing if possible and ALWAYS wash thoroughly after contact.**

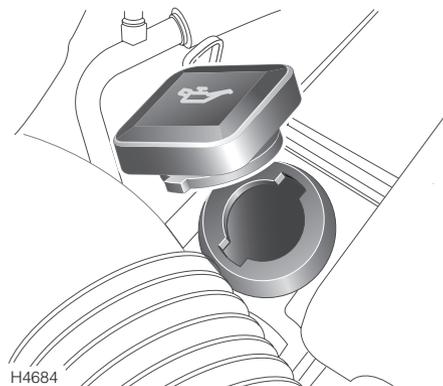


*It is illegal to pollute drains, water courses or soil with toxic chemicals such as used engine oil. Use authorised waste disposal sites to dispose of used oil and toxic chemicals.*

It is assumed that the engine oil filter will be renewed at the same time as draining and refilling the engine oil.

Because any used engine oil remaining in the filter container will drain into the sump when the filter is changed, it is better to change the filter element. See **Oil filter renewal, 202**, before draining and refilling the engine oil.

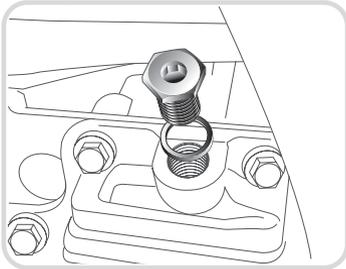
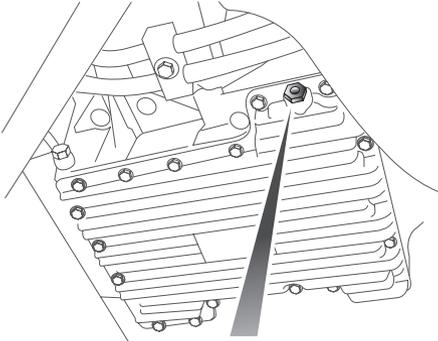
## Drain



With the engine warm (to assist oil drainage) and the vehicle parked on firm, level ground, remove the filler cap and position a container of suitable size (at least 10 US quarts or 10 litres) under the drain plug, in the bottom of the sump.

# Engine Oil

---



H4685

Remove the drain plug and copper washer and allow the engine oil to drain into the container.

## WARNING

**Oil from the engine can be very hot, to avoid harmful burns, take care when removing the drain plug.**

---

## Refill

Clean the oil drain plug and its mating surface on the engine sump. Fit the drain plug, complete with a new copper washer, and tighten to 13 lbf.ft (17 Nm).

Refill the engine with fresh oil, suitable for the climatic conditions in which the vehicle is to be operated, see **LUBRICANTS AND FLUIDS, 273**).

**DO NOT overfill the engine!** Remember that a little oil will always remain in the engine after draining and that, therefore, the quantity of oil required to refill the engine will be slightly less than the full capacity quoted in **CAPACITIES, 274**.

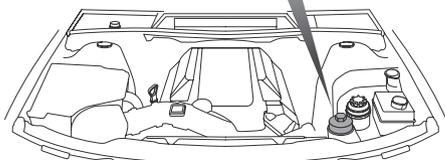
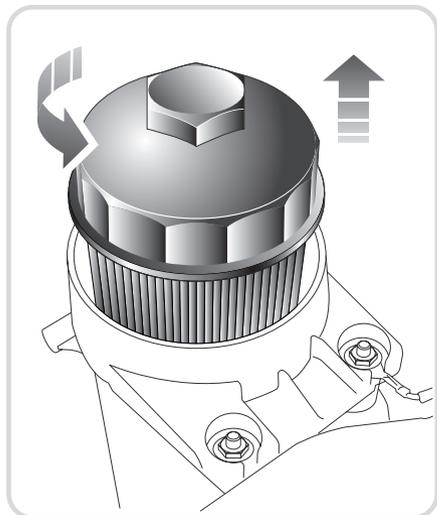
After filling, allow a few minutes to elapse before checking the level on the dipstick (this will allow all the oil to drain into the sump and enable a true reading to be obtained). Once the correct level of oil is shown on the dipstick, replace the filler cap.

Start and run the engine. Do not rev the engine until the oil pressure warning light extinguishes. Check for oil leaks around the drain plug.

Stop the engine, wait a few minutes, then check the oil level and top up if necessary.

# Engine Oil

## Oil filter renewal

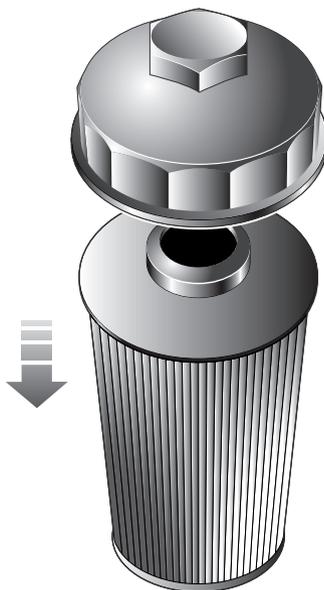


H4686

The engine oil filter is located at the front of the engine compartment.

1. Unscrew the filter cap anti-clockwise and raise it slightly. The filter element will be withdrawn by the cap.
2. Allow a few moments for the engine oil retained within the filter body to drain away.
3. With a suitable container handy, fully lift off the cap and element together and place them in the container.
4. Pull the cap from the element and clean it.

5. Clean the inside of the filter body.
6. Attach the cap to the new filter element by pushing it onto the end of the element.
7. Insert the element into the filter body and screw down the cap. Tighten to 18 lbf.ft (25 Nm)
8. Start and run the engine. Do not rev the engine until the oil pressure warning light extinguishes. Check for oil leaks around the filter body.
9. Stop the engine, wait a few minutes, then check the oil level and top up if necessary.

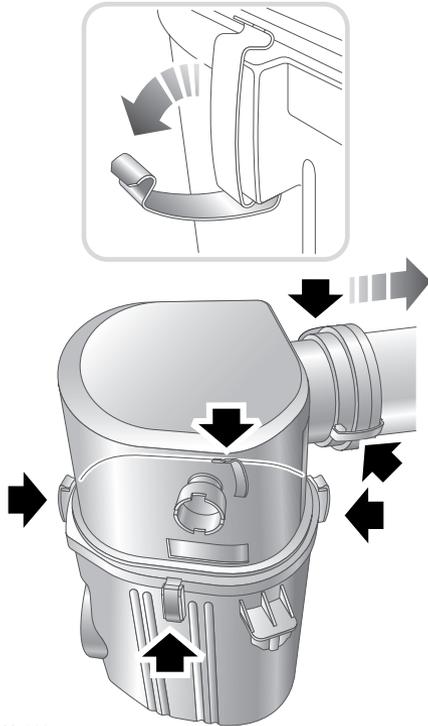


H4687

# Air Cleaner

## ELEMENT RENEWAL

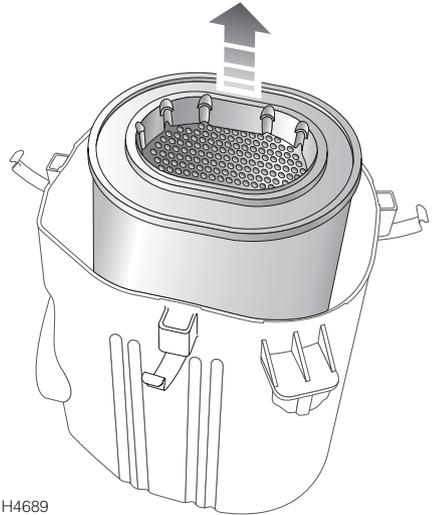
Renewing the air cleaner element at the recommended service intervals (see your 'Passport to Service book') is extremely important. However, to maintain optimum engine performance under dusty operating conditions, more frequent renewal will be necessary. Consult your Retailer for guidance.



H4688

1. Release 2 catches securing the hose to the rear of the air cleaner; detach the hose.
2. Release 4 catches securing the cover to the air cleaner body and remove the cover to gain access to the element.

3. Remove and discard the air cleaner element, noting which way up the element fits. Before fitting a new element, clean the inside of the air cleaner body and cover.
4. Fit the new air cleaner element and cover and secure the catches.
5. Connect the hose to the rear of the air cleaner and secure the catches.



H4689

### IMPORTANT INFORMATION

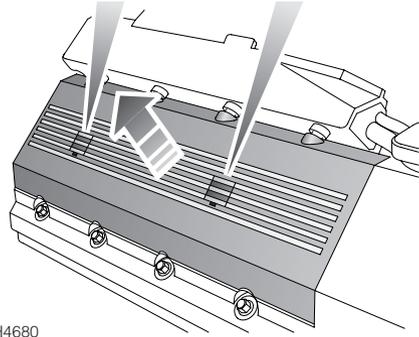
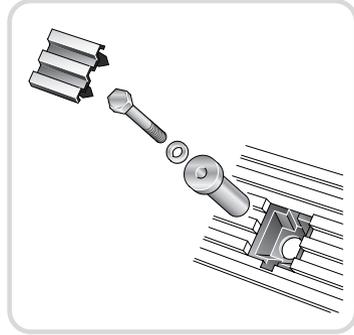
Always fit a NEW element; under no circumstances should a contaminated element be cleaned and used again.

# Spark Plugs

## SPARK PLUG REMOVE & REFIT

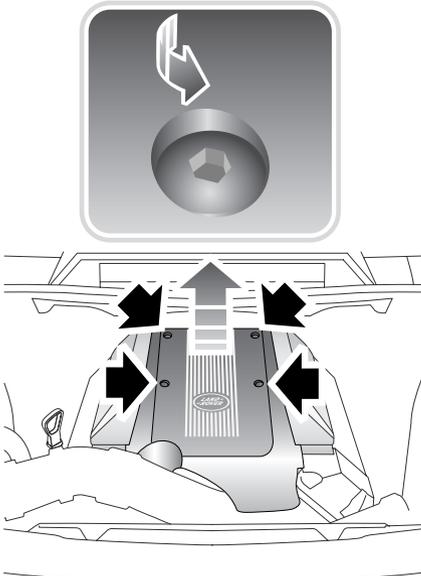
### Spark plug removal

1. Disconnect the battery - ensuring that you have read and understood all text and cautions in the relevant section of the handbook - see **BATTERY SAFETY, 214**.
2. Release 4 allen head turnbuckles and remove the acoustic cover, see above.
3. Working on one side of the engine, remove 2 bolt access covers from the ignition coil covers and remove the bolts beneath them.



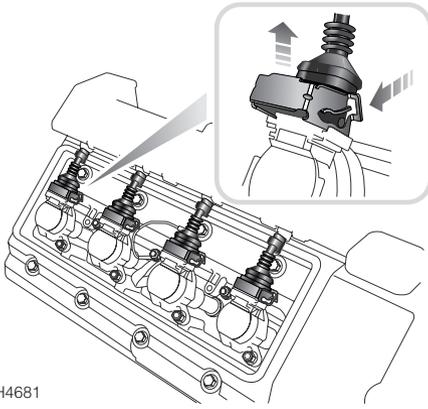
H4680

4. Remove the ignition coil cover.
5. Remove 2 bolt spacers from the ignition coil covers.
6. Repeat steps 3 to 5 for the other side of the engine.



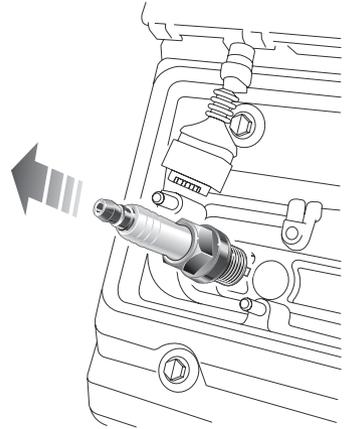
H4679

# Spark Plugs



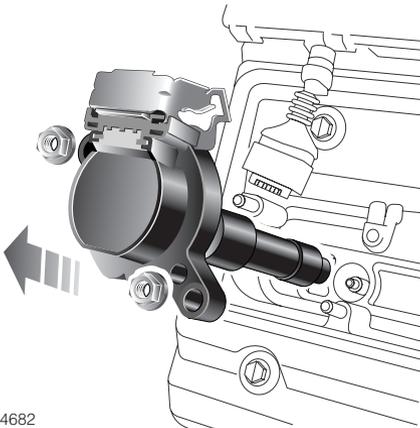
H4681

7. Remove 2 nuts and disconnect the wiring harness and camshaft cover earth leads.
8. Disconnect 8 multiplugs from their ignition coils by pulling up each metal locking clamp.
9. Discard both ignition coil cover gaskets.
10. Remove 14 nuts securing the ignition coils.



H4683

12. Clean the area around each spark plug and, using a suitable spark plug wrench, remove 8 spark plugs.



H4682

11. Pull out 8 ignition coil units.

# Spark Plugs

---

## Fitting new spark plugs

When fitting new spark plugs, take care not to cross-thread a plug, otherwise costly damage to the cylinder head will result.

Only fit plugs of a type recommended by Land Rover (see **V8 ENGINE, 275**). Please note that fitting incorrect grades of plug may lead to engine failure and serious damage.

1. Fit 8 new spark plugs and tighten to a torque of 23 lbf.ft (31 Nm).
2. Fit an ignition coil to each plug.
3. Fit 14 nuts securing the ignition coils and tighten them to 3 lbf.ft (4 Nm).
4. Fit 2 new ignition coil cover gaskets
5. Connect each multiplug to its ignition coil and lock in position by pressing down each locking clamp.
6. Reposition the wiring harness and camshaft cover earth leads, fit the remaining 2 nuts and tighten to 3 lbf.ft (4 Nm).
7. Fit 2 bolt spacers to each ignition coil cover.
8. Fit both ignition coil covers, tighten the bolts and refit the 4 bolt access covers.
9. Refit the engine acoustic cover.
10. Reconnect the battery.

# Cooling System

## COOLANT CHECK AND TOP-UP

### WARNING

**NEVER** remove the filler cap when the engine is hot - escaping steam or scalding water could cause serious personal injury.

Unscrew the filler cap slowly, allowing the pressure to escape before removing completely.

Avoid spilling anti-freeze onto a hot engine - a fire may result.

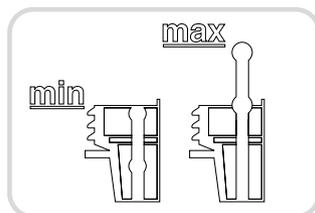
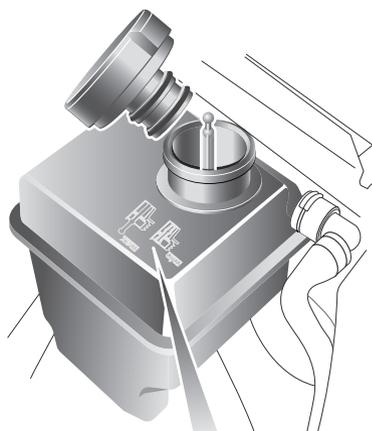
**Caution:** NEVER run the engine without coolant.

**Caution:** NEVER top-up with salt water. When travelling in territories where the water supply contains salt, always ensure you carry a supply of fresh (rain or distilled) water.

**Note:** Anti-freeze will damage painted surfaces: Soak up any spillage with an absorbent cloth immediately and wash the area with a mixture of car shampoo and water.

The coolant level in the expansion tank should only be checked when the CHECK COOLANT LEVEL message is displayed on the message centre. Always check the level WHEN THE SYSTEM IS COLD.

If it is necessary to remove the filler cap before the system has fully cooled, loosen the cap slowly, allowing the air pressure to escape gradually.



H3908

Top-up with a 50% mixture of anti-freeze and water so that the float protrudes slightly from the filler neck, in accordance with the illustration inset. **DO NOT OVERFILL!**

Ensure the cap is tightened fully after top-up is completed.

If the level has fallen appreciably, suspect leakage or overheating and arrange for your Land Rover Retailer to examine the vehicle.

**Caution:** An over-filled expansion tank may cause a build-up of pressure and excess fluid could be expelled through the filler cap.

# Cooling System

---

## ANTI-FREEZE

### WARNING

**Anti-freeze is poisonous and can be fatal if swallowed - keep containers sealed and out of the reach of children. If accidental consumption is suspected, seek medical attention immediately.**

**Prevent anti-freeze coming in contact with the skin or eyes. If this occurs, rinse immediately with plenty of water.**

---

Anti-freeze contains important corrosion inhibitors. The anti-freeze content of the coolant must be maintained at 50%  $\pm$  5% all year round (not just in cold conditions). To ensure that the anti-corrosion properties of the coolant are retained, the anti-freeze content should be checked once a year and completely renewed every 4 years, regardless of distance travelled. Failure to do so may cause corrosion of the radiator and engine components.

The specific gravity of a 50% anti-freeze solution at 20°C (68°F) is 1.075 and protects against frost down to -36°C (-33°F).

## Coolant specification

Use ONLY a 50% mix of water and Glacelf MDX or BASF G48 or approved alternative (see **Approved Coolants, 273**).

In an emergency - and only if this type of anti-freeze is unavailable - top-up the cooling system with clean water, but be aware of the resultant reduction in frost protection. DO NOT top-up or refill with conventional anti-freeze formulations. If in doubt consult a Land Rover Retailer.

**Note:** *When clean water is added in the event of an emergency, the low coolant light will illuminate if the water/anti-freeze mix ratio is over-diluted. This light will extinguish when the ratio of water/anti-freeze is returned to a 50% mix. This should be done at the earliest opportunity.*

# Brakes

## BRAKE FLUID

### WARNING

Brake fluid is highly toxic - keep containers sealed and out of the reach of children. If accidental consumption of fluid is suspected, seek medical attention immediately.

If brake fluid should come into contact with the skin or eyes, rinse immediately with plenty of water.

Take care not to spill fluid onto a hot engine - a fire may result.

**DO NOT** drive the vehicle with the fluid level below the 'MIN' mark.

*Note: Brake fluid will damage painted surfaces; soak up any spillage with an absorbent cloth immediately and wash the area with a mixture of car shampoo and water.*

### Check

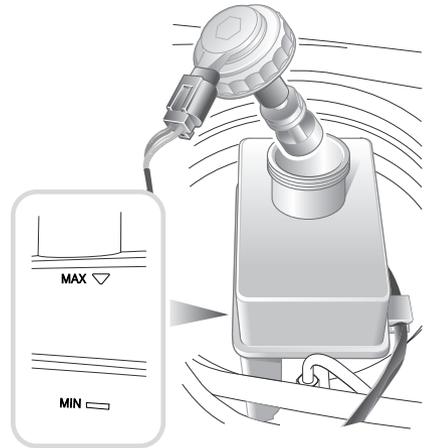
The fluid level may fall slightly during normal use as a result of brake pad wear but should not be allowed to fall below the 'MIN' mark. Any substantial drop in fluid indicates a leak in the system, in which case the vehicle must NOT be driven and you should contact your Land Rover Retailer.

### WARNING

**Contact your Retailer immediately if brake pedal travel is unusually long or if there is any appreciable drop in brake fluid level.**

With the vehicle on level ground, check the fluid level at least every week (more frequently in high mileage or arduous operating conditions). Check the level visually through the side of the transparent reservoir without removing the filler cap.

## Top-up



H4226

Wipe the filler cap clean before removing to prevent dirt from entering the reservoir. Unscrew the cap (1/8 turn) and top-up the reservoir to the 'MAX' mark using brake fluid conforming to DOT 4 specification.

Use only new fluid from an airtight container (old fluid from opened containers or fluid previously bled from the system will have absorbed moisture, which will adversely affect performance, and must NOT be used). **DO NOT OVERFILL.**

Brake fluid must be completely renewed every 3 years regardless of distance travelled.

# Power Steering

## POWER STEERING FLUID

### WARNING

Power steering fluid is highly toxic - keep containers sealed and out of reach of children. If accidental consumption of fluid is suspected, seek medical attention immediately.

If power steering fluid should come into contact with the skin or eyes, rinse immediately with plenty of water.

Do not spill power steering fluid onto a hot engine - a fire may result.

**Note:** Power steering fluid will damage painted surfaces: Soak up any spillage with an absorbent cloth immediately and wash the area with a mixture of car shampoo and water.

### Emergency operation

Any large or sudden drop in the fluid level must be investigated by a Land Rover Retailer.

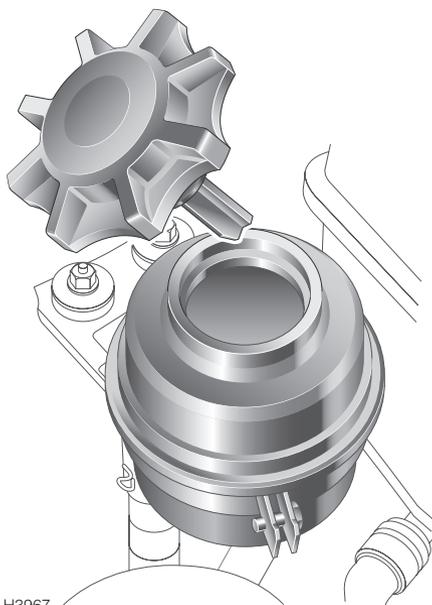
If it can be established that fluid loss is slow, then the reservoir may be topped-up to the upper level mark to enable the vehicle to be driven to the nearest Land Rover Retailer for examination.

If the fluid level has dropped below the lower level mark, top-up the reservoir before starting the engine, or damage to the steering pump could result.

**Caution:** The engine must NOT be started if the fluid level has dropped below the bottom of the dipstick - severe damage to the pump could result.

### Check and Top-up

Check and top-up the fluid level ONLY with the engine switched off and the system cold, and ensure that the steering wheel is not turned after stopping the engine.



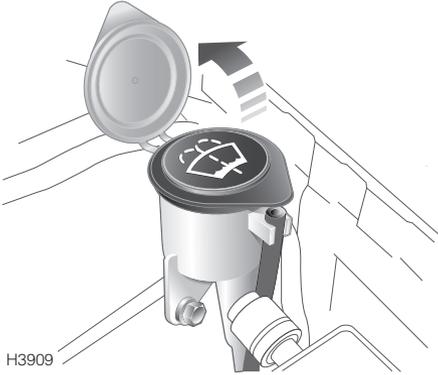
H3967

Wipe the filler cap clean to prevent dirt from entering the reservoir. Remove the filler cap and, using a lint-free cloth, wipe the dipstick clean. Refit the filler cap fully and remove it again to check the fluid level. Add fluid to the reservoir until the level is between the upper mark and the bottom of the dipstick. **DO NOT fill above the upper mark on the dipstick.**

# Washers

## WINDSHIELD WASHER TOP-UP

### Fluid top-up



The windshield washer reservoir supplies both front shield and rear screen washer jets and headlamp washer jets\*.

Check the reservoir level at least every week and to prevent freezing in cold weather top-up with a mixture of water and a recommended Screenwash. Use LandRover parts STC8249 screenwash, or any good quality proprietary screenwash.

Preferably mix the recommended quantities of water and screenwash in a separate container before topping-up, and always follow the instructions on the container.

**Caution: State or local regulations on volatile organic compounds may restrict the use of methanol, a common windshield washer anti-freeze additive. Washer fluids containing non-methanol anti-freeze agents should be used only if they provide cold weather protection without damaging the vehicles paint finish, wiper blades or washer system.**

### WARNING

If you operate your vehicle in temperatures below 40 degrees F, use washer fluid with anti-freeze protection. In cold weather, failure to use washer fluid with anti-freeze protection could result in impaired windshield vision and increase the risk of a vehicle crash.

Some screenwash products are inflammable, particularly if high or undiluted concentrations are exposed to sparking. **DO NOT** allow screenwash to come into contact with naked flames or sources of ignition.

**Do not** put engine coolant in the windscreen washer fluid reservoir. If engine coolant is sprayed onto the windscreen, it could make it difficult to see through the windscreen.

**Caution: DO NOT** use an anti-freeze or vinegar/water solution in the washer reservoir - anti-freeze will damage painted surfaces, while vinegar can damage the windshield washer pump.

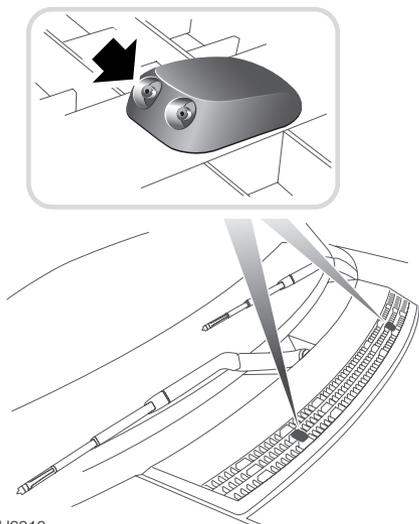
**Note:** *Body panels may suffer discolouration as a result of screenwash spillage. Take care to avoid spillage, particularly if an undiluted or high concentration is being used. If spillage occurs, wash the affected area immediately with water.*

# Washers

## WASHER JETS

Operate the washer switches periodically to check that the nozzles are clear and properly directed.

The windshield washer jets are set during manufacture and should not need adjusting. However, if adjustment is ever necessary, insert a needle into the jet orifice and lever gently to position each jet so that the spray is directed towards the centre of the windshield.



H3910

The rear screen jets located in the wiper arm are not adjustable.

Should any jet become obstructed, insert a needle or thin strand of wire into the orifice to clear the blockage.

## HEADLAMP WASHERS

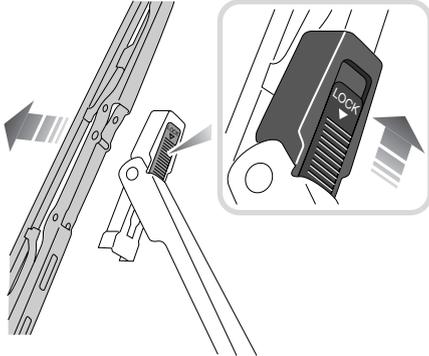
The spray jets are set during manufacture and should not need to be adjusted.

**Caution: Ensure an approved screen washer solvent is used in the windscreen washer reservoir to prevent freezing.**

# Wiper Blades

## WIPER BLADE REPLACEMENT

### Front wiper blades



H3912

Lift the wiper arm away from the windshield. Disconnect the blade by pushing the locking tab (see inset in illustration) to the unlock position. Fitting a replacement blade is a reversal of this process. Check that the blade is securely locked before returning the wiper assembly to the windshield.

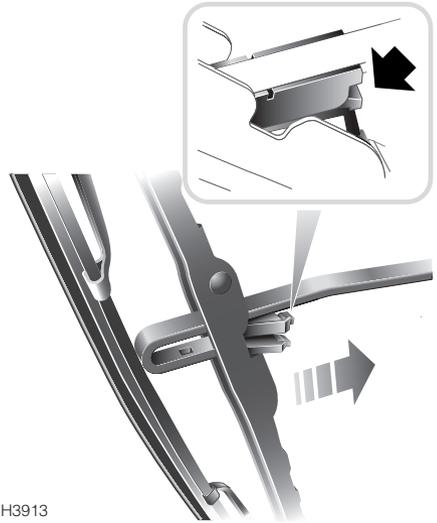
Only fit replacement wiper blades that are identical to the original specification.

Grease, silicone and gasoline based products impair the blade's wiping capability. Wash the wiper blades in warm soapy water and periodically check their condition.

If signs of hardness or cracking in the rubber are found, or if the wipers leave streaks or unwiped areas on the windshield during use, then the wiper blades should be replaced.

Clean the windshield regularly with an approved glass cleaner and ensure the shield is thoroughly cleaned before fitting replacement wiper blades.

### Rear wiper blade



H3913

Lift the wiper arm away from the rear screen and pivot the blade assembly away from the arm. Press the tab (arrowed in inset), to release the blade assembly and slide the assembly off the end of the wiper arm. Carefully replace the arm to its stowed position.

To replace, position the wiper arm into the aperture in the middle of the blade assembly and push firmly into position until the blade clips into place.

### Headlamp wiper blade

The headlamp wiper blade and wiper arm are an integral unit and should only be replaced by qualified personnel.

# Battery

## BATTERY SAFETY

### WARNING

**ALWAYS** wear appropriate eye protection when working around batteries.

Batteries contain acid, which is both corrosive and poisonous. If spillage occurs:

- On clothing or the skin - remove any contaminated clothing immediately, flush the skin with large amounts of water, and seek medical attention urgently.
- In the eyes - flush with clean water immediately for at least 15 minutes. Seek medical attention urgently.

Swallowing battery acid can be fatal unless IMMEDIATE action is taken - seek medical attention urgently.

During normal operation batteries emit explosive hydrogen gas - ensure sparks and naked lights are kept away from the engine compartment.

For your safety, remove all metal wrist bands and jewellery before working in the engine compartment and NEVER allow the battery terminals or vehicle leads to make contact with tools or metal parts of the vehicle.

### WARNING

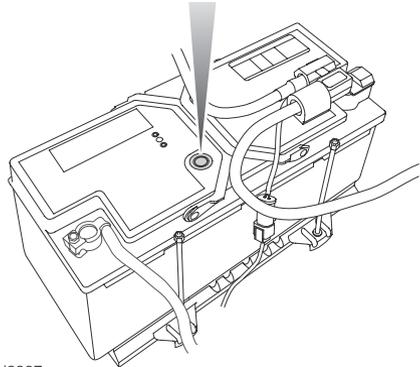
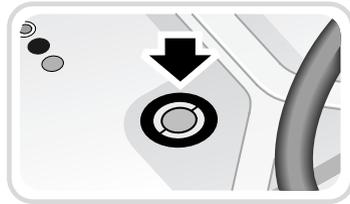
Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds. Wash hands after handling.

If the indicator shows clear or yellow, tap the indicator with the handle of a screwdriver to

## BATTERY MAINTENANCE

The battery is designed to be maintenance free, so topping-up is unnecessary. On the top of the battery there is a battery condition indicator (arrowed in inset). Examine the indicator periodically to check the battery's condition. When the indicator shows:

- GREEN - the battery is in a good state of charge.
- DARK (turning to black) - the battery needs charging.
- CLEAR (or light yellow) - the battery must be replaced. Do not charge the battery or jump start the vehicle in this condition.



H3997

**Note:** When checking the battery condition indicator, if necessary, clean the battery top to ensure a clear view.

disperse any air bubbles. If the colour is unchanged, the battery must be replaced.

# Battery

---

## Battery disconnection, charging, removal and replacement

There may at times be a requirement to disconnect the battery, e.g., to necessitate Interlock Code emergency deactivation - see **your Audio Navigation handbook**.

- Turn the starter switch off and remove the starter key.
- Wait for at least two minutes before starting the disconnection procedure. Ensure you have your remote handset available as you may have to turn off the alarm sounder.
- Disconnect **ONLY** the negative ('-') terminal.
- Wait for two minutes before reconnecting the battery.

If the alarm sounds when the battery is reconnected, use the key fob to turn it off.

### WARNING

**The battery positive ('+') terminal is fitted with a pyrotechnic charge, designed to disconnect the battery as a safety precaution in the event of a severe collision. For this reason, the battery charging, disconnection and removal should only be attempted by qualified personnel.**

---

### WARNING

**Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds. Wash hands after handling.**

---

## Effects of battery disconnection

Following disconnection and subsequent reconnection of the vehicle battery, a number of the vehicle systems will be reset automatically. This may take a few minutes and with some systems, sensors have to detect certain actions whilst driving before full operability returns. This in no way affects the safe operation of the vehicle.

## Replacement batteries

### WARNING

**Only fit a replacement battery of the same type and specification as the original - other batteries may vary in size or have different terminal positions which could cause a fire hazard when connected to the vehicle's electrical system.**

---

## Battery disposal



*Used batteries should be recycled. However, batteries are hazardous - you should seek advice about disposal from a Land Rover Retailer or your local authority.*

# Tires

---

## CARING FOR YOUR TIRES

### WARNING

**DEFECTIVE TIRES ARE DANGEROUS!** Do not drive if any tire is damaged, is excessively worn, or is inflated to an incorrect pressure.

**ALWAYS** replace worn or defective tires with the factory recommended specification, see **WHEELS AND TIRES, 278**. Failure to do so may affect the safe handling of the vehicle.

---

Always drive with consideration for the condition of the tires, and regularly inspect the tread and side walls for any sign of distortion (bulges), cuts or wear.

The most common causes of tire failure are:

- Bumping against curbs
- Driving over deep potholes in the road
- Driving with under - over inflated tires

**Note:** *If possible, protect tires from contamination by oil, grease, fuel and other automotive fluids.*

### Safety Practices

The way you drive has a great deal to do with your tire mileage and safety. Cultivate good driving habits for your own benefit:

- Observe posted speed limits
- Avoid fast starts, stops and turns
- Avoid potholes and objects on the road
- Do not run over curbs or hit the tire against the curb when parking
- Avoid wheel spin

### WARNING

**If the vehicle has been parked in strong sunlight or used in high ambient**

### WARNING

- **Avoid spinning the tire.** The forces created by rapidly spinning a tire can cause failure of, and damage to, the tire structure.
  - **If the tire does spin never exceed the 50 km/h (30 mph) point indicated on the speedometer**
  - **Do not allow anyone to stand near or directly ahead of a tire that might spin.**
- 

### Tire pressures

Correctly inflated tires will ensure that you enjoy the best combination of tire life, ride comfort, fuel economy and road handling.

Under-inflated tires wear more rapidly, can seriously affect the vehicle's road handling characteristics and fuel consumption, as well as increasing the risk of tire failure.

Over-inflated tires give a harsher ride, wear unevenly and are more prone to damage.

Tire pressures should be checked at least once a week with normal road use, but should be checked **DAILY** if the vehicle is used off-road.

Check the pressures (including the spare wheel) when the tires are cold - be aware that it only takes a mile of driving to warm up the tires sufficiently to affect the tire pressures.

**Note:** *Air pressure naturally increases in warm tires; if it is necessary to check the tires when they are warm (after the vehicle has been driven for a while), you should expect the pressures to have increased between 40 kPa (0.4 Bar) (6psi). In this circumstance, NEVER let air out of the tires in order to match the recommended pressures.*

**temperatures, DO NOT reduce tire pressures; instead, move the vehicle into the shade and allow the tires to cool before checking.**

---

# Tires

The recommended pressures for cold tires are shown in **WHEELS AND TIRES, 278**.

Use a tire gauge to check the tire inflation pressures, including the spare, at least weekly and before long journeys. Land Rover strongly recommends using a reliable tire pressure gauge, as automatic service station gauges may be inaccurate.

## Checking tire inflation pressures

Check the tire inflation pressure when the tires are cold, i.e. before driving.

1. Remove the cap from the valve on one tire.
2. Firmly press a tire gauge onto the valve.
3. Add air to achieve the recommended tire pressure.
4. If you overfill the tire, release air by pushing on the metal stem in the center of the valve. Then recheck the pressure with your tire gauge.

**Note:** *Tire pressure increases in warm weather and decreases in cold weather.*

5. Replace the valve cap.
6. Repeat with each tire.

**Note:** *The pressure for your spare tire should be set to the highest value given for your wheel/tire size combination, and adjusted after fitment.*

7. Visually inspect the tires to make sure that there are no nails or other objects embedded in them.
8. Check the sidewalls to make sure that there are no gouges, cuts, bulges or other irregularities.

## Tire wear



H4942

Tires fitted as original equipment have wear indicators moulded into the tread pattern. When the tread has worn down to 1.6 mm (0.62 in) the indicators start appearing at the surface of the tread pattern, producing the effect of a continuous band of rubber across the width of the tire.

A tire **MUST** be replaced as soon as an indicator band becomes visible or the tread depth reaches the minimum permitted by legislation.

Tread depth must be checked regularly (at every maintenance service, or more frequently). Always replace a tire before the tread reaches a remaining depth of 1.6 mm (0.62 in). **DO NOT** drive with tires worn to this limit, the safety of the vehicle and occupants will be adversely affected.

**Note:** *After off-road use, check to make sure there are no lumps or bulges in the tires or exposure of the ply or cord structure.*

## Valves

Keep the valve caps screwed down firmly - they prevent dirt from entering the valve. Check the valve for leaks (listen for a tell-tale hissing) when you check the tire pressure.

# Tires

---

## Punctured tires

Your vehicle is fitted with tubeless tires, which may not leak immediately if penetrated by a sharp object, provided the object remains in the tire.

A puncture of this kind will eventually cause the tire to lose pressure, which is why regular (and frequent) checking of tire pressures is important. Punctured or damaged tires must be permanently repaired, where possible within industry legislation by a qualified technician, or replaced as soon as possible.

If you sustain a puncture, reduce driving speed immediately in a straight line where possible, whilst avoiding heavy braking or sharp steering inputs. Pull over at the first safe place possible to change your tire.

## Highway hazards

No matter how carefully you drive, there is always the possibility of a puncture on the highway. In this event, drive slowly to the closest safe area out of traffic. This may further damage the flat tire, but your safety is more important.

If you feel a sudden vibration or ride disturbance while driving, or you suspect that your tire or vehicle has been damaged, immediately reduce your speed. Drive with caution and safely pull off the road at the earliest opportunity. Stop and inspect the tire for damage. If the tire is under-inflated or damaged, remove the tire and wheel and replace it with your spare. If you cannot detect a cause, have the vehicle towed to the nearest vehicle or tire Retailer to have the vehicle inspected.

## Replacement tires

### WARNING

**Wheels and tires are matched to suit the handling characteristics of the vehicle. For safety, ALWAYS check that replacement tires comply with the original specification (see WHEELS AND TIRES, 278) and that the load and speed ratings shown on the side wall are the same as that of the original equipment. Contact your Land Rover Retailer for further information or assistance.**

---

## UNIFORM TIRE QUALITY GRADING

Quality Grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width. For example:

|                      |                    |                      |
|----------------------|--------------------|----------------------|
| <i>Treadwear 200</i> | <i>Traction AA</i> | <i>Temperature A</i> |
|----------------------|--------------------|----------------------|

Tires that are deep tread, winter-type snow tires are exempt from the marking requirements as described above. Consequently, the tires fitted to your vehicle may not carry these markings.

All passenger car tires must conform to Federal Safety Requirements in addition to these grades.

### Treadwear

The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example; a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half (1½) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

# Tires

## Traction

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B and C. The grades represent a tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked 'C' may have poor traction performance.

### WARNING

**The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning, or peak traction characteristics.**

## Temperature

The temperature grades A (the highest), B, and C, represent a tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperatures can cause the material of a tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure.

The grade 'C' corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Safety Standard No 109.

Grades 'B' and 'A' represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

### WARNING

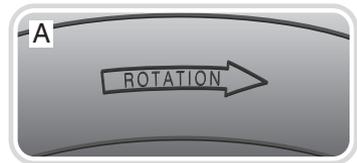
**The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, under inflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.**

## Directional Tires\*

Directional tires give greater benefit when they rotate in a forward direction, i.e., when the vehicle is moving forwards. They give enhanced levels of deep-water grip while still maintaining low tire noise generation.

Should a tire be fitted to a vehicle in the wrong directional sense, these benefits will only be maintained if the tire is remounted to the rim so that it rotates in the direction indicated on the sidewall.

There are two types of directional tire and the direction indicators are shown in the illustration below.



H4562

# Tires

---

## SNOW CHAINS

Snow chains are designed for use on metalled roads in extreme snow conditions only, and are not recommended for off-road use. If it is necessary to fit snow chains to your vehicle, ALWAYS observe the following:

- **Front wheels:** No snow chains on front wheels/tires.
- **Rear wheels:** Snow chains can be fitted to the rear wheels of any vehicle, provided the wheels and tires conform to one of the original equipment or applicable accessory fit specifications listed later in the handbook, see **WHEELS AND TIRES, 278**.
- If snow chains are to be fitted (in accordance with the table in **WHEELS AND TIRES, 278**) then ONLY Land Rover approved chains should be used - these are designed for your vehicle and will eliminate any risk of damage to other components. Approved snow chains are only available from a Land Rover Retailer.
- Always adhere to the snow chain fitting and retensioning instructions and the speed limitations recommended for varying road conditions. NEVER exceed 50 km/h (31 mph).
- ONLY fit snow chains in pairs.
- Avoid tire damage by removing the chains as soon as the road is free from snow.

**Caution: DO NOT fit unapproved snow chains - this could damage tires, wheels, suspension and brake components and could result in damage to the bodywork of the vehicle.**



# Tires

## Speed rating (7)

The speed rating denotes the speed at which a tire is designed to be driven for extended periods of time. The ratings range from 99 mph to 186 mph. These ratings are listed in the following table.

**Note:** You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by law.

| Letter | Speed Rating - mph |
|--------|--------------------|
| Q      | 99                 |
| R      | 106                |
| S      | 112                |
| T      | 118                |
| U      | 124                |
| H      | 130                |
| V      | 149                |
| W      | 168                |
| Y      | 186                |

## U.S DOT tire identification number (8)

This begins with the letters 'DOT' and indicates that the tire meets all Federal standards. The next two numbers or letters are the plant code where it was manufactured, and the last four numbers represent the week and year the tire was built. For example, the numbers 3197 means the 31st week of 1997. The other numbers are marketing codes used at the manufacturer's discretion. This information can be used to contact consumers if a tire defect requires a recall.

## M+S (9)

The 'M+S' or 'M/S' indicates that the tire has some mud and snow capability. Most radial tires have these markings, as they have some mud and snow capability.

## Tire ply composition and materials used (10)

The number of plies indicates the number of layers of rubber-coated fabric in the tire. In general, the greater the number of plies, the more weight a tire can support. Tire manufacturers also must indicate the materials in the tire, which include steel, nylon, polyester, and others.

## Treadwear number (11)

This number indicates the tire's wear rate. The higher the treadwear number is, the longer it should take for the tread to wear down. For example, a tire graded 400 should last twice as long as a tire graded 200.

## Traction letter (12)

This letter indicates a tire's ability to stop on wet pavement. A higher graded tire should allow you to stop your vehicle on wet roads in a shorter distance than a tire with a lower grade. Traction is graded from highest to lowest as **AA**, **A**, **B**, and **C**.

## Maximum load rating (13)

This number indicates the maximum load in kilograms and pounds that can be carried by the tire.

## Temperature letter (14)

This letter indicates a tire's resistance to heat. The temperature grade is for a tire that is inflated properly and not overloaded. Excessive speed, under-inflation or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat build-up and possible tire failure. From highest to lowest, a tire's resistance to heat is graded as **A**, **B**, or **C**.

## Maximum permissible inflation pressure (15)

This number is the greatest amount of air pressure that should ever be put in the tire under normal driving conditions.

# Tires

## TIRE INFORMATION LABELS

### Tire pressure label/placard (USA only)

Two tire information labels are visible on the pillar behind the driver's door (also known as the 'B' pillar), giving information specific to the wheel and tire equipment fitted to the vehicle when it was built.

The top label contains information relating to tire and wheel sizes and recommended pressures for all wheel and tire combinations.

MFD BY LANDROVER IN THE UK

DATE: MMYY GVWR: 3050KG (6724LB)

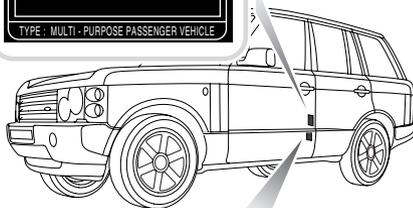
GVWR FRONT: 1530KG (3373LB)  
 235/60R18 TIRES: 7.5JX18 RIMS: AT 250KPA (36PSI) COLD  
 255/60R18 TIRES: 8.0JX18 RIMS: AT 250KPA (36PSI) COLD  
 255/60R18 TIRES: 7.5JX18 RIMS: AT 250KPA (36PSI) COLD  
 235/60R18 TIRES: 8.0JX18 RIMS: AT 250KPA (36PSI) COLD  
 255/55R18 TIRES: 8.0JX18 RIMS: AT 250KPA (36PSI) COLD  
 255/50R20 TIRES: 8.0JX20 RIMS: AT 250KPA (36PSI) COLD  
 1175/80R19 TIRES: 5.5JX19 RIM: AT 420KPA (60PSI) COLD

GVWR REAR: 1520KG (3363LB)  
 235/60R18 TIRES: 7.5JX18 RIMS: AT 300KPA (44PSI) COLD  
 235/65R18 TIRES: 8.0JX18 RIMS: AT 300KPA (44PSI) COLD  
 255/60R18 TIRES: 7.5JX18 RIMS: AT 300KPA (44PSI) COLD  
 255/60R18 TIRES: 8.0JX18 RIMS: AT 300KPA (44PSI) COLD  
 235/55R18 TIRES: 8.0JX18 RIMS: AT 300KPA (44PSI) COLD  
 255/50R20 TIRES: 8.0JX20 RIMS: AT 300KPA (44PSI) COLD  
 1175/80R19 TIRES: 5.5JX19 RIM: AT 420KPA (60PSI) COLD

THIS VEHICLE CONFORMS TO ALL APPLICABLE  
 U.S. FEDERAL MOTOR VEHICLE SAFETY  
 STANDARDS IN EFFECT ON THE DATE OF  
 MANUFACTURE SHOWN ABOVE

\*TESTMARK1234567890\*

TYPE: MULTI-PURPOSE PASSENGER VEHICLE



**TIRE AND LOADING INFORMATION**

SEATING CAPACITY: TOTAL 5 FRONT 2 REAR 3  
 The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed 500kg or 1115lbs

| ORIGINAL TIRE SIZE | COLD TIRE INFLATION PRESSURE |               |
|--------------------|------------------------------|---------------|
| 255/60R18          | FRONT                        | 250kpa, 36PSI |
|                    | REAR                         | 300kpa, 44PSI |
| COMPACT SPARE TIRE | COLD TIRE INFLATION PRESSURE |               |
| T175/80R19         | 420kpa, 60PSI                |               |

SEE OWNER'S MANUAL FOR ADDITIONAL INFORMATION

170050008

H5857N

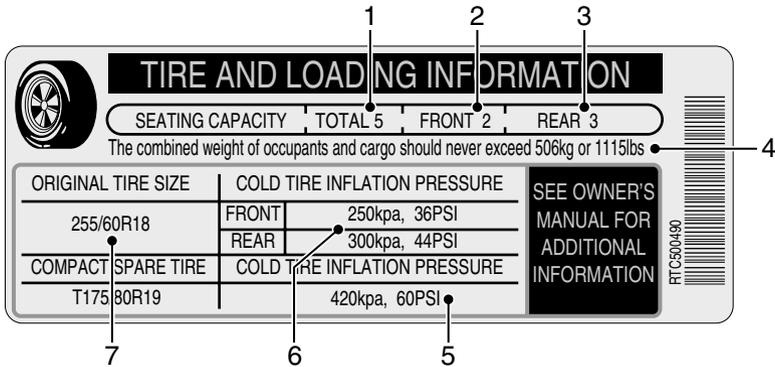
# Tires

The lower label contains the following information:

- The maximum number of occupants (1), divided between the front (2) and rear (3) of the vehicle.
- The vehicle capacity weight (4), which includes the weight of the driver, passengers and cargo.

- Cold inflation pressures for the compact spare tire (5) and the front and rear tires (6).
- The size of the tires (7) with which the vehicle was originally equipped.

**Note:** The label must not be changed, even if different wheels are fitted at a later stage.



H5858N

# Tires

---

## Steps for Determining Correct Load Limit

### WARNING

**Do not exceed the vehicle capacity weight (the total weight of driver, passengers and cargo) given, see TIRE INFORMATION LABELS, 223.**

---

1. Locate the statement 'The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXXX kg or YYYY lb' on your vehicle's placard, see **TIRE INFORMATION LABELS, 223**.
2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXXX kg or YYYY lb (weight given on placard).
4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the 'YYYY' amount equals 1400 lb, and there will be five 150 lb passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lb:  
( $5 \times 150 = 750$ , and  
 $1400 - 750 = 650$  lb).
5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.
6. If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult **TOWING, 166**, to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle. (Subtract the trailer tongue load from the available cargo and luggage load capacity.)

The number and weight of passengers will affect the cargo and luggage load capacity. In the example above, the cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lb. However, if fewer passengers ride in the vehicle, the luggage load capacity will increase. If this vehicle carries three 150 lb passengers, the cargo and luggage load capacity will increase to 950 lb:

( $3 \times 150 = 450$  lb, and  $1400 - 450 = 950$  lb).

If the passengers weigh more, the cargo and luggage load capacity will decrease.

### WARNING

**The weight of accessories must also be subtracted from the available cargo and luggage load capacity. If you are unsure of the weight of any accessories fitted to your vehicle, contact your Land Rover Retailer.**

**Overloading the vehicle will have an adverse affect on braking and handling characteristics, which could compromise your safety. Overloading a vehicle may also cause tire damage or failure. Never overload your vehicle.**

---

# Tires

---

## TIRE GLOSSARY

### **Cold tire pressure:**

Pressure in a tire that has been driven for less than one mile or has been standing for three hours or more.

### **Maximum inflation pressure:**

Maximum air pressure, to which a cold tire may be inflated, this figure (in psi and kPa) is moulded onto the sidewall of a tire.

### **Curb weight:**

The weight of a motor vehicle with standard equipment including the maximum capacity of fuel, oil, coolant and if so equipped, air conditioning and additional weight of optional engine.

### **Gross vehicle weight:**

The maximum permissible weight of a motor vehicle with driver, passengers, payload equipment and towing attachment load (where applicable).

### **Accessory weight:**

The combined weight (in excess of those standard items which may be replaced) of automatic transmission, power steering, power brakes, power windows, power seats, radio and heater, to the extent that these items are available as factory-installed equipment (whether installed or not).

### **Production options weight:**

The combined weight of those installed production options weighing over 1.4 kg (3 lb) in excess of those standard items which they replace, not previously considered in curb weight or accessory weight, including heavy duty brakes, ride levellers, roof rack, heavy duty battery and special trim.

### **Vehicle capacity weight:**

The rated cargo and luggage load plus 68 kg (150 lb) times the vehicle's designated seating capacity.

### **Maximum loaded vehicle weight:**

This is the sum of:

- Curb weight.
- Accessory weight.
- Vehicle capacity weight.
- Production options weight.

### **Rim:**

A metal support for a tire, or a tire and tube assembly, upon which the tire beads are seated.

### **Bead:**

The part of the tire that is made of steel wires, wrapped or reinforced by ply cords and that is shaped to fit the rim.

# Cleaning & Vehicle Care

---

## WASHING YOUR VEHICLE



H3854

**Caution: Read individual product warnings before using any car cleaning or washing products.**

**Some high pressure cleaning systems are sufficiently powerful to penetrate door and window seals and damage rubbing strips and locking mechanisms. Never aim the water jet directly at heater air intakes, body and sunroof seals, or at any components that might easily be damaged.**

Wash your vehicle frequently using a sponge and generous quantities of cold or lukewarm water containing a car shampoo. Rinse and dry off with a chamois leather.

- Do not use hot water!
- Do not use detergent soap products or washing-up liquid!
- In hot weather, do not wash the vehicle in direct sunlight.

## Underbody maintenance

Corrosive materials used for snow and ice removal and dust control can collect on underbody parts. If these materials are not removed, accelerated rusting can occur. Use a hose to regularly flush the underbody with plain water, taking particular care to thoroughly clean those areas where mud and other debris can easily collect.

Similarly, after off-road driving or wading in muddy or salt water conditions, use a hose to wash underbody components and other exposed parts of the vehicle.

When using a hose, do not direct the jet into the heater air intake ducts, or through the wheel trim apertures onto the brake components, or at the door, window or sunroof seals, where water pressure could penetrate the seals.

If damage or corrosion to the underbody area is detected, please have the vehicle checked by a Land Rover Retailer at the earliest opportunity.

## Steam cleaning

Before steam cleaning the engine compartment, cover the power steering and brake fluid reservoirs to prevent contamination of fluid. After steam cleaning carefully re-wax the metallic components, especially the steering column, engine coolant pipes, hose clips and the ignition coil clamp, to prevent corrosion - if necessary contact your Land Rover Retailer for advice.

## Removing tar spots

Use white spirit to remove tar spots and stubborn grease stains from paintwork. Then wash immediately with soapy water to remove all traces of spirit.

# Cleaning & Vehicle Care

---

## Body protection

After washing, inspect the paintwork for damage. Any stone chips, fractures or deep scratches in the bodywork should be repaired promptly. Bare metal will corrode quickly and can develop into major repair expense. Some exterior panels of your vehicle are made of aluminium which will not corrode in the same manner as steel. However, any damage should still receive prompt attention. Minor chips and scratches can be repaired with touch-up materials available from your Land Rover Retailer. Larger areas of damage need to be corrected to professional standards immediately.

## Cast alloy road wheels

The cast alloy road wheels are covered with a protective coating. To prevent corrosion it is essential that this coating is not damaged. To clean the wheels use a warm soapy liquid, stubborn stains can be removed using a soft brush.

## Polishing

Occasionally treat the paint surface with an approved polish containing the following properties:

- Very mild abrasives to remove surface contamination without removing or damaging the paint.
- Filling compounds that will fill scratches and reduce their visibility.
- Wax to provide a protective coating between the paint and the elements.

**Note:** *DO NOT apply car polish to the unpainted areas of the bumper mouldings - polish will become ingrained in the textured finished.*

## Sunroof

It is essential that the sunroof aperture surround, channels, drain tubes and slides (accessible with the panel fully open), are kept clear, clean and lubricated for efficient operation. This requirement is particularly important in dusty environments.

If necessary contact your Land Rover Retailer for advice.

## Glass and mirrors

Clean the rear window with a soft cloth to avoid damaging the heating elements. DO NOT scrape the glass or use an abrasive cleaning fluid.

Mirror glass is particularly susceptible to damage. Wash with soapy water. DO NOT use abrasive cleaning compounds or metal scrapers to remove ice.

# Cleaning & Vehicle Care

---

## CLEANING THE INTERIOR

### WARNING

**Read individual product warnings before using any car cleaning or washing products.**

---

### Plastic materials

Clean plastic-faced or cloth covered surfaces with warm water and a non-detergent soap and wipe with a clean cloth.

**Note:** *DO NOT polish facia components - for safety, these should remain non-reflective.*

### Leather

Leather faced features should be cleaned with a damp cloth moistened with undiluted leather cleaner. Dry and polish the leather with a dry, lint-free cloth.

Land Rover recommends that leather is cleaned and protected at least every six months, but maybe as often as every 1-2 months for high mileage cars or cars kept in a hostile environment. Leather cleaning kit BAC500490 is recommended and endorsed by Land Rover for this purpose. Use in accordance with the instructions printed on the label.

**Note:** *Some materials/fabrics are prone to 'dye-transfer', which can cause unsightly discolouration of lighter colour leathers. Affected areas should be cleaned and re-protected as soon as possible.*

DO NOT use chemical or abrasive materials to clean leather. Gasoline, white spirit, alcohol, detergents, washing-up liquid, household cleaners, furniture polishes/creams or solvents should never be used on leather. Whilst these products may give initially impressive results, their use will lead to rapid deterioration of the leather and will invalidate the warranty.

### Carpet and fabrics

Clean with diluted nylon upholstery cleaner - test on a concealed area first.

### Instrument pack, clock and radio

Clean with a dry cloth only. DO NOT use cleaning fluids or sprays.

### Seat belts

Extend the belts, then use warm water and a non-detergent soap to clean. Allow the belts to dry naturally, and do not retract them or use the vehicle until they are completely dry.

### Airbag module covers

#### WARNING

**To prevent airbag SRS damage, the steering wheel centre pad and other areas containing airbags should ONLY be cleaned sparingly with a damp cloth, warm water and a non-detergent soap.**

**DO NOT allow these areas to be flooded with liquid, and DO NOT use gasoline, detergent, furniture cream or polishes.**

---

### Heated rear window

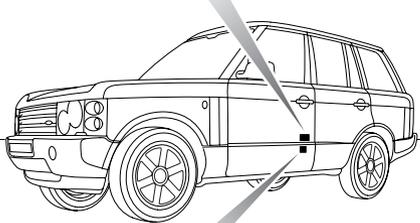
The following precautions must be taken, to avoid irreparable damage being caused to the printed circuit which is 'baked' onto the interior of the window.

- Do not remove labels or stickers from the window with the aid of sharp instruments or similar equipment, likely to scratch the glass.
- Care should be taken to avoid inadvertently scratching the glass with a ringed finger etc., when cleaning or wiping the window.
- Do not clean the window with harsh abrasives.

# Identification Numbers

## VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER (VIN)

If you need to communicate with a Land Rover Retailer, you may be asked to quote the Vehicle Identification Number (VIN).



| TIRE INFORMATION  |   | RANGE ROVER<br>RT000240 |
|---|---|-------------------------|
| GWR - 3050 KG (6724 LB)<br>GAWR - FRONT -<br>1530 KG (3373 LB)<br>WITH 235/65R18 TIRES,<br>7.5JX18 RIMS AT<br>250 KPA (36 PSI) COLD<br>OR WITH 255/60R18 TIRES,<br>7.5 JX18 RIMS AT<br>250 KPA (36 PSI ) COLD<br>OR WITH 255/55R19 TIRES,<br>8.0JX19 RIMS AT<br>250 KPA (36 PSI) COLD<br>OR WITH 255/50R20 TIRES,<br>8.5JX20 RIMS AT<br>250 KPA (36 PSI) COLD | GAWR - REAR -<br>1850 KG (4079 LB)<br>WITH 235/65R18 TIRES,<br>7.5JX18 RIMS AT<br>300 KPA (44 PSI) COLD<br>OR WITH 255/60R18 TIRES,<br>7.5 JX18 RIMS AT<br>300 KPA (44 PSI ) COLD<br>OR WITH 255/55R19 TIRES,<br>8.0 JOX19 RIMS AT<br>300 KPA (44 PSI) COLD<br>OR WITH 255/50R20 TIRES,<br>8.5JX20 RIMS AT<br>300 KPA (44 PSI) COLD |                         |

H4315

*Example of a VIN plate and certification label*

The VIN and other information concerning the vehicle can be found on the certification label affixed to the lock face of the front left-hand door.

## WARNING

**DO NOT** exceed the gross weight or axle loads stated on the certification label attached to the vehicle. Exceeding allowable vehicle and axle loads will increase the risk of tire or suspension failure, increase vehicle brake stopping distance, and adversely affect vehicle handling and stability which may result in a crash or rollover.

## Federal VIN plate



H4066

In addition, the Federal VIN plate is mounted to the vehicle body so that it is visible through the lowest part of the left side of the windshield.

# Parts & Accessories

---

## PARTS AND ACCESSORIES

Your vehicle has been designed, built and tested to cope with a variety of off-road driving conditions, some of which can place the severest possible demands on control systems and components. As such, fitting replacement parts and accessories that have been developed and tested to the same stringent standards as the original components will safeguard the continued reliability, safety and performance of your vehicle.

To augment the vehicle's already impressive performance, a comprehensive range of Land Rover-approved spare parts and accessories is available, enabling the vehicle to fulfil a wide variety of roles, and enhancing and protecting the vehicle in the many tasks to which it can be applied.

Land Rover parts are the only parts built to original equipment specifications AND approved by Land Rover designers; this means that every single part and accessory has been rigorously tested by the same engineering team that designed and built the vehicle and can therefore be guaranteed for twelve months with unlimited mileage.

A full list and description of all accessories is available from your Land Rover Retailer.

## WARNING

**DO NOT fit unapproved accessories or conversions, as they could affect the safety of the vehicle.**

**Land Rover will not accept any liability for death, personal injury or damage to property which may occur as a direct result of fitment of non-approved accessories or the carrying out of non-approved conversions to Land Rover vehicles.**

**Land Rover North America Inc. strongly advises against making any modifications to the suspension or steering system. This could seriously affect the handling and stability of the vehicle leading to loss of control or rollover.**

---

# Parts & Accessories

---

## Electrical equipment

### **WARNING**

**It is extremely hazardous to fit or replace parts or accessories whose installation requires the dismantling of or addition to either the electrical, fuel or SRS airbag systems, as damage to the proper operation of these systems could result.**

---

ALWAYS consult a Land Rover Retailer before fitting any accessory.

Fitting inferior quality parts or accessories, may be dangerous and could invalidate the vehicle warranty.

It is recommended that you always consult a Land Rover Retailer for advice regarding the approval, suitability, installation and use of any parts or accessories before fitting.

### **Travelling abroad**

In certain countries, it is illegal to fit parts which have not been made to the vehicle manufacturers' specification.

Owners should ensure that any parts or accessories fitted to the vehicle while travelling abroad will also conform to the legal requirements of their own country when they return home.

## SRS/airbag

### **WARNING**

**The components that make up the SRS/airbag are sensitive to electrical or physical interference, either of which could easily damage the system and cause inadvertent operation or malfunction of the airbag modules.**

**To prevent any SRS/airbag malfunction, ALWAYS consult a Land Rover Retailer before fitting any of the following:**

- **Electronic equipment such as a mobile phone, two-way radio or in-car entertainment system.**
  - **Accessories attached to the front or side of the vehicle.**
  - **Any modification to the front or side of the vehicle.**
  - **Any modification involving the removal or repair of any wiring or any component in the vicinity of the SRS components, including: the steering wheel, steering column, instrument and facia panels, front door trim and roof headlining.**
  - **Any modification to the facia panels, steering wheel, front door trim or roof headlining.**
-

# Roadside Emergency

---

## Taildoor Emergency Release

EMERGENCY MANUAL OPERATION . . . . 235

## Wheel Changing

TOOL KIT . . . . . 236

WHEEL CHANGING . . . . . 237

REMOVING THE SPARE WHEEL . . . . . 238

CHANGING A WHEEL . . . . . 240

## Emergency Starting

STARTING AN ENGINE WITH A

DISCHARGED BATTERY . . . . . 243

USING BOOSTER CABLES . . . . . 243

CONNECTING THE BOOSTER CABLES . . 244

RECEIVING A BOOSTER START . . . . . 245

GIVING A BOOSTER START . . . . . 246

## Towing the Vehicle

TOWING EYES . . . . . 248

TOWING FOR RECOVERY . . . . . 248

TOWING THE VEHICLE ON FOUR  
WHEELS . . . . . 249

TRANSPORTER OR TRAILER LASHING . . 251

## Fuses

FUSES . . . . . 252

PASSENGER COMPARTMENT

FUSE BOX . . . . . 253

REAR LOADSPACE FUSE BOX . . . . . 257

# Roadside Emergency

---

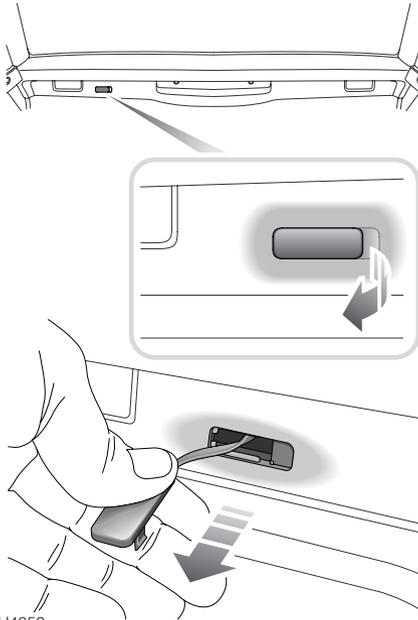
## **Bulb Replacement**

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| REPLACING BULBS .....   | 259 |
| FRONT DIRECTION INDICATOR, SIDELAMP<br>AND FRONT SIDE MARKER LAMP ... | 260 |
| REAR LAMP CLUSTER (Tail, indicator<br>and fog lamps) .....            | 261 |
| REAR SIDE MARKER LAMPS .....  | 262 |
| REVERSE LAMPS .....   | 264 |
| NUMBER PLATE LAMPS .....  | 265 |
| SIDE REPEATER LAMP .....  | 265 |
| FRONT FOG LAMPS .....   | 266 |
| DOOR/PUDDLE/LOWER FOOTWELL<br>LIGHTS .....                            | 267 |
| GLOVEBOX LIGHT .....  | 267 |
| UPPER FOOTWELL LIGHTS .....   | 268 |
| LUGGAGE LIGHTS .....  | 268 |
| TAILDOOR LIGHT .....  | 269 |
| MAP LIGHT .....   | 269 |
| VANITY MIRROR LIGHT .....   | 270 |

# Taildoor Emergency Release

## EMERGENCY MANUAL OPERATION

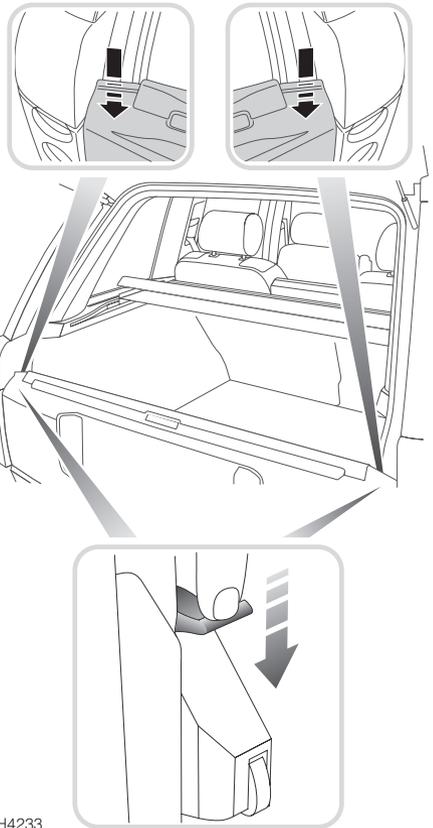
### Upper taildoor:



If the battery has been disconnected or has discharged, the taildoor can be opened manually as follows:

- Fold the rear loadspace cover. See **Folding the loadspace cover from inside the vehicle, 123**, for instructions.
- From the rear loadspace, lever out the plastic tab (see inset).
- Pull the tab to release the upper taildoor.
- Raise the upper taildoor.

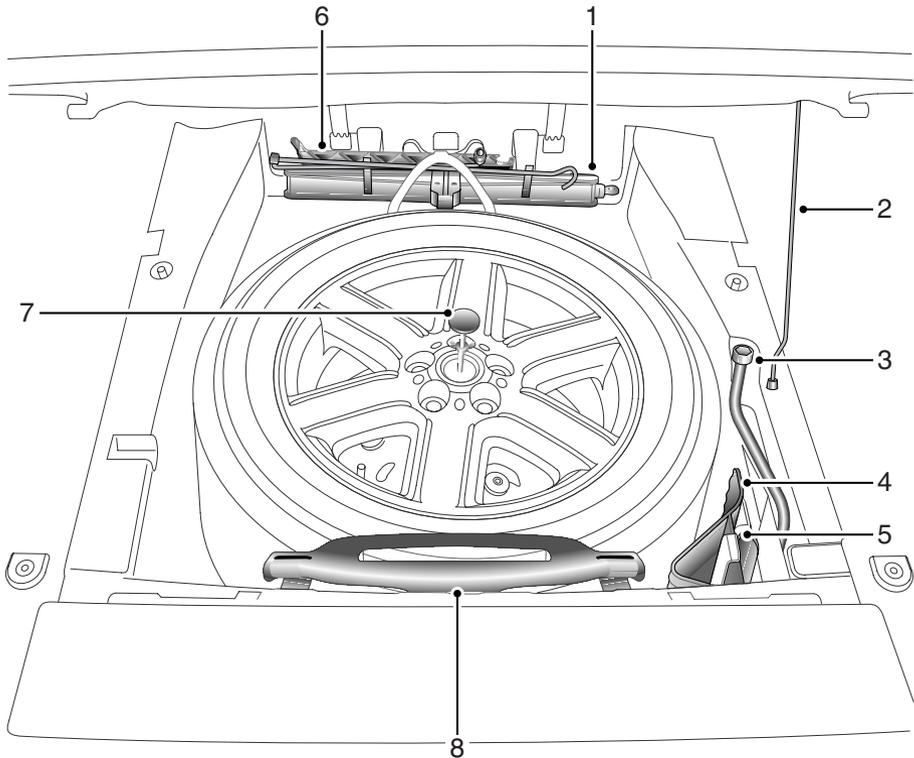
### Lower taildoor:



With the upper taildoor open, push down on the two hidden catches (see upper insets), either side of the taildoor. The catches can be operated either one at a time or simultaneously.

# Wheel Changing

## TOOL KIT



H3829

The wheel change tool kit is stowed in the spare wheel well, under an access hatch in the rear loadspace area.

1. Wheel change jack.
2. Spare wheel hatch support stay.
3. Wheel nut brace.
4. Wheel chocks.
5. Tool bag.\*
6. Taildoor hinge-stop.\*
7. Spare wheel retaining bolt.
8. Spare wheel lifting strap handle.\*

### WARNING

After wheel changing, always secure tools, chocks, jack and replaced wheel in their correct storage positions. Such objects if not properly stowed can become flying missiles in a crash or rollover, potentially causing injury or death.

# Wheel Changing

## Care of the jack

Examine the jack occasionally, clean and grease the moving parts, particularly the screw thread, to prevent corrosion. To avoid contamination, the jack should always be stowed in its fully closed position.

## WHEEL CHANGING

If possible, choose a safe place to stop away from the main thoroughfare. Always ask your passengers to get out of the vehicle and wait in a safe area away from other traffic.

**Note:** Switch on the hazard warning lights and set the hazard warning triangle\*, a suitable distance behind the vehicle, to alert other road users.

Before changing a wheel, ensure the front wheels are in the straight ahead position (if possible), apply the handbrake, select 'P' (Park) and select LOW range in the transfer box.

Turn off the starter switch, remove the key and engage the steering lock. Observe the following precautions:

- Ensure the jack will be positioned on firm, level ground; NEVER on soft ground, or over metal gratings or manhole covers. DO NOT place additional material between the jack and the ground, this may jeopardise the safety of the jacking operation.
- Chock both sides of the wheel diagonally opposite the one to be removed.

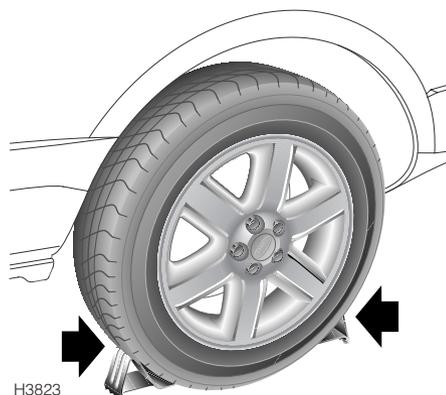
If jacking the vehicle on a slope is unavoidable, place the chocks on the downhill side of the two opposite wheels.

- NEVER raise the vehicle with passengers inside, or with a caravan or trailer connected!

## Using wheel chocks

### WARNING

**Before raising the vehicle, as an additional safety precaution, it is advisable to chock the road wheels in two places.**



If possible, position the vehicle on level ground, chocking both sides of the wheel diagonally opposite the one to be removed.

If jacking the vehicle on a slope is unavoidable, place the chocks on the downhill side of the two opposite wheels.

The wheel chocks are stowed in the spare wheel well, where shown in the **TOOL KIT, 236**.

# Wheel Changing

## REMOVING THE SPARE WHEEL

### Spare wheel

#### WARNING

The wheels are extremely heavy. Take care when lifting and particularly when removing the spare wheel from the rear loadspace and when lifting the replaced wheel back into the spare wheel well.

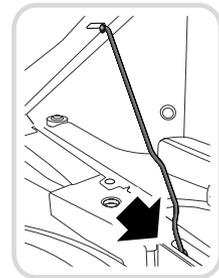
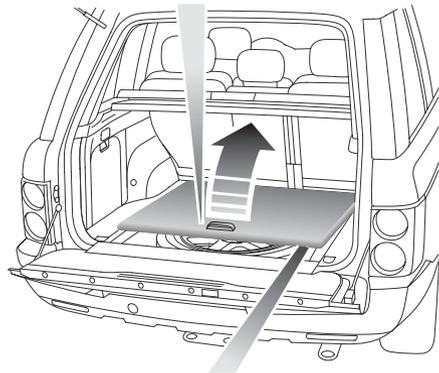
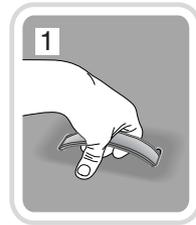
To access the spare wheel well, it is necessary to fold the rear edge of the loadspace cover forward. See **LOADSPACE COVER, 122**, for further details.

#### *With the taildoor open:*

1. Lift the handle to open the spare wheel access hatch.
2. Unclip the support stay from the underside of the hatch and slot the end into the hole to the side of the spare wheel aperture (solid arrow in inset), to keep the access hatch open.

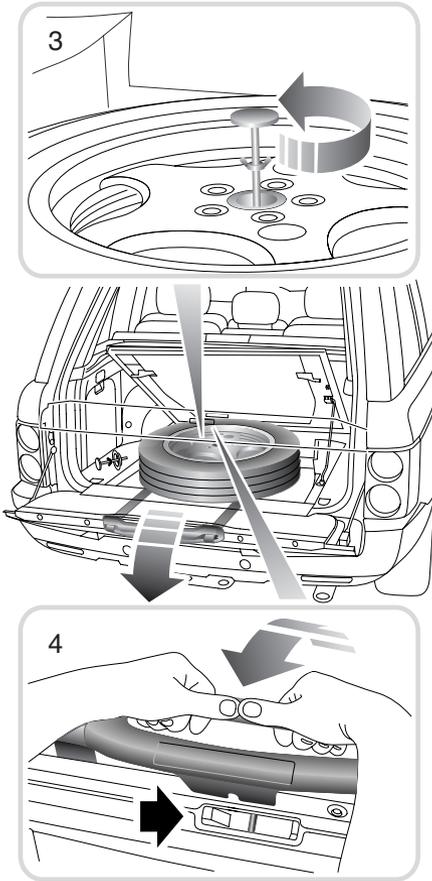
Unhook the wheel changing jack restraining strap and remove the jack and taildoor hinge-stop. Remove the wheel chocks and wheel nut brace, see **TOOL KIT, 236**.

3. Loosen the spare wheel retaining bolt, remove bolt and spare wheel. Then fully close the lower taildoor.



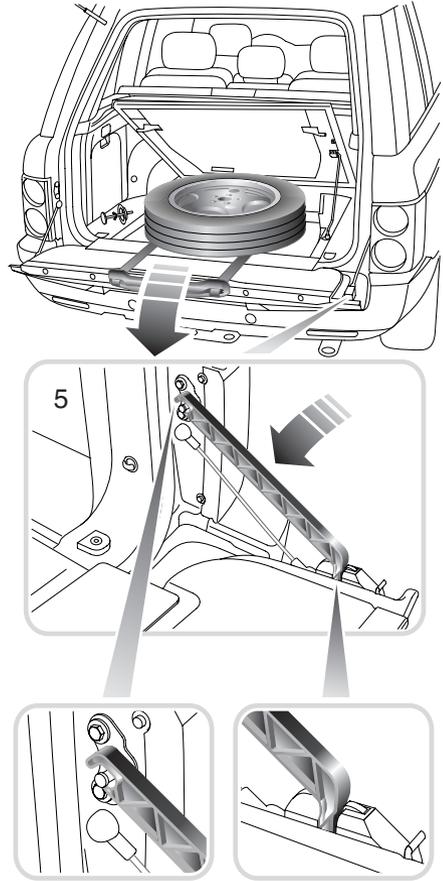
H3824

# Wheel Changing



H5296

4. Attach the spare wheel lifting strap handle to the top of the lower taildoor (as inset 4), ensuring that the two lugs engage fully with the corresponding apertures in the top of the taildoor. Once the handle is correctly located, the taildoor is automatically released. Lower the taildoor; the wheel lifting strap automatically raises the wheel out of the spare wheel well and onto the lower taildoor, therefore improving ease of removal.



H5297

5. Once the wheel has been lifted onto the taildoor, attach the hinge-stop, to prevent the taildoor from lifting. Remove the spare wheel from the load space area.

# Wheel Changing

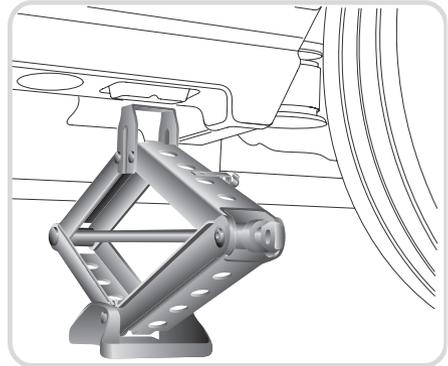
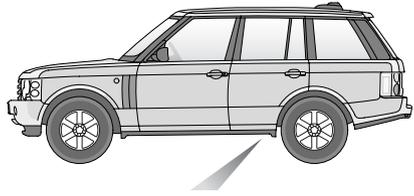
## CHANGING A WHEEL

### Positioning the jack

#### **WARNING**

**NEVER** work beneath the vehicle with the jack as the only means of support. The jack is designed for wheel changing only!

To reduce the risk of the vehicle from tipping off the jack, ensure the jack is positioned on firm, level ground.

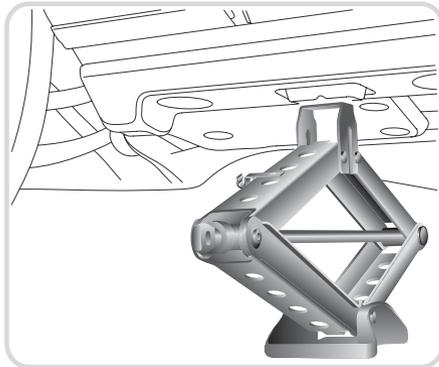
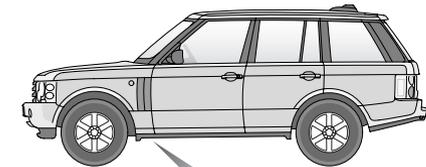


H5277

*Rear jacking point*

#### **WARNING**

**ALWAYS** use the jack lever throughout to minimise any chance of accidental damage or injury.



H5276

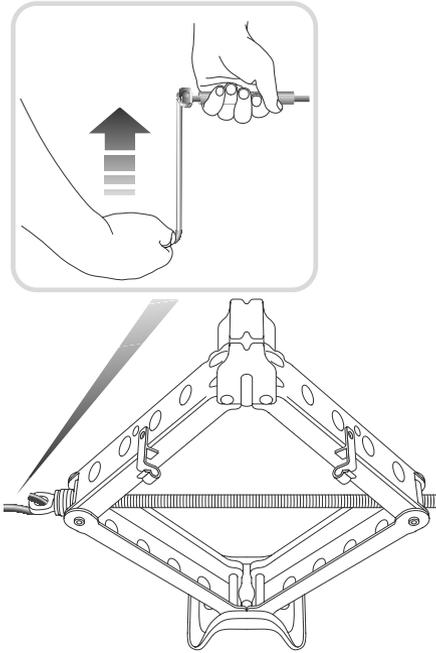
*Front jacking point*

Always position the jack from the side of the vehicle, approximately in line with the appropriate jacking point. Ensure the jack is positioned on firm, level ground.

**ONLY** jack the vehicle using the jack location points described, or damage to the vehicle could occur.

# Wheel Changing

## Operating the jack



H4110

Position the jack under the relevant jacking point, attach the jack cranking handle to the jack. Turn the jack handle clockwise to raise the jack cradle until it engages with the jacking point. Ensure that the base of the jack is in full contact with the road surface.

## Changing a wheel

1. Before raising the vehicle, use the wheel nut brace to slacken the wheel nuts half a turn anti-clockwise.
2. Raise the vehicle until the tire is clear of the ground.
3. Remove the wheel nuts and place to one side to prevent them from being lost.
4. Remove the road wheel.

**Note:** *DO NOT* damage the surface of the wheel by placing it face down on the road.

5. On alloy wheels, use an approved anti-seize compound to treat the wheel mounting bore. This will minimise any tendency for adhesion between the wheel and the bore.

Ensure that no compound comes into contact with the brake components or the flat mounting surfaces of the wheel.

If, due to an emergency situation, this treatment is not practicable, refit the spare wheel for the time being, but remove and treat the wheel at the earliest opportunity.

6. Fit the spare wheel and lightly tighten the wheel nuts, ensuring they are firmly seated. **DO NOT** fully tighten whilst the tire is clear of the ground.

## WARNING

**When fitting a wheel, ensure that the mating faces of the hub and wheel are clean and free from rust or anti-seize compound - any accumulation of dirt or rust could cause the wheel nuts to become loose and result in an accident.**

# Wheel Changing

7. Ensure that the space under and around the vehicle is free from obstructions then lower the vehicle and remove the jack and wheel chocks.
8. Fully tighten the wheel nuts in an alternating pattern until all are tightened. **DO NOT OVERTIGHTEN** by using foot pressure or extension bars on the wheel stud brace, as this could overstress the wheel nuts. Check the wheel nut torque at the earliest opportunity, see **WHEELS AND TIRES, 278**.
9. Using a suitable blunt tool, apply light pressure to the rear of the replaced wheel centre cap and remove. Using hand pressure only, fit the centre cap into the newly fitted wheel. Return tools, chocks, jack and the replaced wheel to their correct storage positions.  
***Note:** Storing the wheel in the spare wheel well can be achieved by following the spare wheel removal procedure in the reverse order.*
10. REMEMBER to change to 'H' (high range) before driving.
11. Finally, check the tire pressure at the earliest opportunity, see **WHEELS AND TIRES, 278**.

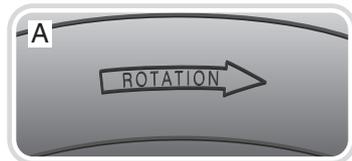
For additional information on your tires, see **CARING FOR YOUR TIRES, 216**.

## Directional Tires\*

Directional tires give greater benefit when they rotate in a forward direction, i.e., when the vehicle is moving forwards. They give enhanced levels of deep-water grip while still maintaining low tire noise generation.

Should a tire be fitted to a vehicle in the wrong directional sense, these benefits will only be maintained if the tire is remounted to the rim so that it rotates in the direction indicated on the sidewall.

There are two types of directional tire and the direction indicators are shown in the illustration below.



H4562

# Emergency Starting

---

## **STARTING AN ENGINE WITH A DISCHARGED BATTERY**

Using booster cables (jump leads) from a donor battery, or a battery fitted to a donor vehicle, is the only approved method of starting a vehicle with a discharged battery. This procedure differs to that used to charge a battery, which should not be attempted with the battery connected to the vehicle.

Push or tow starting is NOT recommended!

### **WARNING**

**ALWAYS wear appropriate eye protection when working with batteries.**

**During normal use, batteries emit explosive hydrogen gas sufficient to cause severe explosions capable of causing serious injury - keep sparks and naked lights away from the engine compartment.**

**DO NOT attempt to start the vehicle if the electrolyte in the battery is suspected of being frozen.**

**Make sure BOTH batteries are of the same voltage (12 volts), and that the booster cables have insulated clamps and are approved for use with 12 volt batteries.**

**DO NOT disconnect the discharged battery.**

**DO NOT connect positive (+) terminals to negative (-) terminals, and ensure booster cables are kept away from any moving parts in the engine compartment.**

**Take care when working near rotating parts of the engine.**

---

## **USING BOOSTER CABLES**

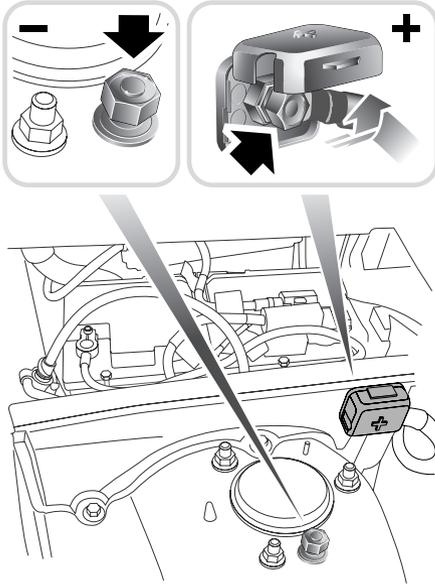
If a donor vehicle is to be used, both vehicles should be parked with their battery locations adjacent to each other. Ensure that the two vehicles do not touch.

Apply the parking brakes and ensure that the transmission of both vehicles is set in neutral ('P' or Park for vehicles with automatic transmission).

Turn off the starter switch and ALL electrical equipment of BOTH vehicles, then follow the connection instructions on the following page.

# Emergency Starting

## CONNECTING THE BOOSTER CABLES



### Booster cable connection points

The booster cable connection points (both negative (-) and positive (+)) located in the engine compartment, are remote from the vehicle battery. These are provided to improve personal safety when attempting to receive or give a booster start.

The positive (+) connection point, shown in the left inset of the illustration, is protected by a cover to prevent an inadvertent connection and to avoid contamination. Open the cover before attempting to connect a booster cable.

The negative (-) connection point is a special nut, located on the suspension turret (see illustration).

Always use these connection points when connecting booster cables and ensure the cables are kept clear of any moving parts in the engine compartment.

### WARNING

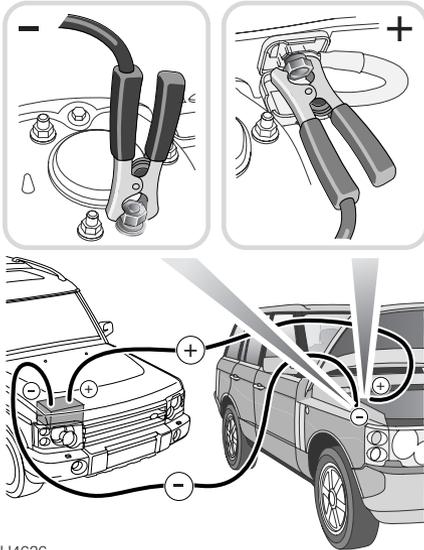
**ALWAYS** use the recommended connection points.

**DO NOT** attach booster cables to the positive terminal of the vehicle battery. The positive terminal is equipped with a pyrotechnic device, that disconnects the battery as a safety precaution when the vehicle is involved in a collision. Attaching a booster cable to the positive terminal may cause inadvertent firing of the device - this may result in personal injury or death and may damage the vehicle.

**ENSURE** that each connection is securely made and that there is no risk of the clips accidentally slipping or being pulled from connection points - this could cause sparking, which could lead to explosion or fire.

# Emergency Starting

## RECEIVING A BOOSTER START



H4636

### IMPORTANT INFORMATION

Ensure that you have read and fully understood the information and warnings given earlier in this section - see **STARTING AN ENGINE WITH A DISCHARGED BATTERY, 243, CONNECTING THE BOOSTER CABLES, 244** and **USING BOOSTER CABLES, 243**, BEFORE attempting to give or receive a booster start.

### WARNING

**DO NOT connect the BLACK cable to the negative terminal of the discharged battery, this could cause sparking, which could lead to fire or explosion. Always use the negative (-) connection point - if in doubt, seek qualified assistance.**

**Always adopt the following procedure, ensuring the cables are connected in the order shown below:**

1. Connect one end of the RED booster cable to the positive (+) terminal of the DONOR battery or the donor vehicle's positive (+) connection point.
2. Connect the other end of the RED booster cable to the positive (+) connection point in the engine compartment of the Range Rover (see left inset).
3. Connect one end of the BLACK booster cable to the negative (-) terminal of the DONOR battery or the donor vehicle's negative (-) connection point.
4. Connect the other end of the BLACK booster cable to the negative (-) connection point in the engine compartment of the Range Rover (see right inset).

### WARNING

**ENSURE that each connection is securely made and that there is no risk of the clips accidentally slipping or being pulled from the connection points/battery terminal - this could cause sparking, which could lead to fire or explosion.**

Check that the cables are clear of any moving parts of both engines, then start the engine of the donor vehicle and allow it to idle for a few minutes.

Now start the vehicle with the discharged battery. Once both engines are running normally, allow them to idle for two minutes before switching off the donor vehicle engine.

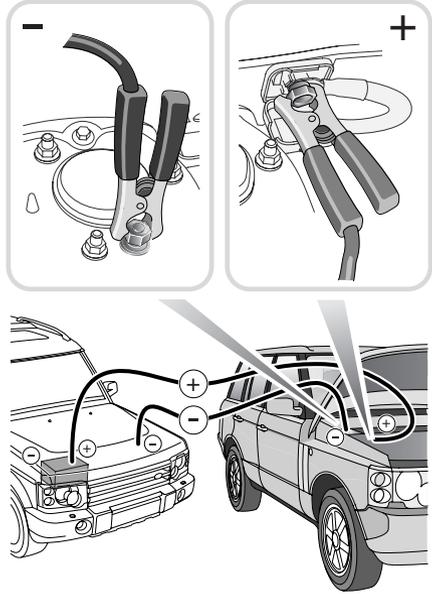
DO NOT switch on any electrical circuits on the previously disabled vehicle until AFTER the booster cables have been removed.

# Emergency Starting

Disconnecting the booster cables must be an EXACT reversal of the procedure used to connect them, i.e. disconnect the BLACK cable from the negative (-) connection on your vehicle FIRST.

If the vehicle power supply has been interrupted, ABS and DSC will be deactivated (the relevant warning lights will illuminate). They can be reactivated by driving a short distance or by turning the steering wheel from full lock to lock, with the engine running and the vehicle stationary. The ABS and DSC warning lights will extinguish when the systems are reactivated.

## GIVING A BOOSTER START



H4637

### IMPORTANT INFORMATION

Ensure that you have read and fully understood the information and warnings given earlier in this section - see **STARTING AN ENGINE WITH A DISCHARGED BATTERY, 243**, **CONNECTING THE BOOSTER CABLES, 244** and **USING BOOSTER CABLES, 243**, BEFORE attempting to give or receive a booster start.

# Emergency Starting

---

## WARNING

**DO NOT connect the BLACK cable to the negative terminal of the discharged battery, this could cause sparking which, could lead to fire or explosion. Always use the negative (-) connection point. If in doubt, seek qualified assistance.**

---

**Always adopt the following procedure, ensuring the cables are connected in the order shown below:**

1. Connect one end of the RED booster cable to the positive (+) connection point (see left inset).
2. Connect the other end of the RED booster cable to the positive (+) connection point (if fitted) on the disabled vehicle, or positive (+) terminal of the discharged battery.
3. Connect one end of the BLACK booster cable to the negative (-) connection point (see right inset).
4. Connect the other end of the BLACK booster cable to the negative (-) connection point (if fitted) on the disabled vehicle, or to a good earth point (e.g. an engine mounting or other unpainted metal surface) at least 0.5m from the battery and well away from fuel and brake lines.

## WARNING

**ENSURE that each connection is securely made and that there is no risk of the clips accidentally slipping or being pulled from the connection points/battery terminal - this could cause sparking, which could lead to fire or explosion.**

---

Check that the cables are clear of any moving parts of both engines, then start the engine of the donor vehicle and allow it to idle for a few minutes.

Now start the vehicle with the discharged battery. Once both engines are running normally, allow them to idle for two minutes before switching off the donor vehicle engine.

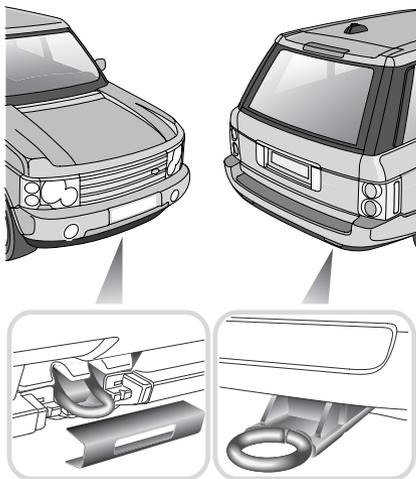
DO NOT switch on any electrical circuits on the previously disabled vehicle until AFTER the booster cables have been removed.

Disconnecting the booster cables must be an EXACT reversal of the procedure used to connect them, i.e. disconnect the BLACK cable from the negative (-) connection on the previously disabled vehicle FIRST.

# Towing the Vehicle

---

## TOWING EYES



H5273

### WARNING

**The towing eyes at the front and rear of the vehicle are designed for on-road vehicle recovery purposes only and must NOT be used to tow a trailer or caravan.**

---

## Front

A single towing eye, set behind a removable panel in the front spoiler is provided at the front of the vehicle for on-road recovery.

Before driving off-road, remove the panel from the spoiler as a precaution against accidental loss.

**Removing the panel:** Using both hands, one either side of the towing eye, squeeze the cover and pull away from the vehicle. To replace the cover, push it firmly back into position.

## Rear

The towing eye provided at the rear of the vehicle can be used for towing your vehicle or towing another vehicle in recovery situations.

## TOWING FOR RECOVERY

Most vehicle recovery specialists will load your vehicle onto a trailer - this is the recommended method. However, if it is necessary to recover the vehicle by towing with all four wheels on the ground, observe the following procedure:

# Towing the Vehicle

## TOWING THE VEHICLE ON FOUR WHEELS

### WARNING

**ALWAYS** adhere to the following procedure when towing the vehicle with all four wheels on the ground. Failure to do so could result in unintended vehicle movement or unanticipated vehicle conditions.

When preparing to tow the vehicle on four wheels, it is essential that neutral is selected on the transfer gearbox - before attempting to select transfer neutral, ensure that the parking brake is properly and securely applied.

### IMPORTANT INFORMATION

Your vehicle has permanent four-wheel drive and is fitted with a steering lock. The following instructions must be carried out carefully to prevent damage to the vehicle.

**CAUTION: Leaving the starter switch in position 'I' or 'II' for extended periods may drain the vehicle battery, which can lead to a voltage drop and ultimately to a discharged battery.**

1. Secure the towing attachment from the recovery vehicle to the front towing eye of the vehicle to be recovered, see **TOWING EYES, 248**.
2. With the parking brake applied, insert the starter key and turn it to position `II`.
3. Place the gear lever in `N` (neutral).
4. Turn the starter switch to position `0`.
5. Insert a fuse (5 amps) into position 37 of the passenger compartment fuse box, see **PASSENGER COMPARTMENT FUSE BOX, 253**.
6. Turn the starter switch to position `II`. The transfer gearbox will automatically select transfer neutral - wait until the message centre displays `TRANSFER NEUTRAL`.
7. Place the gear lever in `P` (park).
8. Turn the starter switch to position `I` (DO NOT turn the starter switch to position `0`).  
*Note: The transfer gearbox is now in neutral and the steering wheel is unlocked. The vehicle MUST remain in this condition whilst being towed on all four wheels.*
9. If required, the starter switch may be turned to position `II`, to operate the brake lamps and direction indicators.
10. Release the parking brake before towing the vehicle.

### WARNING

**DO NOT remove the key or turn the starter switch to position `0` while the vehicle is in motion.**

**Without the engine running, the brake servo and power steering pump cannot provide assistance; greater effort will therefore be required to operate the brake pedal and turn the steering wheel. Longer stopping distances will also be experienced.**

### IMPORTANT INFORMATION

If the above conditions are met, the vehicle may be towed for up to 6 hours at a maximum speed of 80 km/h (50 mph).

# Towing the Vehicle

---

## Recreational/motorhome towing

### IMPORTANT INFORMATION

If, for any reason, power from the battery is lost and transfer neutral cannot be engaged, the vehicle can still be towed for up to 3 hours at a maximum speed of 48 km/h (30 mph).

If the main gearbox cannot be set in neutral, the vehicle must NOT be towed under any circumstances.

If you intend to tow your vehicle behind a motorhome or recreational vehicle, follow the procedure specified for 'TOWING THE VEHICLE ON FOUR WHEELS'. Failure to follow this procedure may result in damage to the transmission.

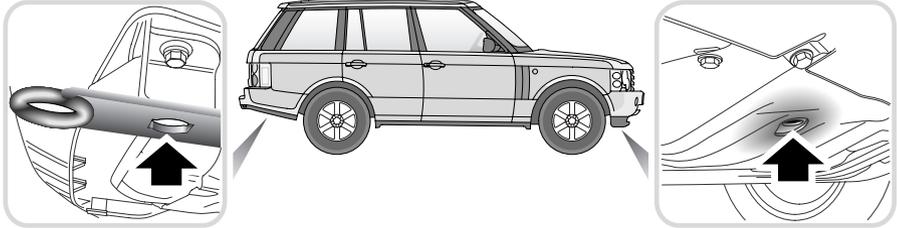
## After towing on four wheels

To engage the transfer gearbox after towing, perform the following steps:

1. Apply the parking brake and verify that 'N' (neutral) is selected in the main gearbox.
2. Turn the starter switch to position '0'.
3. Remove the fuse from position 37 of the passenger compartment fuse box.
4. Turn the starter switch to position 'II'. The transfer gearbox will engage and 'TRANSFER NEUTRAL' will extinguish from the message centre display. Press the range change switch to select either HIGH or LOW range.
5. Select 'P' (park) in the main gearbox.
6. Turn the starter switch to position '0'.

# Towing the Vehicle

## TRANSPORTER OR TRAILER LASHING



H5274

Pairs of lashing eyes are fixed to the underside of the vehicle - at the front (to the rear of the front wheels) and at the rear (backward of the rear wheels). DO NOT secure lashing hooks or trailer fixings to any other part of the vehicle.

**Note:** *The front and rear lashing eyes are for lashing only and must NOT be used for towing.*

### IMPORTANT INFORMATION

Once the vehicle is loaded onto the trailer and if the vehicle electronics are operational, the electronic air suspension (EAS) must be set to Access height. This should be done BEFORE securing the vehicle to the trailer.

# Fuses

## FUSES

Fuses are simple circuit devices which protect electrical equipment against the effects of excess current.

A 'blown' fuse is indicated when the electrical equipment it protects becomes inoperative.

Fuses are colour coded to help identify their amperage, as follows:

### Fuse colours

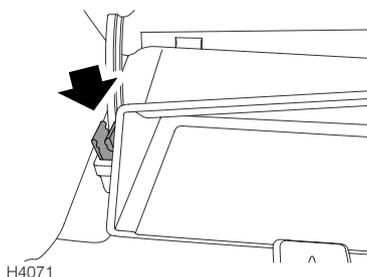
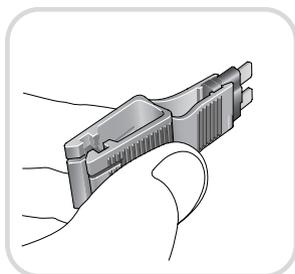
|        |         |
|--------|---------|
| VIOLET | 3 amp   |
| TAN    | 5 amp   |
| BROWN  | 7.5 amp |
| RED    | 10 amp  |
| BLUE   | 15 amp  |
| YELLOW | 20 amp  |
| WHITE  | 25 amp  |
| GREEN  | 30 amp  |
| ORANGE | 40 amp  |

### Checking or renewing a fuse

Always turn the starter switch to position 'O' and switch off the affected electrical circuit before removing a fuse.

### WARNING

**To prevent a possible fire or damage to the electrical system, fit only replacement fuses of the same rating and type. Do not replace a blown fuse with a fuse of a higher amperage rating. Always rectify the cause of the failure before replacing a fuse. Seek qualified assistance if necessary.**

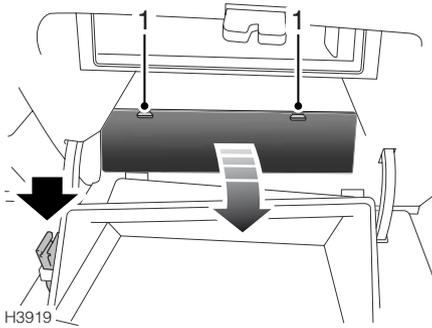


The fuse removal tweezers are located in the glovebox (arrowed in illustration). Press the tweezers onto the head of the suspect fuse (as shown) and pull to remove. A break in the wire inside the fuse indicates that the fuse has 'blown' and must be replaced.

Always replace a fuse with another of the same value, however, if the replacement fuse blows immediately the circuit MUST be checked by a qualified Retailer.

# Fuses

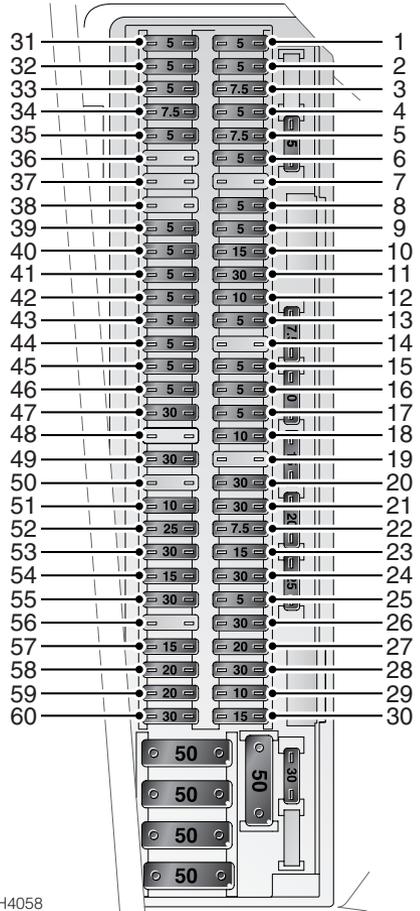
## PASSENGER COMPARTMENT FUSE BOX



The passenger compartment fuse box is fitted behind the glovebox; to access the fuses, open the glovebox, then press down on the catches (1) whilst pulling the cover rearwards. The solid arrow in the illustration indicates the location of the fuse removal tool.

**Note:** There are a number of spare fuses included within the fuse box (see fuse box label).

A label in the fuse box cover shows the circuits protected, the fuse values and their locations. They are also listed on the following page.



H4058

# Fuses

## Fuse specification

| Fuse number | Rating (amps) | Circuit protected   |
|-------------|---------------|---|
| 1           | 5             | Instruments   |
| 2           | 5             | Heated rear window, Rear blower, Heated seats - rear, Cigar lighter/Front Acc socket Trailer socket, Headlamp wash/wipe |
| 3           | 7.5           | Fuel cooler fan (diesel vehicles only)  |
| 4           | 5             | Exterior lamps, Instrument illumination, Approach lamps   |
| 5           | 7.5           | Diagnostics, Alternator, Transmission   |
| 6           | 5             | Rear view mirror, Parking distance control*   |
| 7           | -             | -   |
| 8           | -             | -   |
| 9           | 5             | Brake lamps, Exterior lamps, Instrument illumination, Cruise control Steering wheel audio controls                      |
| 10          | 15            | Horn  |
| 11          | 30            | Central locking, External mirrors, Electric windows - front   |
| 12          | 10            | Air conditioning, Heated seats - front*   |
| 13          | 5             | Anti-lock Braking System, Dynamic Stability Control, Transmission, Interior clock                                       |
| 14          | 5             | Auxiliary heater (diesel models only), Audio system, On board monitor, On board computer                                |
| 15          | 5             | Central locking, Diagnostics, Electric windows - front, Power assisted steering   |
| 16          | -             | -   |
| 17          | 5             | Approach lamps  |
| 18          | 10            | immobilization  |
| 19          | -             | -   |
| 20          | 30            | Driver's seat, Steering column adjust   |
| 21          | 30            | Passenger's seat  |

# Fuses

| Fuse number | Rating (amps) | Circuit protected  |
|-------------|---------------|--|
|             |               | Circuit protected  |
| 22          | 5             | Telephone, Traffic messaging (TMC)                               |
| 23          | 15            | Steering column adjust   |
| 24          | 30            | Central locking,<br>Exterior mirrors<br>Electric windows - front |
| 25          | 5             | immobilization   |
| 26          | 30            | Windshield wipers  |
| 27          | 20            | Glove box light,<br>Interior lights,<br>Windshield washers       |
| 28          | 30            | Headlamp cleaning*   |
| 29          | 10            | Heated steering wheel*   |
| 30          | -             | -  |
| 31          | 5             | Engine management,<br>immobilization                             |
| 32          | 5             | Xenon headlamps  |
| 33          | 5             | Transmission   |
| 34          | 7.5           | Air conditioning,<br>Blower, Heated front shield                 |
| 35          | 5             | Hill descent control (HDC),<br>Dynamic Stability Control         |
| 36          | -             | -  |
| 37          | 5             | Transfer neutral - to be inserted when 4-wheel towing            |
| 38          | -             | -  |
| 39          | 5             | immobilization   |
| 40          | 5             | CD autochanger   |
| 41          | 5             | Rain sensor,<br>Rear window wash/wipe, Headlamp wash/wipe        |
| 42          | 5             | Vanity mirror illumination                                       |
| 43          | 5             | Alarm, Companion   |
| 44          | 5             | <b>Airbag SRS - DO NOT REMOVE</b>                                |
| 45          | 5             | Instruments  |
| 46          | 5             | Instruments  |
| 47          | 30            | Heated shield washers,<br>Heated wiper blades                    |
| 48          | 10            | DVD player   |

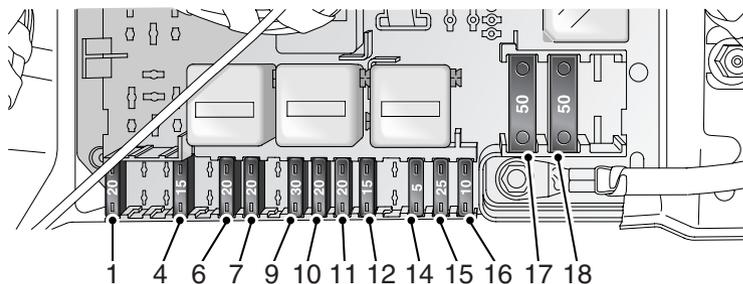
# Fuses

---

| <b>Fuse number</b> | <b>Rating (amps)</b> | Circuit protected   |
|--------------------|----------------------|---|
| 49                 | 30                   | Navigation system,<br>On-board computer,<br>On-board monitor,<br>Audio system |
| 50                 | -                    | -   |
| 51                 | 10                   | Anti-lock Braking System,<br>Dynamic Stability Control,<br>Fuel pump,         |
| 52                 | 25                   | Heated seats - front*   |
| 53                 | 30                   | Starter switch  |
| 54                 | 15                   | Transmission  |
| 55                 | 30                   | Anti-lock Braking System,<br>Dynamic Stability Control                        |
| 56                 | -                    | -   |
| 57                 | 15                   | Air suspension  |
| 58                 | 20                   | Sunroof   |
| 59                 | 20                   | Auxiliary heater (diesel models only),<br>Independent heater                  |
| 60                 | 30                   | Central locking,<br>Electric windows - rear                                   |

# Fuses

## REAR LOADSPACE FUSE BOX



H5334

The fuse box is situated on the right hand side of the loadspace behind the rear loadspace access hatch. Pull the handle to open the panel - see **REAR LOADSPACE ACCESS HATCH, 120**.

**Owners are advised against removing or replacing the relays (identified as R1-R10) and fusible links (MF1-MF3). Failure of any of these items should be investigated by a qualified technician.**

# Fuses

## Fuse specification

| Fuse number | Rating (amps) | Circuit protected  |
|-------------|---------------|--|
| 1           | 20            | Cigar lighter/socket   |
| 2           | 10            | Navigation system, Audio system,<br>Telephone,<br>On board monitor,<br>On board computer |
| 3           | 30            | Audio system   |
| 4           | 15            | Trailer socket   |
| 5           | 10            | Rear seat entertainment,<br>VICS (Japan)   |
| 6           | 20            | Trailer socket   |
| 7           | 20            | Auxiliary power socket (loadspace)   |
| 8           | 5             | Rear view camera   |
| 9           | 30            | Heated rear window   |
| 10          | 20            | Rear screen wash/wipe  |
| 11          | 10            | Heated rear seats*-LH  |
| 12          | 15            | Rear blower  |
| 13          | 10            | Heated rear seats*-RH  |
| 14          | 5             | Remote handset   |
| 15          | 25            | Fuel pump  |
| 16          | 10            | Central locking system, taildoor   |
| 17          | 50            | Trailer socket   |
| 18          | 50            | Air suspension   |
| 19          | -             |  |

# Bulb Replacement

## REPLACING BULBS

Check the operation of all exterior lamps before you drive the vehicle.

### IMPORTANT INFORMATION

Before replacing a bulb, always switch off the starter switch and appropriate lighting switch to prevent any possibility of a short circuit. Only replace bulbs with the same type and specification.

## Replacement bulbs

**Note:** All bulbs must be rated at 12 volts

| Bulb                            | Watts   |
|---------------------------------|---------|
| Headlamps normal beam (Halogen) | 55 (H7) |
| Headlamps high beam             | 55 (H7) |
| Front side lamps                | 5       |
| Direction indicators            | 21      |
| Front fog lamps                 | 55 (H7) |
| Side repeater lamps             | 5       |
| Reverse lamps                   | 6 (H6)  |
| Rear fog guard lamps            | 21      |
| Tail lamps                      | 5       |
| Number plate lamps              | 5       |
| Door/puddle lights              | 5       |
| Interior lights                 | 6       |
| Luggage/footwell lights         | 5       |
| Luggage/taildoor lights         | 6       |
| Glovebox light                  | 5       |
| Vanity mirror light             | 1.2     |

**Note:** In certain territories it is a legal requirement to carry spare bulbs, in case of bulb failure. A replacement bulb kit is available as an approved accessory from your Land Rover Retailer.

## Halogen bulbs

Halogen bulbs are used for front fog and reverse lamps. Take care NOT to touch this type of bulb with your fingers; always use a cloth to handle them. If necessary, clean the bulb with methylated spirits to remove fingerprints.

### WARNING

- **Bi-Xenon lamp units operate at a high temperature. If they have recently been in use, allow sufficient time for them to cool down before touching them.**
- **Used xenon lamp units contain mercury, which is hazardous and can be injurious to health.**
- **The xenon system generates up to 28 000 volts and contact with this voltage could lead to a fatality. Ensure that headlamps are switched off and switch off the starter switch before working on the system.**
- **Replacement or maintenance of xenon lamps should be carried out only by qualified personnel.**



Seek advice about the proper disposal of Bi-Xenon lamp units from a Land Rover Retailer or your local authority.

# Bulb Replacement

## Light emitting diodes (LEDs)

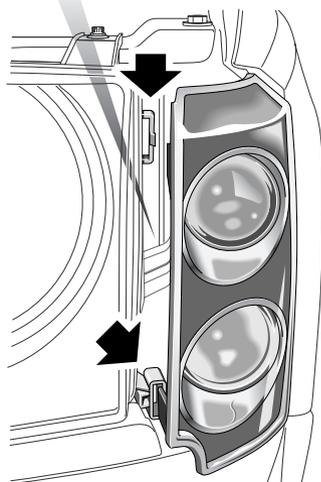
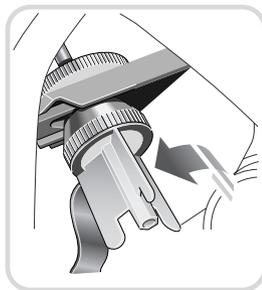
Controls, displays inside your vehicle have light emitting diodes (LEDs) behind a cover as their light source. These LEDs resemble conventional lasers and are classified by law as 'Class 1 light emitting diodes'. Replacement LEDs should be fitted only by qualified personnel.

### WARNING

**DO NOT** remove the cover or expose the eyes directly to the unfiltered light source for several hours at a time, as this could cause irritation to the iris.

## FRONT DIRECTION INDICATOR, SIDELAMP AND FRONT SIDE MARKER LAMP

### Lamp unit removal



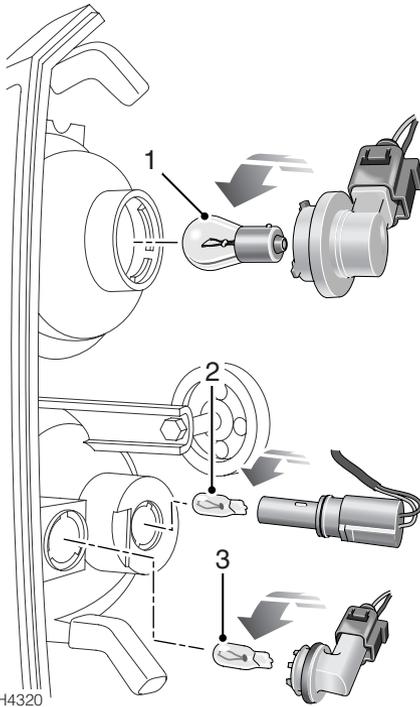
H3811

From inside the engine compartment, unscrew the nut (counter-clockwise), to release the lamp unit (see inset). The nut is attached to a safety strap, which prevents it from falling into the engine.

Keeping hold of the lamp unit, ease it away from the vehicle body, disengaging the two locating lugs (arrowed).

# Bulb Replacement

## Bulb replacement



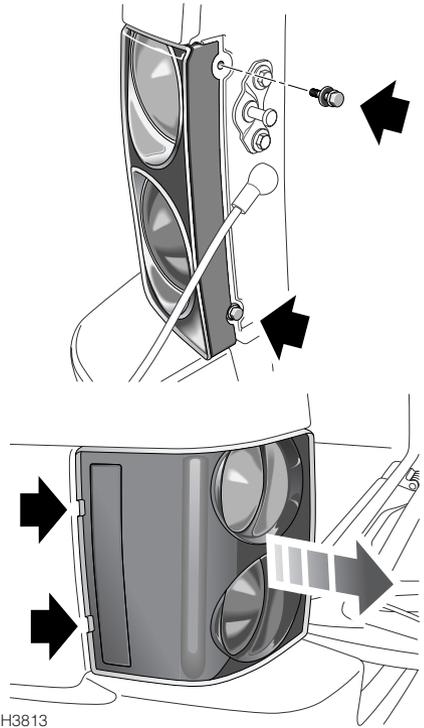
1. Direction indicator lamp
2. Sidelamp
3. Front side marker lamp

Having released the lamp unit from the front of the vehicle, turn the relevant bulb holder 90° counter-clockwise and pull to release. Twist and pull to remove the direction indicator bulb, pull to remove either of the other bulbs.

### Refitting the lamp unit

When refitting the lamp unit, position the two lugs first, then position the lamp unit, so that the securing bolt lines up correctly with the thumbwheel. Tighten the nut (turn clockwise) to fix the unit in position.

## REAR LAMP CLUSTER (Tail, indicator and fog lamps)

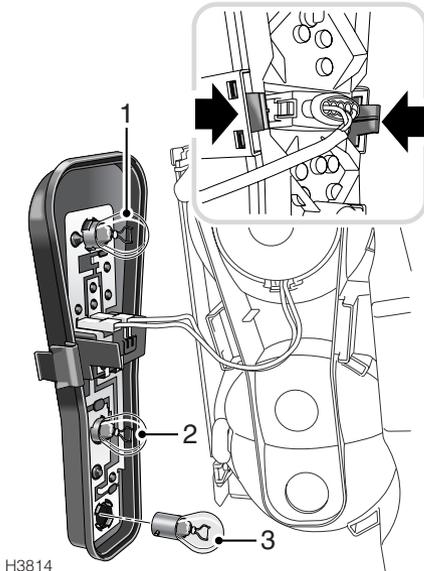


From outside the vehicle and with the taildoor fully open, remove the two retaining screws (as shown). From the side of the vehicle, use a suitable tool to carefully lever the unit away from the vehicle and rearwards, to release the lamp unit from the vehicle.

Be careful to avoid damage to the paintwork, when levering the lamp unit from the vehicle. Cover any tool used with a cloth and apply gentle and constant pressure. Do not use excessive force - if in doubt, consult your Retailer.

# Bulb Replacement

## REAR SIDE MARKER LAMPS



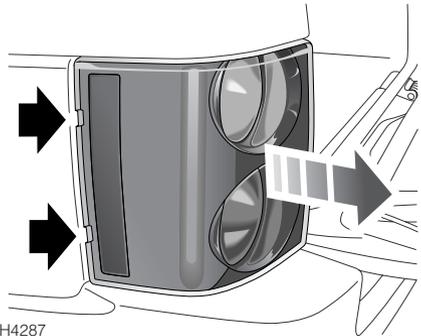
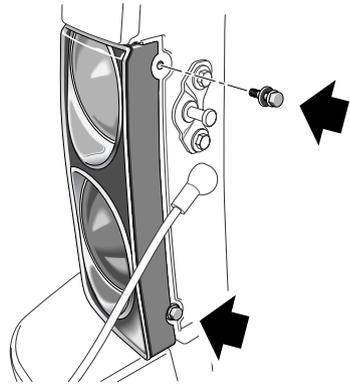
H3814

Press the two tabs (arrowed in inset) together, to release the lamp unit from the lens assembly. Twist and pull the appropriate bulb to release.

The bulbs are located as follows:

1. Rear indicator bulb.
2. Tail lamp bulb.
3. Rear fog guard lamp bulb.

**Note:** The brake lamps and high mounted stop lamp fitted to your vehicle, are LED lamps and should be replaced by your Retailer if they fail.



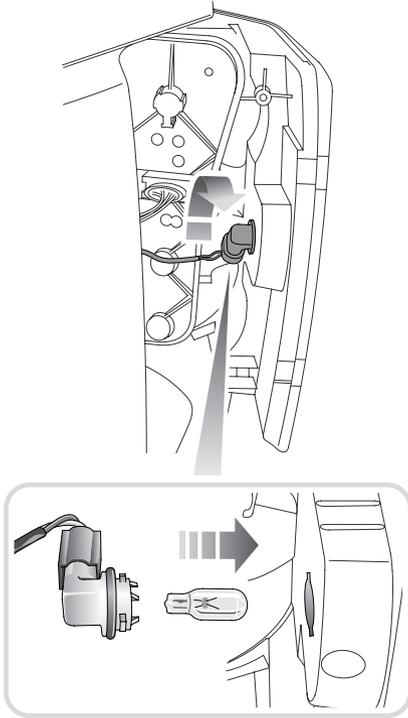
H4287

From outside the vehicle and with the taildoor fully open, remove the two retaining screws (as shown). From the side of the vehicle, use a suitable tool to carefully lever the unit away from the vehicle and rearwards, to access the side marker bulb holder.

Be careful to avoid damage to the paintwork, when levering the lamp unit away from the vehicle. Cover any tool used with a cloth and apply gentle and constant pressure. Do not use excessive force - if in doubt, consult your Retailer.

# Bulb Replacement

---

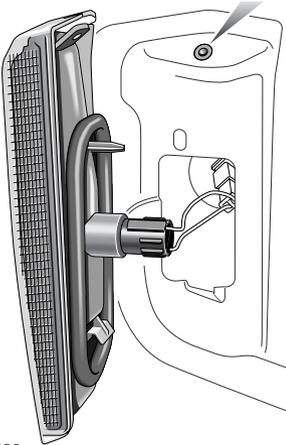
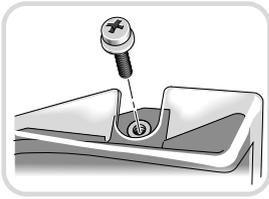


H4288

Twist the bulb holder to release it from the lamp unit (as arrowed in illustration), then pull the bulb to remove (see inset).

# Bulb Replacement

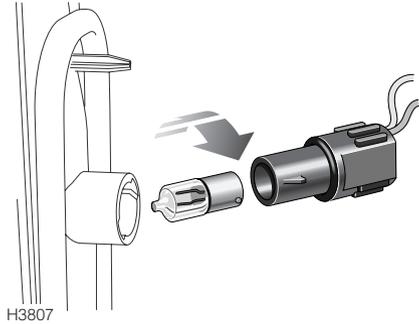
## REVERSE LAMPS



H3806

The reverse lamps are located on either side of the rear number plate, mounted on the lower taildoor.

With the upper taildoor raised, remove the screw (see inset) to release the lamp unit from the taildoor.

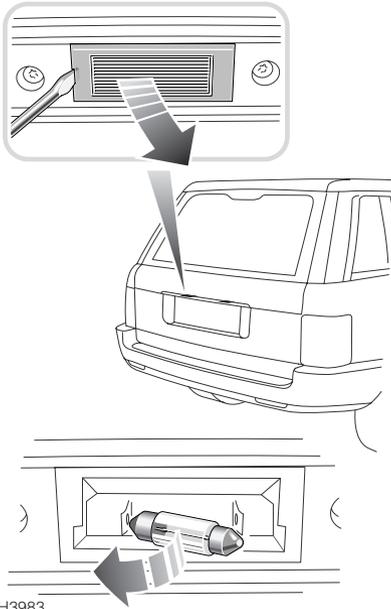


Twist and pull the bulb holder to release from the rear of the lamp unit, then pull the bulb to remove.

**Note:** Do not touch the replacement bulb glass with your fingers. If necessary, clean the bulb with methylated spirits.

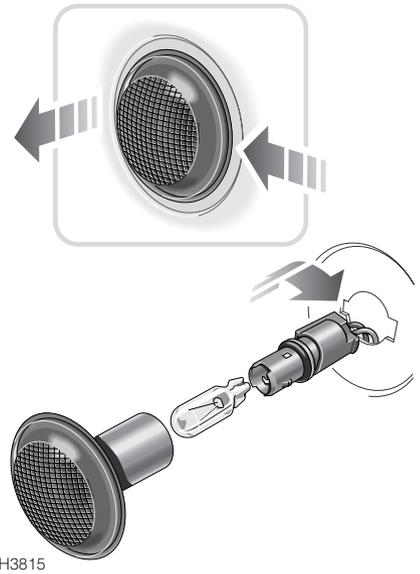
# Bulb Replacement

## NUMBER PLATE LAMPS



With the upper taildoor open and using a suitable tool, lever the lens from the taildoor (see inset). Pull the bulb to remove.

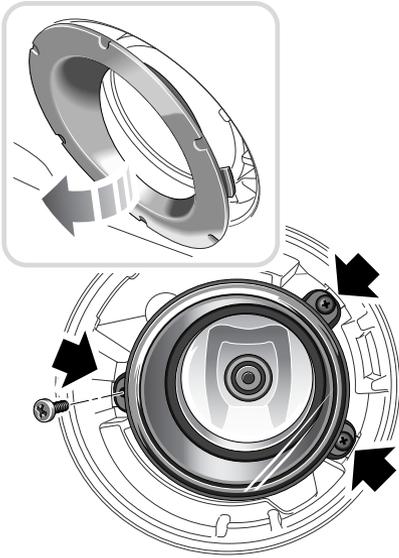
## SIDE REPEATER LAMP



Push the lens firmly towards the front of the vehicle and withdraw the lamp unit from the fender. Twist to release the bulb holder from the lens unit, then pull the bulb from its socket.

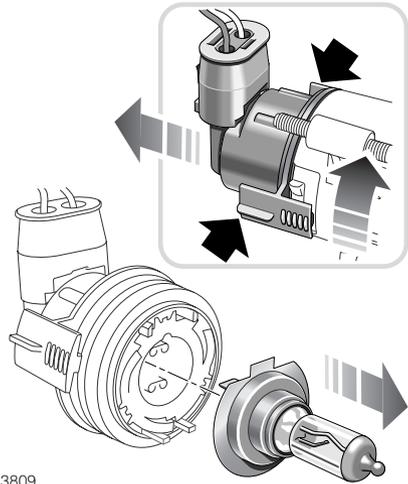
# Bulb Replacement

## FRONT FOG LAMPS



H3808

To access the bulb; using a suitable tool, lever the fog lamp surround panel out of the front bumper. Remove the three securing screws to release the lamp unit. Ease the unit out of the front bumper.



H3809

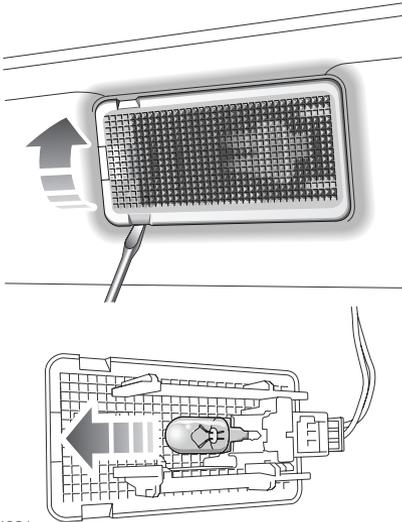
Depress the two catches (solid arrows in upper inset), then twist and pull to remove the bulb holder from the lens assembly. Pull the bulb from the holder to remove.

Before fitting the replacement bulb, note the 'flat' and the tab on the otherwise circular shape of the bulb mounting flange. The tab acts as a key to enable correct positioning of the bulb in the bulb holder.

**Note:** Do not touch the bulb glass with your fingers. If necessary, clean the bulb with methylated spirits.

# Bulb Replacement

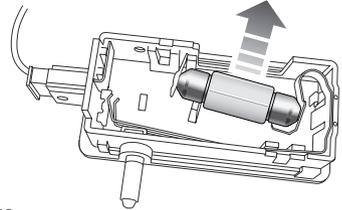
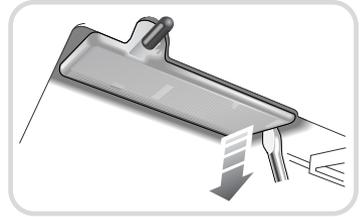
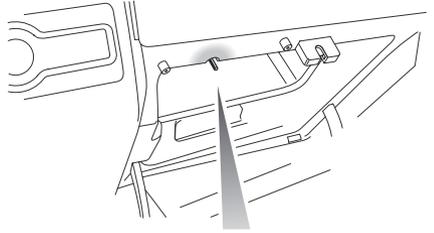
## DOOR/PUDDLE/LOWER FOOTWELL LIGHTS



H4081

With the relevant door open, insert a small flat-bladed screwdriver under the forward edge of the lens. to lever the light unit out of the door. Pull the bulb out to remove.

## GLOVEBOX LIGHT

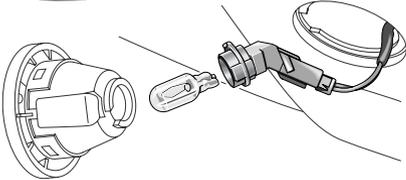
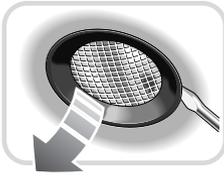


H4082

Insert a small flat-bladed screwdriver into the indent (see inset) on the side of the light unit, and carefully prise the unit from the glovebox panel. Remove the bulb from its clips.

# Bulb Replacement

## UPPER FOOTWELL LIGHTS

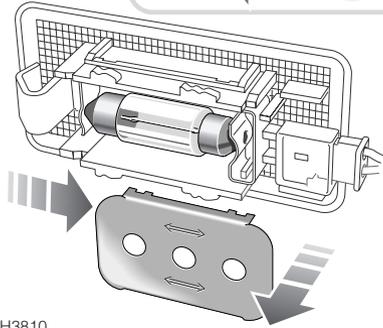
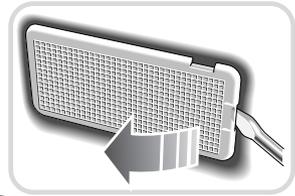


H3884

Insert a small flat-bladed screwdriver under the side of the light unit and carefully prise the unit out of the footwell.

Twist and pull the bulb holder access the bulb and pull the bulb to remove.

## LUGGAGE LIGHTS



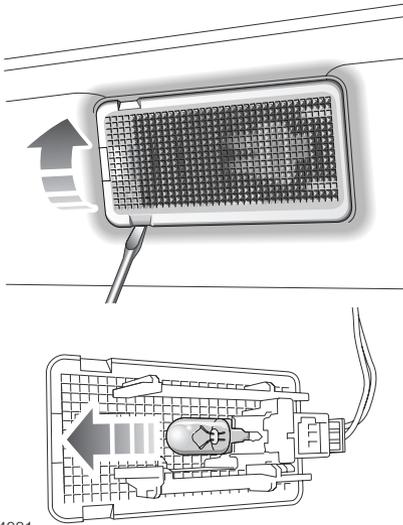
H3810

Insert a small flat-bladed screwdriver into the indent on the side of the lens and carefully prise the lens from the light unit (see inset).

Slide the metal plate to the right and then pull away from the back of the light unit (see main illustration). Pull the bulb to remove.

# Bulb Replacement

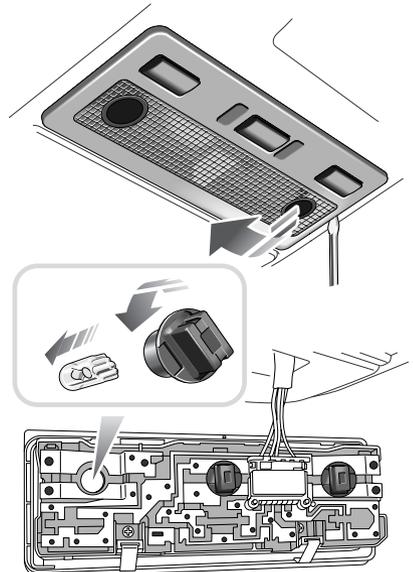
## TAILDOOR LIGHT



H4081

Insert a small flat-bladed screwdriver under the lens and carefully prise the lens from the light unit. Pull the bulb to remove.

## MAP LIGHT



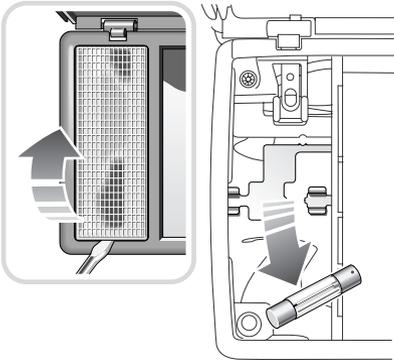
H3883

Insert a small flat-bladed screwdriver into the indent on the side of the lens (as illustrated) and prise the lens from the light unit. Twist the relevant bulb holder counter-clockwise and withdraw from the light unit, then pull the bulb out to remove.

# Bulb Replacement

---

## VANITY MIRROR LIGHT



H3882

With the vanity mirror cover open, use a small flat-bladed screwdriver to lever the relevant lens from the mirror/light unit. Pull out bulb to remove.

# Technical Data

---

## Lubricants & Fluids

LUBRICANTS AND FLUIDS .....273

## Capacities

CAPACITIES .....274

## Engines

V8 ENGINE .....275

## Electrical System

ELECTRICAL SYSTEM .....276

## Steering

STEERING .....277

## Wheels & Tires

WHEELS AND TIRES .....278

## Weights

VEHICLE WEIGHTS .....281

TOWING WEIGHTS .....282

## Dimensions

VEHICLE DIMENSIONS .....283





# Lubricants & Fluids

---

## LUBRICANTS AND FLUIDS

Recommendations for all climates and conditions.

**Note:** *Recommended oils are complete in themselves and additives should not be used.*

**Note:** *It is essential to change oil much more frequently if the vehicle is operated under severe conditions, especially if deep wading is carried out.*

### Engine oil

Use a 0W/30, 0W/40, 5W/30 or 5W/40 oil meeting specification API service level SJ/CD, EC11 and having a viscosity band recommended for the temperature range of your locality.

### Engine oil temperature ranges

0W/30 will protect from -30°C to 35°C (-22°F to 95°F).

0W/40 will protect from -30°C to 50°C (-22°F to 95°F).

5W/30 will protect from -10°C to 35°C (14°F to 95°F).

5W/40 will protect from -10°C to 50°C (14°F to 95°F).

### Main gearbox

Filled for life. Esso LT71141.

### Power steering

Texaco Cold Climate PAS fluid 14315 or service part number LRN2261-ACE/PAS fluid.

### Brake reservoir

Shell ESL Donax EB brake fluid having a minimum boiling point of 260°C (500°F) and complying with FMVSS 116 DOT4.

### Windshield washers

Screen washer fluid.

### Engine cooling system

Use Castrol Anti-freeze NF or an approved alternative - see **Approved Coolants, 273**. Use one part anti-freeze to one part water for protection down to -36°C (-32.8°F).

### Approved Coolants

- BASF Glysantin G48
- Arteco Glacelf MDX
- Castrol NF

### Inertia reel seat belts

**DO NOT LUBRICATE.** These components are lubricated for life during manufacture.

# Capacities

---

## CAPACITIES

The following capacities are approximate and provided as a guide only. All oil levels must be checked using the dipstick or level plugs as applicable.

| <b>Units</b>                        | <b>US Units</b> | <b>Metric Units</b> |
|-------------------------------------|-----------------|---------------------|
| Fuel tank                           | 26.42 gallons   | 100 litre           |
| Engine oil (from dry)               | 9.6 quarts      | 9.1 litre           |
| Engine oil refill and filter change | 9 quarts        | 8.5 litre           |
| Washer reservoir                    | 5.3 quarts      | 5.0 litre           |
| Cooling system (fill from dry)      | 18.3 quarts     | 17.3 litre          |
| Cooling system (refill)             | 13.7 quarts     | 13 litre            |

# Engines

---

## V8 ENGINE

|                     |  |
|---------------------|--|
| Fuel                | Premium unleaded gasoline with a CLC or AKI octane rating or 90 or 92 (95 or 96 RON) - see <b>TYPE OF FUEL, 140.</b> |
| Capacity            | 4398 cm <sup>3</sup> (268 in <sup>3</sup> )  |
| Firing order        | 1-5-4-8-6-3-7-2  |
| Idle speed          | 600 - 700 rev/min  |
| Bore                | 92,0 mm (3.622 in)   |
| Stroke              | 82,7 mm (3.256 in)   |
| Number of cylinders | 8  |
| Compression ratio   | 10:1   |
| Spark plugs         | Bosch FGR7DQP or NGK BKR6EQUP  |
| Spark plug gap      | Non-adjustable   |

# Electrical System

---

## ELECTRICAL SYSTEM

|                      |                            |
|----------------------|----------------------------|
| Battery type         | Group 95R, sealed for life |
| Battery rating       | 90 amp/hr or 110 amp/hr    |
| Voltage and polarity | 12 V, negative (-) earth   |
| Charging circuit     | Alternator                 |

# Steering

---

## STEERING

|                                    |                     |
|------------------------------------|---------------------|
| Steering wheel turns lock to lock  | 3.5                 |
| Turning circle                     | 11,6 metres (38 ft) |
| Camber angle                       | -0.2                |
| Castor angle                       | 6.69                |
| King pin inclination               | 11.76               |
| Front wheel toe-out included angle | 0                   |

# Wheels & Tires

---

## WHEELS AND TIRES

### WARNING

- **ALWAYS** use the same make and type of radial-ply tires front and back. **DO NOT** use cross-ply tires, or interchange tires from front to back.
  - For optimum performance and handling **ALWAYS** replace tires with the same make and type as those fitted from new at the factory. If these tires are not available, consult your Retailer for advice on Land Rover approved alternatives. Failure to do so may adversely affect vehicle handling.
  - **NEVER** drive your vehicle if the tires are badly worn, cut or damaged, or if the pressures are incorrect.
  - **Incorrectly inflated tires wear rapidly and can seriously affect the vehicle's safety and road-handling characteristics.**
  - **Your vehicle is fitted with tubeless road wheels that will NOT accept inner tubes. DO NOT fit a tube tire.**
  - **ONLY Land Rover approved wheel and tire combinations should be fitted to the vehicle.**
- 

### Wheel size and type

| Type                  | Size                 |
|-----------------------|----------------------|
| Alloy wheels          | 8J x 19<br>8.5J x 20 |
| Road wheel nut torque | 140 Nm (103 lbf/ft)  |

### Tire specification

| Wheel size | Tire   | Snow Chain Fitment |      |
|------------|--|--------------------|------|
|            |  | Front              | Rear |
| 8J x 19    | 255/55 R19 111 H or V- All terrain tire                  | N                  | Y    |
| 8.5J x 20  | 255/50 R20 109 V- All terrain and all terrain sport tire | N                  | N    |

# Wheels & Tires

---

## Accessory wheels - insert details

| Wheel size | Tire | Snow Chain Fitment |      |
|------------|------|--------------------|------|
|            |      | Front              | Rear |
|            |      |                    |      |

## Accessory Tires - insert details

| Loading condition                              | Position | Tire Pressure |
|--|----------|---------------|
| Normal operating conditions                    | Front    |               |
|  | Rear     |               |
| Vehicle loaded to maximum gross vehicle weight | Front    |               |
|  | Rear     |               |

**Note:** Unidirectional tires are available only on 20 inch accessory tires, see **Directional Tires\***, 219.

# Wheels & Tires

---

## Recommended tire inflation pressures

| Loading condition        |       | Pressure - kPa/psi |
|--------------------------|-------|--------------------|
| Wheels and tires         | Front | 250//36            |
| All operating conditions | Rear  | 300/44             |

**Note:** The pressure for your spare tire should be set to the highest value given for your vehicle's wheel/tire size combination, and adjusted after fitment.

**Note:** When towing heavy trailers or with the tow vehicle loaded, the additional imposed nose weight may cause the GVW tire loading to be exceeded. This is permissible provided that road speeds are limited to 100 km/h (60 mph) and rear tire pressures are increased by at least 3 lbf/in<sup>2</sup> (20 kPa).

### Tire inflation pressure

It is important that tires be properly inflated. Air pressure enables a tire to support the vehicle load, so proper inflation is critical. Failure to maintain correct inflation pressures may result in rapid and uneven tread wear, erratic vehicle handling and excessive heat build-up, which may result in tire failure.

**It is impossible to determine** if a tire is properly inflated just by looking at it.

Tire pressures listed on the vehicle certification label are considered to be the recommended cold tire inflation pressure, at maximum gross vehicle weight condition, measured when the tires are **cold**, after the vehicle has been parked for at least 3 hours or driven less than 3 miles (5 km). Tire pressures at normal operating conditions are shown in the table above.

When you drive for more than 3 miles (5 km), the tires, and the air inside them, warm up and it is normal for the tire pressure to increase above the recommended cold pressure. When checking tire pressure in this condition, never 'bleed' or reduce air pressure.

### WARNING

**If the vehicle has been parked in strong sunlight or used in high ambient temperatures, DO NOT reduce tire pressures; instead, move the vehicle into the shade and allow the tires to cool before checking.**

---

**Note:** A hot tire at or below recommended cold inflation pressure is dangerously under-inflated.

# Weights

---

## VEHICLE WEIGHTS

|                                     |                                 |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| <b>Approximate curb weights</b>     |                                 |
| - All vehicles                      | 2440 - 2570 kg (5379 - 5666 lb) |
| <b>Maximum gross vehicle weight</b> |                                 |
| - All vehicles                      | 3050 kg (6724 lb)               |
| <b>Maximum front axle load</b>      |                                 |
| - All vehicles                      | 1530 kg (3373 lb)               |
| <b>Maximum rear axle load</b>       |                                 |
| - All vehicles                      | 1850 kg (4078 lb)               |

**Note:** Axle weights are non-additive; i.e. maximum GVW is not calculated by adding together maximum front and rear axle loads. The above individual maximum axle weights and gross vehicle weight must not be exceeded.

# Weights

---

## TOWING WEIGHTS

| Maximum permissible towed weights                    | On-road           | Off-road          |
|--|-------------------|-------------------|
| Unbraked trailer                                     | 750 kg (1653 lb)  | 750 kg (1653 lb)  |
| Trailer with over-run brakes                         | 3500 kg (7716 lb) | 1000 kg (2204 lb) |
| Roof rack load (including the mass of the roof rack) | 100 kg (220 lb)   | 50 kg (110 lb)    |

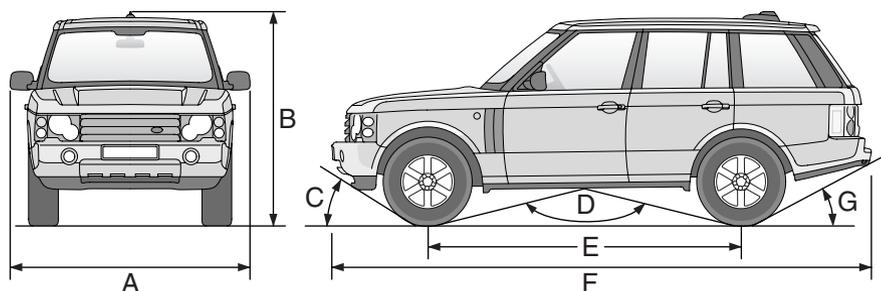
**Note:** *Driving off-road with a loaded roof rack is not recommended.*

### Maximum tow hitch load (tongue weight)

If the vehicle is loaded to the Gross Vehicle Weight (GVW), the tongue weight is limited to 150 kg (330 lb). If a greater tongue weight is necessary (up to 250 kg (550 lb) maximum), vehicle loading should be adjusted to ensure the GVW and rear axle weights are not exceeded.

# Dimensions

## VEHICLE DIMENSIONS



H5269

|          |  |                    |
|----------|--|--------------------|
| <b>A</b> | Overall width  | 2191 mm (86.3 in)  |
|          | Overall width (mirrors folded)                               | 2009 mm (79.1 in)  |
| <b>B</b> | Overall height   |                    |
|          | - Access height  | 1820 mm (71.7 in)  |
|          | - Motorway height  | 1840 mm (72.4 in)  |
|          | - Standard height  | 1863 mm (73.3 in)  |
|          | - Off-road height  | 1913 mm (75.3 in)  |
| <b>E</b> | Wheelbase  | 2880 mm (113.4 in) |
| <b>F</b> | Overall length   | 4950 mm (195 in)   |
|          | Overall length (including tow hitch - to centre of tow ball) | 5015 mm (197.4 in) |
|          | Track: - Front   | 1629 mm (64.1 in)  |
|          | Track: - Rear  | 1626 mm (64.0 in)  |

## Off road performance

|          |  |                   |
|----------|--|-------------------|
| <b>C</b> | Approach angle                             | 32°               |
| <b>D</b> | Breakover angle                            | 28°               |
| <b>G</b> | Departure angle without tow hitch          | 25°               |
|          | Departure angle with tow hitch:            |                   |
|          | - Standard ride height                     | 15.1°             |
|          | - Off-road ride height                     | 17.4°             |
|          | Wading depth                               | 500 mm (20 in)    |
|          | Minimum ground clearance (off-road height) | 281 mm (11.06 in) |



# Index

## A

|                             |     |
|-----------------------------|-----|
| Access height               | 164 |
| Accessories                 | 231 |
| Aerial                      | 125 |
| Air cleaner element renewal | 203 |
| Air conditioning            | 103 |
| Air recirculation           |     |
| remote operation*           | 108 |
| Air suspension              |     |
| access height               | 164 |
| crawl mode                  | 165 |
| motorway height             | 163 |
| off-road height             | 164 |
| Air vents                   | 101 |
| Air vents (rear)            | 102 |
| Airbag SRS                  |     |
| cleaning                    | 229 |
| disposal                    | 65  |
| location                    | 59  |
| occupant detection          | 61  |
| operation                   | 61  |
| precautions                 | 65  |
| servicing                   | 65  |
| warning light               | 64  |
| Airbag warning labels       | 21  |
| Airbags                     |     |
| side                        | 63  |
| Alarm                       | 28  |
| partial arming              | 30  |
| Alarm indicator light       | 31  |
| Anti-freeze                 | 208 |
| Anti-lock braking (ABS)     | 155 |
| Anti-theft alarm            | 28  |
| Anti-theft precautions      | 23  |
| Approach lights             | 109 |
| Armrests                    |     |
| rear                        | 44  |
| Armrests (front)            | 43  |
| Ash trays                   | 111 |
| Audible warnings            | 84  |

|                              |     |
|------------------------------|-----|
| Audio equipment              | 126 |
| Audio remote controls        | 125 |
| Auto safety hotline          | 19  |
| Automatic transmission       | 144 |
| Auxiliary equipment (use of) | 137 |
| Auxiliary power socket       | 113 |
| Axle loads                   | 281 |

## B

|                                     |     |
|-------------------------------------|-----|
| Battery                             |     |
| charging                            | 215 |
| disposal                            | 215 |
| jump starting                       | 243 |
| maintenance                         | 214 |
| remove replace                      | 215 |
| replacement                         | 215 |
| safety                              | 214 |
| specification                       | 276 |
| Battery disconnection - effects     | 215 |
| Before you drive                    | 19  |
| Bi-Xenon lamp units                 | 89  |
| Bonnet opening                      | 196 |
| Booster cables                      | 243 |
| connection points                   | 243 |
| Booster starting                    |     |
| starting another vehicle            | 246 |
| starting your vehicle               | 245 |
| Brake fluid                         |     |
| fluid check top-up                  | 209 |
| replacement                         | 193 |
| specification                       | 209 |
| Brakes                              |     |
| anti-lock brakes (ABS)              | 155 |
| brake pads                          | 154 |
| cornering control                   | 156 |
| dynamic control                     | 156 |
| Electronic Brake Distribution (EBD) | 157 |
| foot brake                          | 154 |
| handbrake                           | 157 |
| servo assistance                    | 154 |
| warning light (ABS)                 | 155 |
| Breakdown recovery                  | 248 |

# Index

|                                     |        |   |               |
|-------------------------------------|--------|---|---------------|
| Bulb replacement . . . . .          | 259    | Cooling system . . . . .                | 207           |
| direction indicators . . . . .      | 260    | Cornering brake control . . . . .       | 156           |
| door lights . . . . .               | 267    | Courtesy lights                         |               |
| footwell light . . . . .            | 268    | operation . . . . .                     | 109           |
| front fog lamps . . . . .           | 266    | Cruise control . . . . .                | 152           |
| glovebox light . . . . .            | 267    | Cubby box . . . . .                     | 117           |
| luggage light . . . . .             | 268    | Cup holder (large) . . . . .            | 115           |
| luggage/tailgate light . . . . .    | 269    | Cup holders . . . . .                   | 114           |
| map light . . . . .                 | 269    | <b>D</b>                                |               |
| number plate lamps . . . . .        | 265    | Demisting . . . . .                     | 106           |
| puddle lights . . . . .             | 267    | Dimensions . . . . .                    | 283           |
| rear fog guard lamps . . . . .      | 261    | Direction indicators                    |               |
| rear indicators . . . . .           | 261    | bulb replacement (front) . . . . .      | 260           |
| reverse lamps . . . . .             | 264    | operation . . . . .                     | 87            |
| side marker lamps - rear . . . . .  | 262    | Directional tires . . . . .             | 219, 242      |
| sidelamps . . . . .                 | 260    | Door mirrors . . . . .                  | 67            |
| tail lamps . . . . .                | 261    | Door seals                              |               |
| vanity mirror light . . . . .       | 270    | prevention of freezing closed . . . . . | 195           |
| <b>C</b>                            |        | Door/puddle lights                      |               |
| California Proposition 65 . . . . . | 19     | bulb replacement . . . . .              | 267           |
| Capacities . . . . .                | 274    | Drive away locking . . . . .            | 33            |
| Carpets (cleaning) . . . . .        | 229    | Driving . . . . .                       | 135, 138, 148 |
| Catalytic converter . . . . .       | 138    | Dynamic brake control . . . . .         | 156           |
| Certification label . . . . .       | 230    | Dynamic stability control . . . . .     | 158           |
| Check control . . . . .             | 72     | <b>E</b>                                |               |
| Child restraints                    |        | Earth point . . . . .                   | 243           |
| LATCH anchorages . . . . .          | 57     | Electric windows . . . . .              | 96            |
| tether straps . . . . .             | 56     | Electronic traction control . . . . .   | 159           |
| Child seats . . . . .               | 54, 64 | Emergency starting . . . . .            | 243           |
| Child-proof door locks . . . . .    | 36     | Emergency towing . . . . .              | 248           |
| Chocks . . . . .                    | 237    | Emission control system . . . . .       | 137, 195      |
| Cigar lighter . . . . .             | 111    | Engine                                  |               |
| Cleaning (exterior) . . . . .       | 227    | compartment . . . . .                   | 197           |
| Cleaning (interior) . . . . .       | 229    | data . . . . .                          | 275           |
| Clock . . . . .                     | 110    | running-in . . . . .                    | 136           |
| setting the time . . . . .          | 110    | starting . . . . .                      | 134           |
| Cold climates (starting) . . . . .  | 134    | warming-up . . . . .                    | 135, 173      |
| Controls                            |        | Engine compartment labels . . . . .     | 22            |
| fascia . . . . .                    | 69     | Engine immobilisation . . . . .         | 34            |
| Coolant                             |        |   |               |
| check top-up . . . . .              | 207    |   |               |
| replacement . . . . .               | 193    |   |               |
| specification . . . . .             | 208    |   |               |

# Index

- Engine oil  
  check top-up . . . . . 198  
  disposal (used oil) . . . . . 195, 200  
  drain & refill . . . . . 200  
  filter renewal . . . . . 202  
  specification . . . . . 198  
Exterior mirrors . . . . . 67
- F**
- Face level vents . . . . . 101  
Filler flap emergency release . . . . . 141  
Fluid specifications . . . . . 273  
Fog guard lamps  
  bulb replacement . . . . . 261  
Fog lamps (front)  
  bulb replacement . . . . . 266  
  operation . . . . . 88  
Fog lamps (rear)  
  operation . . . . . 88  
Footwell light  
  bulb replacement . . . . . 268  
Fuel  
  economy . . . . . 136, 175  
  empty tank . . . . . 141  
  filler . . . . . 139  
  filling . . . . . 141  
  gauge . . . . . 71  
  octane enhancers . . . . . 140  
  safety . . . . . 139  
  specification . . . . . 140  
  tank capacity . . . . . 274  
Fuel filler flap emergency release . . . . . 141  
Fuse box  
  main (passenger compartment) . . . . . 253  
  rear loadspace . . . . . 257  
Fuses . . . . . 252  
  main fuse box . . . . . 253  
  rear loadspace . . . . . 257
- G**
- Gauges  
  fuel . . . . . 71  
  speedometer . . . . . 71  
  tachometer . . . . . 71  
  temperature . . . . . 72  
Gear selection  
  sport mode . . . . . 146  
Gearbox (automatic)  
  'kick-down' . . . . . 148  
  'steptronic' selection . . . . . 147  
  automatically selected modes . . . . . 149  
  lever positions . . . . . 145  
  selector release button . . . . . 144  
  starting . . . . . 148  
Gearbox (transfer box) . . . . . 150  
General data . . . . . 273  
Glovebox light  
  bulb replacement . . . . . 267  
  operation . . . . . 109  
Gross weights . . . . . 281  
Ground clearance . . . . . 181
- H**
- Halogen bulbs . . . . . 259  
Handbrake . . . . . 157  
Handset  
  battery replacement . . . . . 35  
  operation . . . . . 28  
  replacement . . . . . 27  
Hazard warning lamps . . . . . 88  
Head restraints . . . . . 43  
Headlamp courtesy delay . . . . . 85  
Headlamp wiper blade replacement . . . . . 213  
Headlamps  
  operation . . . . . 85  
  washers . . . . . 92, 212  
Heated rear windshield  
  cleaning . . . . . 229  
Heated seats  
  front . . . . . 103, 107  
  rear . . . . . 107  
Heated steering wheel . . . . . 108

# Index

|                                  |            |  |
|----------------------------------|------------|--|
| Heater                           |            |  |
| operation                        | 106        |  |
| Heating                          | 106        |  |
| Height (of vehicle)              | 135        |  |
| Hill descent control (HDC)       |            |  |
| operation                        | 160        |  |
| warning lights                   | 161        |  |
| HomeLink®                        | 127        |  |
| accessories                      | 130        |  |
| compliance                       | 130        |  |
| erasing channels                 | 129        |  |
| operation                        | 128        |  |
| precautions                      | 127        |  |
| programming                      | 128        |  |
| 'rolling codes'                  | 129        |  |
| Horn                             | 94         |  |
| <b>I</b>                         |            |  |
| Ignition switch                  | 133        |  |
| In an emergency                  | 23         |  |
| In-car entertainment             | 126        |  |
| Indicators                       |            |  |
| bulb replacement                 | 260, 261   |  |
| operation                        | 87         |  |
| Information labels               | 20         |  |
| Instrument Illumination control  | 86         |  |
| Instrument panel                 |            |  |
| cleaning                         | 229        |  |
| instruments                      | 71         |  |
| warning lights                   | 81         |  |
| Instrument panel lights          |            |  |
| operation                        | 85         |  |
| Interior (cleaning)              | 229        |  |
| Interior lights                  |            |  |
| operation                        | 109        |  |
| Interior locking switch          | 32         |  |
| Interior rear-view mirror        | 119        |  |
| Interior space protection        | 33         |  |
| <b>J</b>                         |            |  |
| Jack (wheel changing)            | 236        |  |
| Jacking the vehicle              | 241        |  |
| Jump leads                       | 243        |  |
| Jump starting                    |            |  |
| starting another vehicle         | 246        |  |
| starting your vehicle            | 245        |  |
| <b>K</b>                         |            |  |
| Key/handset numbers              | 27         |  |
| Keys                             | 27         |  |
| Kick-down                        | 148        |  |
| <b>L</b>                         |            |  |
| Labels                           | 20, 21     |  |
| Lamps                            |            |  |
| headlamp courtesy delay          | 85         |  |
| parking                          | 86         |  |
| Lamps (exterior)                 |            |  |
| direction indicators             | 87         |  |
| side,tail, headlamps             | 85         |  |
| LATCH child restraint anchorages | 57         |  |
| Leather cleaning                 | 229        |  |
| Light emitting diodes (LEDs)     | 260        |  |
| Lights                           |            |  |
| approach                         | 109        |  |
| headlamp courtesy delay          | 85         |  |
| parking                          | 86         |  |
| Lights (exterior)                |            |  |
| direction indicators             | 87         |  |
| side,tail, headlamps             | 85         |  |
| Lights (interior)                |            |  |
| courtesy                         | 109        |  |
| glovebox                         | 109        |  |
| loadspace                        | 109        |  |
| Load carrying                    |            |  |
| luggage anchor points            | 170        |  |
| rear seat folding                | 47         |  |
| roof rack                        | 170        |  |
| Load limit procedure             | 225        |  |
| Loadspace access hatch           | 120        |  |
| Loadspace cover                  | 122        |  |
| Loadspace fuse box               | 257        |  |
| Loadspace light                  |            |  |
| operation                        | 109        |  |
| Locking                          | 28, 32, 36 |  |
| Locking (drive away)             | 33         |  |
| Locking switch (interior)        | 32         |  |

# Index

- Lubricant specifications . . . . . 273  
Luggage anchor points . . . . . 120, 170  
Luggage light  
    bulb replacement . . . . . 268  
Lumbar support adjustment . . . . . 42
- M**  
Main fuse box . . . . . 253  
Maintenance . . . . . 20, 193  
Map light  
    bulb replacement . . . . . 269  
Message centre  
    critical warnings . . . . . 75  
    information . . . . . 75  
    warning messages . . . . . 75  
Mirror (interior) . . . . . 119  
Mirrors (exterior)  
    adjustment . . . . . 67  
    cleaning . . . . . 228  
    folding . . . . . 68  
Motorhome towing . . . . . 250
- N**  
Notepad . . . . . 95  
Number plate lamps  
    bulb replacement . . . . . 265
- O**  
Octane enhancers . . . . . 140  
Odometer (distance recorder) . . . . . 72  
Off-road driving . . . . . 156, 179  
Off-road suspension control . . . . . 162  
Oil (engine)  
    check top-up . . . . . 198  
    disposal . . . . . 195, 200  
    drain & refill . . . . . 200  
    filter renewal . . . . . 202  
    specification . . . . . 198  
Owner maintenance . . . . . 193
- P**  
Park distance control (PDC) . . . . . 142  
Parking lamps . . . . . 86  
Parts accessories . . . . . 231  
Passport to service . . . . . 20  
Poisonous fluids . . . . . 195  
Polishing (the bodywork) . . . . . 228  
Power socket . . . . . 113  
Power steering  
    emergency operation . . . . . 210  
    fluid check top-up . . . . . 210  
Preparation for winter . . . . . 195  
Procedure - correct load limit . . . . . 225  
Punctured tires . . . . . 218
- R**  
Radio aerial . . . . . 125  
Radio/cassette player  
    aerial . . . . . 125  
    CD autochanger . . . . . 126  
Rain sensor\* . . . . . 91  
Rear lamps  
    bulb replacement . . . . . 261  
Rear seats . . . . . 47  
Rear window wash/wipe . . . . . 93  
Rear-view mirror . . . . . 119  
Recovery (of vehicle) . . . . . 248  
Recreational towing . . . . . 250  
Remote handset battery . . . . . 35  
Replacement keys . . . . . 27  
Reporting safety defects . . . . . 19  
Reverse lamps  
    bulb replacement . . . . . 264  
Road testing on dynamometers . . . . . 195  
Roof rack . . . . . 170  
Running-in . . . . . 136
- S**  
Safety  
    auto hotline . . . . . 19  
Safety in the garage . . . . . 194  
Safety on the forecourt . . . . . 139  
Screen wash . . . . . 211  
Seat belt  
    child seat locking mechanism . . . . . 55  
    cleaning . . . . . 229  
Seat heaters  
    front . . . . . 103, 107  
    rear . . . . . 107

# Index

|  |          |
|--|----------|
| Seats  |          |
| child seats . . . . .                          | 54, 64   |
| electric backrest adjustment . . . . .         | 40       |
| electric cushion angle adjustment . . . . .    | 41       |
| electric forward/rearward adjustment . . . . . | 40       |
| electric height adjustment . . . . .           | 41       |
| electric lumbar support adjustment . . . . .   | 42       |
| electric shoulder support adjustment . . . . . | 42       |
| front (power operated) . . . . .               | 39       |
| rear . . . . .                                 | 47       |
| seat memory facility . . . . .                 | 45       |
| Selector lever . . . . .                       | 144      |
| Self-levelling suspension                      |          |
| operation . . . . .                            | 162      |
| Service portfolio book . . . . .               | 193      |
| Servo assistance (brakes) . . . . .            | 154      |
| Side airbags . . . . .                         | 63       |
| Side marker lamps - rear                       |          |
| bulb replacement . . . . .                     | 262      |
| Side repeater lamp                             |          |
| bulb replacement . . . . .                     | 265      |
| Sidelamps                                      |          |
| bulb replacement . . . . .                     | 260      |
| operation . . . . .                            | 85       |
| Single point entry . . . . .                   | 31       |
| Snow chains . . . . .                          | 220      |
| Spare wheel (removing) . . . . .               | 238      |
| Spark plugs remove and refit . . . . .         | 204      |
| Speedometer . . . . .                          | 71       |
| Spoiler  |          |
| removal (front) . . . . .                      | 183      |
| Sport mode . . . . .                           | 146      |
| Stability control . . . . .                    | 158      |
| Starter switch . . . . .                       | 133      |
| Starting . . . . .                             | 134      |
| automatic models . . . . .                     | 148      |
| catalyst (precautions) . . . . .               | 138      |
| emergency . . . . .                            | 243      |
| warming-up the engine . . . . .                | 135, 173 |
| Steam cleaning (engine) . . . . .              | 227      |
| Steering column                                |          |
| lock . . . . .                                 | 133      |
| Steering data . . . . .                        | 277      |
| Steering wheel                                 |          |
| adjustment . . . . .                           | 66       |
| heater . . . . .                               | 108      |
| Steering wheel position memory* . . . . .      | 66       |
| Stowage box . . . . .                          | 121      |
| Sun visor . . . . .                            | 118      |
| Sunroof  |          |
| electric operation* . . . . .                  | 98       |
| roller blind* . . . . .                        | 99       |
| Superlocking . . . . .                         | 30       |
| System check control . . . . .                 | 72       |
| <b>T</b>                                       |          |
| Tachometer . . . . .                           | 71       |
| Tail lamps                                     |          |
| bulb replacement . . . . .                     | 261      |
| operation . . . . .                            | 85       |
| Tailgate                                       |          |
| Emergency manual operation . . . . .           | 37       |
| emergency manual operation . . . . .           | 235      |
| opening . . . . .                              | 36       |
| Tailgate light                                 |          |
| bulb replacement . . . . .                     | 269      |
| Technical data . . . . .                       | 273      |
| Temperature gauge . . . . .                    | 72       |
| Tether straps . . . . .                        | 56       |
| Tilt sensor . . . . .                          | 30       |
| Tire glossary . . . . .                        | 226      |
| Tire information labels . . . . .              | 223      |
| Tire markings . . . . .                        | 221      |
| Tires  |          |
| directional . . . . .                          | 219, 242 |
| pressure labels . . . . .                      | 223      |
| pressures . . . . .                            | 216, 278 |
| punctures . . . . .                            | 218      |
| replacement . . . . .                          | 218      |
| specification . . . . .                        | 278      |
| wear indicators . . . . .                      | 217      |
| Tool kit . . . . .                             | 236      |
| Tow bars . . . . .                             | 167      |
| Towing . . . . .                               | 166      |
| Towing - Balancing the combination . . . . .   | 167      |
| Towing eyes . . . . .                          | 248      |
| Towing for recovery . . . . .                  | 248      |

# Index

|                                 |          |                                    |     |
|---------------------------------|----------|------------------------------------|-----|
| Towing weights                  | 282      | hill descent control 'information' | 83  |
| Traction control                | 159      | low oil pressure                   | 81  |
| Trailer hitch*                  | 167      | rear fog guard lamps               | 81  |
| Transfer gearbox                | 150      | seat belt                          | 83  |
| Transmission                    |          | Warning lights - instrument panel  | 81  |
| automatic                       | 144      | Warranty information               | 20  |
| sport mode                      | 146      | Washers (windscreen)               |     |
| Transmitter - HomeLink®         | 127      | fluid top-up                       | 211 |
| Transporter or trailer lashing  | 251      | jets                               | 212 |
| Transporting your vehicle       | 251      | operation                          | 92  |
| Trinket tray                    | 121      | Washing (the bodywork)             | 227 |
| Trip computer                   | 73       | Weights (vehicle)                  | 281 |
| Trip recorder                   | 72       | Wheel                              |     |
| Trip recorder reset button      | 72       | size type                          | 278 |
| <b>U</b>                        |          | Wheel changing                     | 238 |
| Underbody maintenance           | 227      | changing the wheel                 | 237 |
| <b>V</b>                        |          | jacking the vehicle                | 241 |
| Vanity mirror (illumination)    | 118      | tool kit                           | 236 |
| Vanity mirror light             |          | Wheel chocks                       | 237 |
| bulb replacement                | 270      | Windows                            | 96  |
| Vehicle height                  | 135      | Windscreen washers                 |     |
| Vehicle identification number   | 230      | fluid top-up                       | 211 |
| Vehicle recovery                | 248      | operation                          | 92  |
| Vehicle weights                 | 281      | Windscreen wipers                  |     |
| Vehicles with passenger airbag  | 55       | intermittent wipe                  | 91  |
| Ventilation                     | 100, 106 | operation                          | 90  |
| <b>W</b>                        |          | Rain sensor variable delay*        | 91  |
| Wading                          | 189      | road speed sensor                  | 91  |
| Warming-up (the engine)         | 135, 173 | variable delay                     | 91  |
| Warning labels                  | 20       | wiper blade replacement            | 213 |
| Warning lights                  |          | Wiper blade replacement            |     |
| airbag SRS                      | 64, 83   | front                              | 213 |
| anti-lock braking (ABS)         | 83       | headlamp                           | 213 |
| battery charging                | 81       | rear                               | 213 |
| brake system                    | 82       |                                    |     |
| check engine                    | 82       |                                    |     |
| cruise control active           | 83       |                                    |     |
| direction indicators            | 83       |                                    |     |
| dynamic stability control (DSC) | 83       |                                    |     |
| front fog lamps                 | 81       |                                    |     |
| handbrake system                | 82       |                                    |     |
| headlamp main beam              | 83       |                                    |     |

